As filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission on November 26, 2018

File No. 001-38519

UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
Washington, D.C. 20549

Amendment No. 5
to

FORM 10

GENERAL FORM FOR REGISTRATION OF SECURITIES
Pursuant to Section 12(b) or (g) of The Securities Exchange Act of 1934

AgeX Therapeutics, Inc.

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Delaware **(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)**	**82-1436829** **(I.R.S. Employer Identification No.)**
1010 Atlantic Avenue **Alameda, California** **(Address of Principal Executive Offices)**	**94501** **(Zip Code)**

Registrant's telephone number, including area code: (510) 871-4190

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

Title of Each Class to be so Registered	**Name of Each Exchange on Which Each Class is to be Registered**
Common stock, par value $0.0001 per share	NYSE American

Securities to be registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act:
None

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, a smaller reporting company or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company," and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer [ ]	Accelerated filer [ ]
Non-accelerated filer [X]	Smaller reporting company [ ]
Emerging growth company [X]	

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act. [X]

INFORMATION REQUIRED IN REGISTRATION STATEMENT

CROSS-REFERENCE SHEET BETWEEN INFORMATION STATEMENT AND ITEMS OF FORM 10

Certain information required to be included in this Form 10 is incorporated by reference to specifically-identified portions of the body of the information statement filed herewith as Exhibit 99.1 (the "Information Statement"). None of the information contained in the Information Statement shall be incorporated by reference herein or deemed to be a part hereof unless such information is specifically incorporated by reference.

Item 1. Business

The information required by this item is contained under the sections of the Information Statement entitled "Information Statement Summary," "Risk Factors," "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations," and "Business." Those sections are incorporated herein by reference.

Item 1A. Risk Factors

The information required by this item is contained under the section of the Information Statement entitled "Risk Factors." That section is incorporated herein by reference.

Item 2. Financial Information

The information required by this item is contained under the sections of the Information Statement entitled "Summary and Selected Financial Data," "Capitalization," "Unaudited Pro Forma Condensed Combined Financial Statements" and "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations." Those sections are incorporated herein by reference.

Item 3. Properties

The information required by this item is contained under the section of the information statement entitled "Business—Facilities." That section is incorporated herein by reference.

Item 4. Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management

The information required by this item is contained under the section of the Information Statement entitled "Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management." That section is incorporated herein by reference.

Item 5. Directors and Executive Officers

The information required by this item is contained under the section of the Information Statement entitled "Management" and "Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management." Those sections are incorporated herein by reference.

Item 6. Executive Compensation

The information required by this item is contained under the sections of the Information Statement entitled "Management—Compensation of Directors" and "Executive Compensation." Those sections are incorporated herein by reference.

Item 7. Certain Relationships and Related Party Transactions; and Director Independence

The information required by this item is contained under the sections of the Information Statement entitled "Risk Factors—Risks Related to our Relationship with BioTime," "Management," "Executive Compensation," and "Certain Relationships and Related Party Transactions." Those sections are incorporated herein by reference.

Item 8. Legal Proceedings

The information required by this item is contained under the section of the Information Statement entitled "Business—Legal Proceedings." This section is incorporated herein by reference.

Item 9. Market Price of and Dividends on Registrant's Common Equity and Related Stockholder Matters

The information required by this item is contained under the sections of the Information Statement entitled "Risk Factors," "Dividend Policy," "Capitalization," "The Distribution," "Shares Eligible for Future Sale," and "Description of Securities." Those sections are incorporated herein by reference.

Item 10. Recent Sales of Unregistered Securities

The information required by this item is contained under the section of the Information Statement entitled "Certain Relationships and Related Party Transactions." That section is incorporated herein by reference.

Item 11. Description of Registrant's Securities to be Registered

The information required by this item is contained under the sections of the Information Statement entitled "Risk Factors—Risks Pertaining to Our Common Stock," "Dividend Policy" and "Description of Securities." Those sections are incorporated herein by reference.

Item 12. Indemnification of Directors and Officers

The information required by this item is contained under the section of the Information Statement entitled "Management—Indemnification of Directors and Officers." That section is incorporated herein by reference.

Item 13. Financial Statements and Supplementary Data

The information required by this item is contained under the sections of the Information Statement entitled "Unaudited Pro Forma Condensed Combined Financial Statements," "Index to Audited Consolidated Financial Statements and Unaudited Condensed Consolidated Interim Financial Statements" (and the financial statements referenced therein). Those sections are incorporated herein by reference.

Item 14. Changes in and Disagreements with Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure

None.

Item 15. Financial Statement and Exhibits

(a) Financial Statements

The information required by this item is contained under the section of the Information Statement entitled "Index to Audited Consolidated Financial Statements and Unaudited Condensed Consolidated Interim Financial Statements" (and the financial statements referenced therein). Those sections are incorporated herein by reference.

(b) Exhibits.

Exhibit Number	Exhibit Description
2.1	Asset Purchase Agreement, dated as of August 13, 2018, by and between Escape Therapeutics, Inc. and AgeX Therapeutics, Inc.*##+
3.1	Certificate of Incorporation*
3.2	Bylaws*
4.1	Specimen of Common Stock Certificate*
10.1	

	Asset Contribution and Separation Agreement, dated August 17, 2017, between BioTime, Inc. and AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. (filed as Exhibit 10.1 to BioTime, Inc.'s Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended September 30, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference)#
10.2	License Agreement, dated August 17, 2017, between BioTime, Inc. and AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. (filed as Exhibit 10.2 to BioTime, Inc.'s Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended September 30, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference)#

10.3	Option to Purchase Shares of AgeX Therapeutics, Inc., dated August 4, 2017, granted by BioTime, Inc. to Alfred D. Kingsley (filed as Exhibit 10.3 to BioTime, Inc.'s Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended September 30, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference)†
10.4	AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. 2017 Equity Incentive Plan (filed as Exhibit 10.1 to BioTime, Inc.'s Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on October 16, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference)†
10.5	Form of AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. Stock Option Agreement (filed as Exhibit 10.2 to BioTime, Inc.'s Current Report on Form 8-Q filed with the SEC on October 16, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference)†
10.6	Asset Purchase Agreement, dated March 21, 2018, between Ascendance Biotechnology, Inc. and AgeX Therapeutics, Inc.*##+
10.7	Sublicense Agreement, dated September 26, 2017, between BioTime, Inc. and AgeX Therapeutics, Inc.* ##
10.8	First Amendment, dated November 8, 2017, to License Agreement, dated August 17, 2017, between BioTime, Inc. and AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. *
10.9	Sublicense Agreement, dated August 17, 2017, by and among OrthoCyte Corporation, BioTime, Inc. and AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. *##
10.10	First Amendment, dated November 8, 2017, to Sublicense Agreement, dated August 17, 2017, between OrthoCyte Corporation, BioTime, Inc. and AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. *
10.11	License Agreement, dated August 17, 2017, by and between ES Cell International Ptd Ltd., BioTime, Inc. and AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. *##
10.12	Shared Facilities and Services Agreement, dated August 17, 2017, between BioTime, Inc. and AgeX Therapeutics, Inc., as amended*
10.13	Employee Matters Agreement, dated August 17, 2017, between BioTime, Inc. and AgeX Therapeutics, Inc.*
10.14	Employment Agreement, by and between AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. and Hal Sternberg, dated August 21, 2017.†*
10.15	Tax Matters Agreement, dated August 17, 2017, between BioTime, Inc. and AgeX Therapeutics, Inc.*
10.16	Form of Registration Rights Agreement.*
10.17	License Agreement, dated August 17, 2017, between BioTime, Inc. and AgeX Therapeutics, Inc.* ##
10.18	Separation Agreement, effective October 15, 2018, between Alfred Kingsley and AgeX Therapeutics, Inc.*
10.19	Employment Agreement, by and between AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. and Michael D. West, dated October 18, 2018.†*
21.1	Subsidiaries of the Registrant.*
99.1	Information Statement of AgeX Therapeutics, Inc., preliminary and subject to completion, dated November 26, 2018**

* Previously filed.

** Filed herewith.

† Indicates management contract or compensatory plan.

Confidential treatment has been granted with respect to portions of this exhibit (indicated by asterisks) and those portions have been separately filed by BioTime, Inc. with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to certain portions of this exhibit. Omitted portions have been filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

+ Certain schedules and exhibits to this agreement have been omitted in accordance with Item 601(b)(2) of Regulation S-K. A copy of any omitted schedule and/or exhibit will be furnished to the Securities and Exchange Commission on request.

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of Section 12 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this Amendment No. 5 to the Registration Statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized on the 26th day of November, 2018.

AGEX THERAPEUTICS, INC.

By: */s/ Michael D. West*
Michael D. West
Chief Executive Officer

The information contained herein is subject to completion or amendment. A Registration Statement on Form 10 relating to these securities has been filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

SUBJECT TO COMPLETION, DATED NOVEMBER 26, 2018

INFORMATION STATEMENT

AGEX THERAPEUTICS, INC.
Common stock, par value $0.0001 per share

This information statement is being furnished to you in connection with the distribution of some or all of the outstanding shares of common stock, par value $0.0001 per share, of AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. ("AgeX") on a pro rata basis to holders of outstanding common shares, no par value, of BioTime, Inc. (the "Distribution") as of the record date described below in a taxable transaction. See "Material U.S. Federal Income Tax Consequences of the Distribution."

AgeX is engaged in the business of research and development of novel therapeutics targeting human aging. BioTime, Inc. ("BioTime") currently owns 40.2% of our outstanding common stock. Following the Distribution, AgeX's common stock will be publicly traded.

You will receive one share of AgeX common stock for every 10 BioTime common shares you held as of 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on November 16, 2018, the "Record Date" of the Distribution. If you sell your BioTime common shares after the record date and on or before the date of the Distribution, you will also be selling your right to receive shares of AgeX common stock in the Distribution. The Distribution will be made only in book-entry form. We expect the Distribution to occur at 4:30 p.m., New York City time, on November 28, 2018, which we refer to as the "Distribution Date." In this information statement we sometimes refer to the shares of AgeX common stock to be distributed to BioTime shareholders in the Distribution as the "Distribution Shares." BioTime will not distribute any fractional shares of AgeX common stock. See "The Distribution—Manner of Effecting the Distribution—Cash in lieu of fractional shares."

No shareholder approval of the Distribution by BioTime shareholders is required or sought, and you are not being asked for a proxy to vote on the Distribution. We are not asking you for a proxy and you should not send us a proxy. BioTime shareholders will not be required to pay for the Distribution Shares they receive in the Distribution or to surrender or exchange BioTime common shares in order to receive their Distribution Shares and will not be required to take any other action in connection with the Distribution.

We have applied to list AgeX's common stock on the NYSE American securities exchange under the symbol "AGE." If our listing application is not approved, we plan to arrange for the trading of AgeX common stock on the OTC Bulletin Board no later than the completion of the Distribution. There is no current trading market for AgeX common stock. We expect, however, that a limited trading market for AgeX common stock, commonly known as a "when-issued" trading market, will develop at least one trading day prior to the record date for the Distribution, and we expect "regular-way" trading of AgeX common stock will begin the first trading day after the distribution date.

We are an "emerging growth company" as defined under the federal securities laws and, as such, may elect to comply with certain reduced public company reporting requirements for future filings. See "Summary—Implications of Being an Emerging Growth Company."

In reviewing this information statement, you should carefully consider the matters described under "Risk Factors" for a discussion of certain factors that should be considered by recipients of our common stock.

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this information statement is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

This information statement does not constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy any securities.

The date of this information statement is , 2018.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
Information Statement Summary	6
Questions and Answers About AgeX and the Distribution	14
Risk Factors	20
The Distribution	77
Market for Our Common Equity	84
Dividend Policy	86
Selected Financial Data	87
Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations	94
Business	121
Management	149
Executive Compensation	156
Security Ownership by Certain Beneficial Owners and Management	166
Certain Federal Income Tax Considerations	173
Description of Securities	177
Index to Audited Consolidated Financial Statements and Unaudited Condensed Consolidated Interim Financial Statements	F-1
Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm	F-2

Unless otherwise indicated or the context otherwise requires, references herein to:

- *"AgeX," the "Company," "we," "our," or "us" refer to AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. and its consolidated subsidiaries, and*
- *"BioTime" refer to BioTime, Inc. and its consolidated subsidiaries,*

in each case giving effect to the Distribution.

This information statement is being furnished solely to provide information to BioTime shareholders who will receive shares of our common stock in the Distribution. It is not and is not to be construed as an inducement or encouragement to buy or sell any of our securities or any securities of BioTime. This information statement describes our business, our relationship with BioTime and how the Distribution affects BioTime and its shareholders, and provides other information to assist you in evaluating the benefits and risks of holding or disposing of our common stock that you will receive in the Distribution. You should be aware of certain risks relating to the Distribution, our business, and ownership of our common stock, including those described under the heading "Risk Factors."

You should not assume that the information contained in this information statement is accurate as of any date other than the date set forth on the cover. Changes to the information contained in this information statement may occur after that date, and we undertake no obligation to update the information, except in the normal course of our public disclosure obligations and practices or as may be required by applicable law.

You should rely only on the information contained in this information statement. We have not, and BioTime has not, authorized any other person to provide you with information different from, or in addition to, that contained in this information statement. We do not take any responsibility for, and can provide no assurance as to the reliability of, any information other than the information contained in this information statement.

FOR RESIDENTS OF THE PHILIPPINES

THESE SECURITIES ARE BEING OFFERED OR SOLD PURSUANT TO AN EXEMPT TRANSACTION UNDER SECTION 10.1(c) OF THE PHILIPPINES SECURITIES REGULATION CODE.

THE SECURITIES BEING OFFERED OR SOLD HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED WITH THE PHILIPPINES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION UNDER THE SECURITIES REGULATION CODE. ANY FURTHER OFFER OR SALE THEREOF IS SUBJECT TO REGISTRATION REQUIREMENTS UNDER THE CODE UNLESS SUCH OFFER OR SALE QUALIFIES AS AN EXEMPT TRANSACTION

NOTICE TO RECIPIENTS IN AUSTRALIA

THIS INFORMATION STATEMENT DOES NOT CONSTITUTE A DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT UNDER PART 6D.2 OF THE CORPORATIONS ACT 2001 OF THE COMMONWEALTH OF AUSTRALIA (CORPORATIONS ACT). IT DOES NOT AND IS NOT REQUIRED TO CONTAIN ALL THE INFORMATION WHICH WOULD BE REQUIRED UNDER THE CORPORATIONS ACT TO BE INCLUDED IN SUCH A DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT AND HAS NOT BEEN LODGED WITH THE AUSTRALIAN SECURITIES AND INVESTMENTS COMMISSION (ASIC).

THE OFFER TO WHICH THIS INFORMATION STATEMENT RELATES IS BEING MADE IN AUSTRALIA TO HOLDERS OF SHARES OF BIOTIME COMMON STOCK LOCATED IN AUSTRALIA WITHOUT DISCLOSURE UNDER PART 6D.2 OF THE CORPORATIONS ACT IN RELIANCE ON SECTION 708(15) OF THE CORPORATIONS ACT. AS ANY OFFER OF AGEX COMMON STOCK UNDER OR IN CONNECTION WITH THIS INFORMATION STATEMENT WILL BE MADE WITHOUT DISCLOSURE IN AUSTRALIA UNDER PART 6D.2 OF THE CORPORATIONS ACT, THE OFFER OF THOSE SECURITIES FOR RESALE IN AUSTRALIA WITHIN 12 MONTHS MAY, UNDER SECTION 707 OF THE CORPORATIONS ACT, REQUIRE DISCLOSURE TO INVESTORS UNDER PART 6D.2 IF NONE OF THE APPLICABLE EXEMPTIONS IN SECTION 708 APPLIES TO THAT RESALE.

BY ACCEPTING AGEX COMMON STOCK, PERSONS RESIDENT OR DOMICILED IN AUSTRALIA REPRESENT AND WARRANT THAT THEY ARE NOT ACQUIRING SUCH STOCK FOR THE PURPOSE OF SELLING OR TRANSFERRING OFFERED STOCK TO INVESTORS IN AUSTRALIA AND FURTHER UNDERTAKE TO US THAT THEY WILL NOT, FOR A PERIOD OF 12 MONTHS FROM THE DATE OF ISSUE OF THE STOCK, SELL OR TRANSFER, OR GRANT, ISSUE OR TRANSFER AN INTEREST IN OR AN OPTION OVER THE COMMON STOCK, OR OFFER TO DO ANY OF THOSE THINGS, TO INVESTORS IN AUSTRALIA EXCEPT IN CIRCUMSTANCES WHERE DISCLOSURE TO INVESTORS IS NOT REQUIRED UNDER PART 6D.2 OF THE CORPORATIONS ACT OR WHERE A COMPLIANT DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT IS PREPARED AND LODGED WITH ASIC.

INDUSTRY AND MARKET DATA

This information statement contains market data and industry forecasts that were obtained from industry publications, third party market research and publicly available information. These publications generally state that the information contained therein has been obtained from sources believed to be reliable. While we believe that the information from these publications is reliable, the industry in which we operate is subject to a high degree of uncertainty and risk due to a variety of important factors, including those described in the section titled "Risk Factors." These and other factors could cause results to differ materially from those expressed in the estimates made by third parties and by us.

This information statement also contains estimates and other statistical data made by independent parties and by us relating to market size and growth and other data about our industry. We obtained the industry and market data in this information statement from our own research as well as from industry and general publications, surveys and studies conducted by third parties, some of which may not be publicly available. Such data involves a number of assumptions and limitations and contains projections and estimates of the future performance of the industries in which we operate that are subject to a high degree of uncertainty. We caution you not to give undue weight to such projections, assumptions and estimates.

ABOUT OUR FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Although we were not incorporated until January 2017, and did not acquire our initial assets until August 2017, we have prepared and included in this information statement audited consolidated historical financial statements as of and for the year ended December 31, 2017 and 2016. We have also prepared and included in this information statement unaudited condensed consolidated interim historical financial statements as of and for the nine months ended September 30, 2018 and the comparative period for the nine months ended September 30, 2017. The consolidated financial statements are presented on a carve-out basis for purposes of presenting what AgeX's consolidated financial position, consolidated results of operations and consolidated cash flows would have been had AgeX operated the business as a standalone entity for such periods. Our results of operations reflected in such consolidated financial statements may not be indicative of our results of operations as a separate, publicly-traded company or indicative of our results expected for any future period, and should not be relied upon as an indicator of AgeX's future results. See Note 1. "Organization, Basis of Presentation and Liquidity" to our consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement.

This information statement also includes an unaudited condensed combined statement of operations to give pro forma effect to the transaction described under "Unaudited Pro Forma Condensed Combined Financial Statements." The unaudited pro forma condensed combined statement of operations is presented for illustrative purposes and is not necessarily indicative of the consolidated results of operations that would have occurred if the relevant transaction had been consummated on the date indicated, nor is it necessarily indicative of our future consolidated results of operations.

INFORMATION STATEMENT SUMMARY

This summary provides an overview of selected information contained elsewhere in this information statement or in our registration statement on Form 10. For a more complete understanding of our business and the Distribution, you should read this entire information statement carefully, particularly the discussion set forth under "Risk Factors" and our historical financial statements, "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations," our unaudited pro forma condensed combined financial statements and the respective notes to those statements included elsewhere in this information statement.

Overview

We are a biotechnology company focused on the development and commercialization of novel therapeutics targeting human aging. Our mission is to apply our comprehensive experience in fundamental biological processes of human aging to a broad range of associated medical conditions. We believe that demand for therapeutics addressing such conditions is on the rise, commensurate with the demographic shift of aging in the United States and many other industrialized countries. Our proprietary technology, based on telomerase-mediated cellular immortality and regenerative biology, allows us to utilize telomerase-expressing regenerative Pluripotent Stem Cells ("PSCs") for the manufacture of cell-based therapies to regenerate tissues afflicted with age-related chronic degenerative disease. Our products under development include two cell-based therapies derived from telomerase-positive PSCs and two product candidates derived from our proprietary induced Tissue Regeneration (iTR™) technology. We own or have licenses to a number of patents and patent applications used in the generation of these development-stage products, including intellectual property related to PSC-derived clonal embryonic progenitor cell lines (PureStem® technology) and HyStem® delivery matrices. We have patent applications filed to protect our two cell based therapies derived from telomerase-positive PSCs and our two iTR product candidates. The applications, if issued, will provide protection for our methods of use and the compositions of our products. We fully describe our patents and applications below in the "Intellectual Property" section. The patents related to the PureStem® technology cover compositions of cells, methods of culturing and methods of differentiating. The HyStem® delivery matrix patents cover compositions, pharmaceutical compositions with living cells, and certain methods of administering the compositions. We plan to initiate our first 510(k) application for Renelon™, a first-generation iTR product, in 2018 and subsequently initiate three clinical trials of cell- and drug-based therapies, each targeting large unmet needs in age-related medicine.

Prior to initiation of clinical trials, we will need to complete preclinical and even discovery-level research, complete the standard operating procedures to be used, complete the methods and documentation for characterization of the product, and produce and test the genetic modifications in the master cell banks of the pluripotent stem cells under current Good Manufacturing Practices ("cGMP"). In addition, we will be required to expand the numbers of the pluripotent stem cell master cell banks for future use, perform biosafety testing and release the first clinical batch based on preliminary characterization results, complete full product characterization, and define the clinical trial and regulatory strategy. See "Risk Factors— Risks Related to Our Business Operations" for discussion of risks relating to our preclinical development and clinical trials.

Aging is one of the most significant demographic trends of our time. Approximately 76 million baby boomers in the United States are now approaching old age. This demographic shift therefore poses a significant challenge to our economy. The unsolved problem relates to the fact that chronic conditions account for some 80% of total health care expenditures in the United States and the elderly have a higher prevalence of chronic degenerative disease than the young. Approximately 80% of older adults have one chronic disease, and 68% have two or more. We are focused on translating state-of-the-art laboratory science relating to aging into therapeutic biologics, drugs, and devices targeting age-related conditions underlying a majority of these concerns.

Technology Platform

The technology underlying our therapeutic product development programs is based on telomerase-mediated cellular immortality and regenerative biology. By "telomerase-mediated cellular immortality," we refer to the fact that cells that express sufficient levels of a protein called telomerase are capable of escaping cell aging. By "regenerative biology," we refer to novel methods to regenerate tissues afflicted with age-related chronic degenerative disease, such as coronary disease, heart failure, and the complications associated with Type II diabetes. We intend to utilize

telomerase-expressing regenerative PSCs for the manufacture of cell-based therapies and induced Tissue Regeneration compositions for its drug-based modalities. We own or have licenses to numerous patents and patent applications covering methods and compositions relating to this technology platform.

Our Pipeline

Our product pipeline includes two cell-based and two drug-based therapeutic product candidates in development as well as currently-marketed online database products and research products outlined in Figure 1.

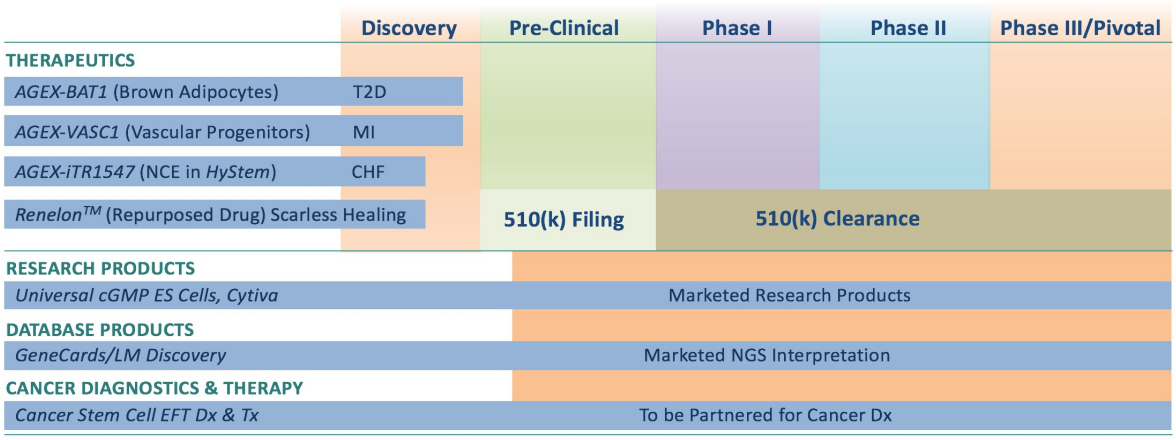

Figure 1. The AgeX product pipeline. T2D (Type II Diabetes), MI (Myocardial Infarction), CHF (Congestive Heart Failure), EFT (Embryonic-Fetal Transition), Dx (Diagnosis), Tx (Therapy).

AGEX-BAT1 and *AGEX-VASC1* are cell-based therapies in the discovery stage of development comprised of young regenerative cells formulated in our proprietary *HyStem*® matrix designed to correct metabolic imbalances in aging and to restore vascular support in ischemic tissues respectively. AGEX-iTR1547 is a drug-based formulation in discovery stage of development intended to restore regenerative potential in a wide array of aged tissues afflicted with degenerative disease using the company's proprietary iTR technology. *Renelon*™ is a first-generation iTR product designed to promote scarless tissue repair and is planned to be developed as a topically-administered device for commercial development.

We, through our subsidiaries LifeMap Sciences, Inc. and LifeMap Sciences LTD (Israel), or collectively referred to as LifeMap Sciences, also plan to continue to generate near-term product revenues through the marketing of genomic interpretation algorithms, advertising, and subscriptions from an online relational database, GeneCards®. In addition, the Company, through its ESI BIO division, markets *Cytiva*® comprised of PSC-derived heart muscle cells useful in screening drugs for efficacy and safety in collaboration with GE Healthcare. Cancer diagnostic and therapeutic applications of iTR technology are planned for development through third party partnerships.

Recent Developments

Juvenescence Transaction

On August 30 2018, BioTime consummated the secondary sale of 14.4 million shares of our common stock to Juvenescence Limited ("Juvenescence") pursuant to a stock purchase agreement in exchange for a total purchase price of $43.2 million. Half of the total purchase price will be payable in cash in two equal installments, with one paid at closing of the transaction and the second paid on November 2, 2018, and the balance was paid with an unsecured convertible note (the "Convertible Note") issued by Juvenescence to BioTime, which will mature two years after the date of the transaction and bear interest at 7% per year. The Convertible Note will convert into Juvenescence common stock upon the consummation of an underwritten initial public offering of Juvenescence with gross proceeds of at least $50 million at the price per share of common stock sold in such offering (which may be increased if our common stock is then listed on a U.S. national securities exchange). If a qualifying underwritten initial public offering has not occurred prior to the maturity date, the Convertible Note, plus accrued interest, may be redeemed in cash or converted

into shares of Juvenescence's Series A preferred shares at a conversion price of $15.60 per share at the election of BioTime. The transactions above are referred to herein as the "Juvenescence Transaction."

In connection with the Juvenescence Transaction, BioTime and Juvenescence also entered into a shareholders agreement (the "Shareholders Agreement") setting forth the governance, approval and voting rights of the parties with respect to their holdings of our common stock, including Board designation and representation rights, approval rights, preemptive rights, rights of first refusal and co-sale and drag-along and tag-along rights for so long as a party maintains certain specified ownership levels. See "Management."

Upon completion of the Juvenescence Transaction, BioTime's ownership in us was reduced from 80.4% to 40.2% of our issued and outstanding shares of common stock, and Juvenescence's ownership in AgeX was increased from 5.6% to 45.8% of our issued and outstanding shares of common stock. As a result, beginning on August 30, 2018, we are no longer considered a subsidiary of BioTime and, as of that date, BioTime has experienced a "loss of control" of a subsidiary, as defined by generally accepted accounting principles in the United States. Loss of control is deemed to have occurred when, among other things, a parent company owns less than a majority of the outstanding common stock in a subsidiary, lacks a controlling financial interest in the subsidiary, and is unable to unilaterally control the subsidiary through other means such as having, or being able to obtain, the power to elect a majority of the subsidiary's Board of Directors based solely on contractual rights or ownership of shares holding a majority of the voting power of the subsidiary's voting securities. All of these loss-of-control factors were present with respect to BioTime's ownership interest in us as of August 30, 2018. Accordingly, BioTime has deconsolidated our consolidated financial statements and results from its consolidated financial statements and results beginning on August 30, 2018. We are currently an affiliate of BioTime.

Escape Acquisition

On August 13, 2018, we entered into an asset purchase agreement (the "Purchase Agreement") with Escape Therapeutics, Inc. ("Escape") pursuant to which we agreed to acquire from Escape certain patents related primarily to HLA-G to suppress rejection of transplanted cells and tissues and certain pluripotent stem cell lines. We paid Escape $1,072,436 in cash and issued 80,000 shares of our common stock, valued at approximately $240,000, in payment for the assets. As an initial focus, we intend to use these assets and technology acquired from Escape in the development of our two lead product candidates, AGEX-BAT1 and AGEX-VASC1 for the treatment of Type II diabetes and cardiovascular aging, respectively.

In addition to the purchase price, we will pay Escape a royalty of less than 1% on net sales of products, process and services covered under the acquired patents, if the assets are commercialized. Additional shares of our common stock totaling up to $4.3 million in market value will also be issued to Escape upon the attainment of development and regulatory approval milestones for each product covered by the acquired patents.

We have also agreed that if we have not expended a certain level of funds by the end of 2019 toward the research and development of pluripotent stem cell or progenitor cell products and processes utilizing the acquired patents and the development or improvement of the acquired patents, we will make an additional annual cash payment to Escape. If total development expenditures have still not reached a predetermined level by the end of 2020, we will pay Escape additional amounts and the royalty rate for net sales of products, processes and services will be tripled until total expenditures reach the required threshold. The aggregate cash payments we may make to Escape for not reaching the predetermined level of expenses can be up to $1 million.

Business Strategy

From our inception in August 2017, we have focused our efforts on the pre-clinical development of human therapeutics targeting aging. Our general business strategy is to initially focus our technology platform of cellular immortality and regenerative medicine on individual tissues in the body (age-related degenerative diseases such as age-related cardiovascular disease), and then expand the potential indications throughout the body affected by aging.

Our tactics in executing on this strategy include:

- Preclinical and clinical validation of the safety and efficacy of our twin cell therapy and iTR products in one organ system;
- Expand indications of the validated products contingent on favorable trial results;
- Partner our cGMP clinical-grade PSCs with third parties under royalty-bearing agreements for non-core applications;
- Build near-term revenues in our related research product and bioinformatics businesses to support the therapeutic programs; and
- Serially partner cell therapy programs, maintaining the iTR platform as the Company's core technology long-term.

Summary Risk Factors

Our ability to execute our business strategy and the Distribution is subject to numerous risks and uncertainties, which are outlined in the section titled "Risk Factors" found elsewhere in this information statement. These risks include:

- We are a discovery-stage development company and have incurred operating losses since our inception. We anticipate that we will incur continued losses for the foreseeable future, and we do not know if we will ever attain profitability.
- We will spend a substantial amount of our capital on discovery and preclinical research and development, but we might not succeed in developing products and technologies that are useful in medicine. If we fail to obtain necessary financing, we may not be able to complete the development and commercialization of our product candidates.
- We have not tested any of our product candidates in clinical trials. Success in early discovery and preclinical studies or clinical trials may not be indicative of results obtained in later preclinical studies and clinical trials.
- We do not currently have any products on the market and have not yet generated any substantial revenues from operations.
- We will need to expand our organization, and we may experience difficulties in managing this growth, which could disrupt our operations

- We will face risks related to the manufacture of medical products for any product candidates that we develop.

- We face significant competition in an environment of rapid technological change and the possibility that our competitors may achieve regulatory approval before us or develop therapies that are more advanced or effective than ours, which may harm our business and financial condition, and our ability to successfully market or commercialize our product candidates.

- The commercial success of any of our current or future product candidates will depend upon the degree of market acceptance by physicians, patients, third-party payors, and others in the medical community.

- If the market opportunities for our product candidates are smaller than we believe they are, we may not meet our revenue expectations and, even assuming approval of a product candidate, our business may suffer.

- Any cell-based products that receive regulatory approval may be difficult and expensive to manufacture on a commercial scale.

- Because we are engaged in the development of pharmaceutical and cell therapy products, the price of shares of our common stock may rise and fall rapidly.

- There is no certainly that our pending or future patent applications will result in the issuance of patents and the process for applying for such patents can require substantial time and money.

- Our intellectual property may be insufficient to protect our products.

- Our relationship with BioTime may result in conflicts of interest as two of the five current members of our Board of Directors are also either an officer of Juvenescence or a director of BioTime and one of those two members is also an executive officer.

- We may be responsible for U.S. federal income tax liabilities that relate to the Distribution.

Corporate Information

We were incorporated in January 2017 in the state of Delaware as a subsidiary of BioTime. BioTime currently owns 40.2% of the outstanding shares of AgeX and, as of August 30, 2018, we are no longer a subsidiary but remain an affiliate of BioTime. Juvenescence currently owns 45.8% of the outstanding shares of AgeX and is the largest shareholder of AgeX. Our principal executive offices are located at 1010 Atlantic Avenue, Suite 102, Alameda, California 94501. Our telephone number is (510) 871-4190. Our website address is www.agexinc.com. The information contained in, or accessible through, our website is not incorporated by reference into this information statement. We acquired our principal assets and licenses and sublicenses to certain patented technology, as well as certain of our subsidiaries, research and development departments and employees, and an equity method investment Ascendance Biotechnology, Inc., from BioTime during August 2017, including an 82% ownership stake in the outstanding shares of common stock of a California corporation, LifeMap Sciences, Inc., which in turn owns 100% of the Israel-based company LifeMap Sciences, Ltd. LifeMap Sciences, Ltd. operates in Israel and employs locally, including working and collaborating with professors and other scientists at the Weizmann Institute of Science located in Rehovot, Israel AgeX also owns 95% of ReCyte Therapeutics, Inc., a California corporation, focused on vascular regeneration. Figure 2 illustrates the ownership structure of BioTime, AgeX and certain of their respective subsidiaries prior to the Distribution.

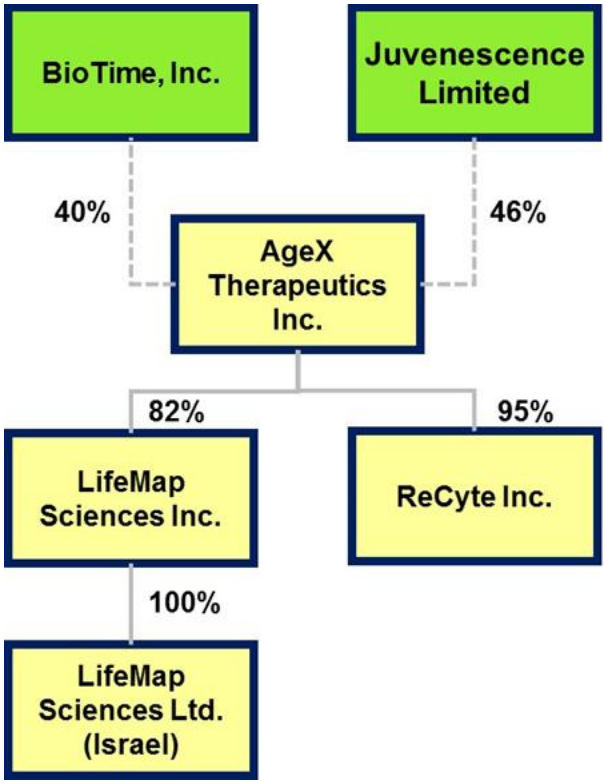

Figure 2. Relationship of AgeX Therapeutics, Inc with its largest shareholders and its subsidiaries prior to the Distribution.

This information statement also includes trademarks, tradenames, and service marks that are the property of other organizations. Solely for convenience, our trademarks and tradenames referred to in this information statement may appear without the ® and ™ symbols, but those references are not intended to indicate in any way that we will not assert to the fullest extent under applicable law our rights or the right of the applicable licensor to these trademarks and tradenames.

Implications of Being an Emerging Growth Company

We are an "emerging growth company" as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 (the "JOBS Act"). We will remain an "emerging growth company" until the earliest of: (i) the last day of the fiscal year in which we have total annual gross revenues of $1.07 billion or more; (ii) the last day of our fiscal year following the fifth anniversary of the Distribution; (iii) the date on which we have issued more than $1.0 billion in nonconvertible debt securities during the previous three years; or (iv) the date on which we are deemed to be a "large accelerated filer" under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

As an emerging growth company, we may take advantage of specified reduced disclosure and other requirements that are otherwise applicable, in general, to public companies that are not emerging growth companies. These provisions include:

- reduced disclosure about our executive compensation arrangements;
- no non-binding shareholder advisory votes on executive compensation or golden parachute arrangements; and
- exemption from the auditor attestation requirement in the assessment of our internal control over financial reporting.

In addition, the JOBS Act permits an emerging growth company such as us to take advantage of an extended transition period to comply with new or revised accounting standards applicable to public companies. We are choosing to "opt out" of this provision and, as a result, we will comply with new or revised accounting standards as required when they are effective for public companies. This decision to opt out of the extended transition period under the JOBS Act is irrevocable.

Summary of the Distribution

The following is a summary of the terms of the Distribution. See "The Distribution" for a more detailed description of the matters described below.

Distributing company	BioTime, Inc.
Company whose shares are to be distributed	AgeX Therapeutics, Inc.
Distribution ratio	Each holder of BioTime common shares will receive one share of AgeX common stock for every 10 BioTime common shares held on the Record Date.
Securities to be distributed	Approximately 12,697,028 shares of AgeX common stock, which will constitute approximately 35% of the AgeX common stock outstanding immediately after the Distribution. Certain current minority shareholders of AgeX, as well as Juvenescence and BioTime, will own the balance of the outstanding shares of AgeX common stock immediately after the Distribution, and will acquire additional AgeX shares through the Distribution to the extent that they owned BioTime common shares on the Record Date. The number of shares that BioTime will distribute to its shareholders will be reduced to the extent that cash payments are made in lieu of the issuance of fractional shares of AgeX common stock, as described below.
Proposed NYSE American Trading Symbol	"AGE."
Fractional shares	BioTime will not distribute any fractional shares of AgeX common stock to its shareholders. Instead, the distribution agent will aggregate fractional shares into whole shares, sell the whole shares in the open market at prevailing market prices, and distribute the aggregate net cash proceeds of the sales to each BioTime shareholder who otherwise would have been entitled to receive a fractional share in the Distribution, net of any applicable withholding taxes. Recipients of cash in lieu of fractional shares will not be entitled to any interest on the amounts of payment made in lieu of fractional shares. The distribution agent will have the sole discretion to select the broker-dealers through which to sell the aggregated fractional shares and to determine when, how and at what price to sell such shares. Neither the distribution agent nor the selected broker-dealers will be affiliates of BioTime or AgeX.

Record date	The record date is November 16, 2018 (the "Record Date"), and BioTime share ownership for the purposes of the Distribution will be determined as of 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on that date. Only holders of BioTime common shares as of such time on the Record Date will be entitled to receive AgeX common stock in the Distribution.
Distribution Date	The distribution date will be on or about November 28, 2018 (the "Distribution Date").
Relationship between AgeX and BioTime after the Distribution	BioTime is expected to continue to own shares of our common stock following the Distribution. BioTime will continue to provide AgeX, on a reimbursable basis, use of office and laboratory facilities and equipment; laboratory and office supplies; utility services to the extent the same are provided to the shared office and laboratory facilities; information technology support; human resources; and other services consistent with past practices under an existing Shared Facilities Agreement. We and BioTime have also entered into other agreements providing for the allocation of tax benefits, employee matters and liabilities arising from periods prior to the Distribution, certain patent and technology licenses and sublicenses, including the existing License Agreement, dated August 17, 2017, between BioTime and AgeX, and shared facilities and services.
Management of AgeX	Our Board of Directors currently consists of five members. Under a Shareholders' Agreement, BioTime and Juvenescence currently have certain rights to designate additional members of our Board of Directors, and the size of our Board of Directors will increase following any such designation. We expect the Shareholders' Agreement to terminate upon completion of the Distribution. AgeX will have its own executive officers, although its Chief Financial Officer, Russell Skibsted, will continue to serve as Chief Financial Officer of BioTime. See "Management."

Dividend policy	We do not plan on paying any cash dividends on our common stock in the immediate future. Instead, we will retain any income we may earn to finance our business operations. All decisions regarding the declaration and payment of dividends will be evaluated from time to time in light of our financial condition, earnings, growth prospects, other uses of cash, funding requirements, applicable law, and other factors that our Board of Directors deems relevant. See the section entitled "Dividend Policy."
Risk factors	You should carefully consider the matters discussed under the section entitled "Risk Factors."
Amendment or Cancellation of the Distribution	BioTime may, in its sole discretion: (a) terminate the Distribution prior to delivery of the Distribution Shares to BioTime shareholders; (b) change the Distribution Date for the Distribution to a later date; (c) change the Record Date prior to the Distribution of the Distribution Shares to BioTime shareholders; or (d) amend or modify the terms of the Distribution. If BioTime determines to terminate the Distribution, changes the Distribution Date or the Record Date, or amends or modifies the terms of the Distribution, BioTime and AgeX will issue a press release, BioTime will file a Current Report on Form 8-K and AgeX will provide a supplement to this Information Statement disclosing the applicable changes.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS ABOUT AGEX AND THE DISTRIBUTION

Q: Why am I receiving this information statement?

A: BioTime is delivering this information statement to you because you were a holder of BioTime common shares on the Record Date for the Distribution.

Q: What is the Distribution?

A: The Distribution is the distribution of one share of AgeX common stock for every 10 common shares of BioTime that were outstanding on the Record Date. No action is required for you to participate in the Distribution. BioTime shareholders will receive in the Distribution approximately 35% of the shares of AgeX common stock that will be outstanding immediately upon the completion of the Distribution. Certain current minority shareholders of AgeX, together with Juvenescence and BioTime, may own the balance of the shares of AgeX common stock that will be outstanding upon completion of the Distribution immediately after the Distribution, and will acquire additional shares of AgeX common stock through the Distribution to the extent that they owned BioTime common shares on the Record Date.

Q: What will I receive in the Distribution?

A: In the Distribution, BioTime shareholders will receive one share of AgeX common stock for every 10 BioTime common shares they owned as of the Record Date for the Distribution. No fractional shares will be issued. Those BioTime shareholders who would otherwise be entitled to receive fractional shares will receive cash in lieu of fractional shares. For example, a BioTime shareholder who held 100 BioTime common shares as of the Record Date will, after the Distribution, (i) continue to hold 100 BioTime common shares and (ii) receive 10 shares of AgeX common stock and cash in lieu of fractional shares. Immediately after the Distribution, BioTime shareholders will still own their BioTime common shares, their proportionate interest in BioTime will not change, and they will still own an interest in BioTime's current businesses, but they will own that interest as two separate stock investments rather than as a single investment.

Q: What is AgeX?

A: We are engaged in the business of research and development of novel therapeutics targeting human aging.

Q: Why is BioTime distributing AgeX stock to BioTime shareholders?

A: BioTime believes that creating a separate scientific and management team for AgeX and fostering public ownership of AgeX common stock will better enable AgeX to focus on maximizing opportunities for its business, to hire and retain scientists and managers in the future, and to access the capital markets to obtain the financing that AgeX will need in the long run to fund its research and product development programs, and to commercialize any products or technologies that it may develop. Both BioTime and AgeX believe that the Distribution will present the opportunity for enhanced performance of both BioTime and AgeX.

BioTime's Board of Directors has determined that the Distribution is in the best interests of BioTime and its shareholders. The following potential benefits were considered by BioTime's Board of Directors in making the determination to effect the Distribution:

- allowing each company to separately pursue the business strategies that best suit its long-term interests;
- creating separate companies that have different financial characteristics, which may appeal to different investor bases and allow for clarity on valuation of the respective businesses;
- creating opportunities to more efficiently finance ongoing operations, including product development and clinical trials of new therapeutics products, and commercializing products and technologies;
- creating opportunities to more efficiently finance acquisitions;
- allowing each company to establish an expense structure appropriate for its business and size; and
- creating effective management and employee incentives tied to each company's performance.

For a further explanation of the reasons for the Distribution and more information about our business, see "The Distribution—Reasons for the Distribution" and "Business."

Q: What is the record date for the Distribution?

A: The Record Date is November 16, 2018, and BioTime share ownership for the purposes of the Distribution was determined as of 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on that date.

Q: When will the Distribution occur?

A: Shares of AgeX common stock will be distributed on or about November 28, 2018.

Q: Can BioTime decide to cancel or delay the Distribution?

A: Yes. The Distribution is conditioned upon satisfaction or waiver of certain conditions under the Asset Contribution Agreement. See "The Distribution—Distribution Conditions and Termination." BioTime also has the right to postpone or terminate the Distribution even if all of these conditions are met, if at any time BioTime's Board of Directors determines, in its sole discretion that completing the Distribution would not be in the best interest of BioTime and its shareholders.

Q: What will happen to the listing of BioTime common shares?

A: Nothing. BioTime common shares will continue to be traded on the NYSE American and TASE under the symbol "BTX."

Q: Will the Distribution affect the market price of my BioTime common shares?

A: The immediate impact of the Distribution on the market price of BioTime common shares cannot be determined. On the one hand, the establishment of AgeX as an independent company, and with the deconsolidation of AgeX's results of operations from those of BioTime beginning on August 30, 2018, will reduce BioTime's operating expenses related to the operation of AgeX after the Distribution. On the other hand, the price of BioTime common shares could decline in view of the fact that BioTime may no longer own any AgeX shares. Accordingly, the combined trading prices of BioTime common shares and AgeX common stock after Distribution Date may be less than or greater than the trading price of BioTime common shares prior to the Distribution. Until the market has fully analyzed the relative values of BioTime and AgeX after the Distribution, and the effect of the Distribution on BioTime's balance sheet and operating results, and a trading market for AgeX common stock is established, the price of both BioTime common shares and AgeX common stock may fluctuate significantly.

Q: What does a BioTime shareholder need to do now?

A: BioTime shareholders do not need to take any action to participate in the Distribution. The approval of the BioTime shareholders is not required or sought to effect the Distribution and BioTime shareholders have no appraisal rights in connection with the Distribution. BioTime is not seeking a proxy from any shareholders and you are requested not to send BioTime or us a proxy. BioTime shareholders will not be required to pay anything for the shares of AgeX common stock distributed in the Distribution or to surrender any BioTime common shares. BioTime shareholders should not send their BioTime share certificates to BioTime, AgeX or the distribution agent and transfer agent. BioTime shareholders eligible to receive AgeX common stock in the Distribution will automatically receive their shares of AgeX common stock when the Distribution is effected and will receive cash for any fractional shares. After the Distribution, the certificates and book-entry interests representing your BioTime common shares will continue to represent interests in the BioTime businesses following the Distribution, excluding only the portion of AgeX distributed to BioTime shareholders. The book-entry interests representing AgeX common stock that BioTime shareholders receive in the Distribution will represent equity interests in AgeX.

Q: Are there risks to the Distribution and owning AgeX common stock?

A: Yes. Our business is subject to both general industry risk and specific risks relating to our business, operations and regulatory environment. In addition, there will be market risks associated with the ownership of AgeX common stock and risks associated with the Distribution. See "Risk Factors."

Q: What are the material U.S. federal income tax consequences of the Distribution to BioTime shareholders?

A: The Distribution will be made in the form of a taxable distribution to BioTime shareholders. An amount equal to the fair market value of the AgeX stock received by a BioTime shareholder will be treated as a taxable dividend to the extent of such shareholder's ratable share of BioTime's current and accumulated earnings and profits allocable to the Distribution, with the excess treated as a tax-free return of capital to the extent of such shareholder's tax basis in their shares, and any remaining excess treated as capital gain.

Additional matters concerning the U.S. federal income tax consequences of the Distribution are summarized in the section of this information statement entitled "Certain Federal Income Tax Considerations." You should consult your own tax advisor as to the particular consequences of the Distribution to you.

Q: **How will I determine my tax basis in the shares of AgeX common stock I receive in the Distribution?**

A: Your tax basis in shares of AgeX common stock received in the Distribution generally will equal the fair market value of such shares on the Distribution Date. Your holding period for such shares will begin the day after the distribution date.

You should consult your tax advisor about the particular consequences of the Distribution to you. For a more detailed discussion, see "Material U.S. Federal Income Tax Consequences of the Distribution."

Q: What if I want to sell my BioTime common shares or my AgeX common stock?

A: You should consult with your own financial advisors, such as your stockbroker, bank or tax advisor. BioTime and AgeX do not make any recommendations on the purchase, retention, or sale of BioTime common shares or AgeX common stock. If you do decide to sell any shares, you should make sure your stockbroker, bank or other nominee understands whether you want to sell your BioTime stock or your AgeX stock after it is distributed, or both.

Q: Where will I be able to trade shares of my AgeX common stock?

A: Currently there is no public market for AgeX common stock. We have applied to list AgeX's common stock on the NYSE American under the symbol "AGE." If our listing application is not approved, we plan to arrange to have AgeX common stock traded on the OTC Bulletin Board. Trading in shares of AgeX common stock may begin on a "when-issued" basis on or shortly before the Distribution Date, and "regular way" trading will begin on the first trading day following the Distribution Date. If trading does begin on a "when-issued" basis, you may purchase or sell AgeX common stock after that time, but your transaction will not settle until after the Distribution Date. On the first trading day following the Distribution Date, "when-issued" trading in respect of AgeX common stock will end and "regular way" trading will begin. We cannot predict the trading prices for AgeX common stock before, on, or after the Distribution Date.

Q: If I sell, on or before the distribution date, BioTime common shares that I held on the Record Date, am I still entitled to receive shares of AgeX common stock distributable with respect to the common shares of BioTime that I sold?

A: If you held common shares of BioTime as of the Record Date and sold those shares after the Record Date and on or before the Distribution Date, you also will have sold the right to receive the shares of AgeX common stock in connection with the Distribution.

Q: Where can BioTime shareholders get more information?

A: Before the Distribution, if you have any questions relating to the Distribution, you should contact:

BioTime, Inc.
1010 Atlantic Avenue, Suite 102
Alameda, CA 94501
Attention: Russell Skibsted
Telephone: (510) 521-3390

After the Distribution, if you have any questions relating to AgeX common stock, you should contact:

AgeX Therapeutics, Inc.
1010 Atlantic Avenue, Suite 102
Alameda, CA 94501
Attention: Russell Skibsted
Telephone: (510) 871-4190

Q: Who will be the distribution agent, transfer agent and registrar for AgeX common stock?

A: The distribution agent, transfer agent and registrar for AgeX common stock will be American Stock Transfer & Trust Company, LLC.

RISK FACTORS

Our business is subject to various risks, including those described below. You should consider the following risk factors, together with all of the other information included in this information statement. If any of the following risks, as well as additional risks and uncertainties not currently known to us or that we currently deem immaterial, occur, our business, liquidity, financial condition and results of operations could be materially and adversely affected. If this were to happen, the market price of our common stock could decline significantly, and you could lose all or a part of the value of your ownership in our common stock. There may be other factors that are not mentioned here or of which we are not presently aware that could also affect our business operations and prospects.

Risks Related to Our Business Operations

We are a discovery-stage development company and have incurred operating losses since our inception. We anticipate that we will incur continued losses for the foreseeable future, and we do not know if we will ever attain profitability.

We are a discovery-stage therapeutics company with a limited operating history. Since our inception in August 2017, we have incurred operating losses and negative cash flows and we expect to continue to incur losses and negative cash flow in the future. Our operating losses were $(7.9) million, $(6.7) million and $(12.7) million for the nine months ended September 30, 2018, and years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively, and we had an accumulated deficit of approximately $(70.9) million as of September 30, 2018. We have devoted most of our financial resources to research and development, including our preclinical development activities.

Since inception, we have financed our operations through contributions and advances from our former parent company, BioTime, and the sale of our common stock and warrants to our current shareholders. Although BioTime may continue to provide administrative support to us on a reimbursable basis, we do not expect BioTime to provide future financing. There is no assurance that we will be able to obtain any additional financing that we may need after the completion of the Distribution, or that any such financing that may become available will be on terms that are favorable to us and our shareholders. Ultimately, our ability to generate sufficient operating revenue to earn a profit depends upon our success in developing and marketing or licensing our products and technology.

We expect to continue to incur significant additional operating losses for the foreseeable future as we seek to advance product candidates through preclinical and clinical development, expand our research and development activities, develop new product candidates, complete clinical trials, seek regulatory approval and, if we receive FDA approval, commercialize our products. Furthermore, the costs of advancing product candidates into each succeeding clinical phase tend to increase substantially over time. The total costs to advance any of our product candidates to marketing approval in even a single jurisdiction would be substantial. Because of the numerous risks and uncertainties associated with development of cell-based and drug-based therapeutics, we are unable to accurately predict the timing or amount of increased expenses or when, or if, we will be able to begin generating revenue from the commercialization of products (other than through our LifeMap Sciences subsidiary) or achieve or maintain profitability. Our expenses will also increase substantially if and as we:

- continue our current research programs and our preclinical development of product candidates from our current research programs;

- seek to identify, assess, acquire and/or develop additional research programs and additional product candidates;
- initiate preclinical testing and clinical trials for any product candidates we identify and develop;
- establish a sales, marketing and distribution infrastructure to commercialize any product candidates for which we may obtain marketing approval;
- maintain, expand and protect our intellectual property portfolio;
- further develop our product development platform based on telomerase-mediated cellular immortality and regenerative biology;
- make payments under the Shared Facilities Agreement to BioTime for use of BioTime's scientific personnel, administrative services (including patent prosecution, certain legal services and accounting and financial services) and research facilities;
- hire additional clinical, scientific and commercial and administrative personnel to support our product development, planned future commercialization efforts and transition to a public reporting company;
- hire our own executive management personnel, including a Chief Financial Officer and Chief Operating Officer;
- add operational, financial and management information systems;
- acquire or lease our own administrative, research and clinical facilities; and
- acquire or in-license other commercial products, product candidates and technologies;
- make royalty, milestone or other payments under current and any future in-license agreements;
- validate and build-out a commercial-scale current Good Manufacturing Practices, or cGMP, manufacturing facility, or contract with third-party manufacturers;
- contract with third-party suppliers; and
- operate as a public company.

Furthermore, our ability to successfully develop, commercialize and license our products and generate product revenue is subject to substantial additional risks and uncertainties. Each of our programs and product candidates will require additional preclinical and clinical development, potential regulatory approval in multiple jurisdictions, securing manufacturing supply, capacity and expertise, building of a commercial organization, substantial investment and significant marketing efforts before we generate any operating income from product sales. As a result, we expect to continue to incur net losses and negative cash flows for the foreseeable future. These net losses and negative cash flows have had, and will continue to have, an adverse effect on our stockholders' equity and working capital. The amount of our future net losses will depend, in part, on the rate of future growth of our expenses and our ability to generate revenues. If we are unable to develop and commercialize one or more of our product candidates either alone or with collaborators, or if revenues from any product candidate that receives marketing approval are insufficient, we will not achieve profitability. Even if we do achieve profitability, we may not be able to sustain or increase profitability. If we are unable to achieve and then maintain profitability, the value of our equity securities will be materially and adversely affected.

We will spend a substantial amount of our capital on discovery and preclinical research and development, but we might not succeed in developing products and technologies that are useful in medicine. If we fail to obtain necessary financing, we may not be able to complete the development and commercialization of our product candidates.

We expect to spend substantial amounts to complete the development of, seek regulatory approvals for and commercialize our product candidates. We will require additional capital beyond the proceeds of this offering, which we may raise through equity offerings, debt financings, marketing and distribution arrangements and other collaborations, strategic alliances and licensing arrangements or other sources to enable us to complete the development and potential commercialization of our product candidates. In addition, we may not be able to enter into any collaborations that will generate significant cash. Adequate additional financing may not be available to us on acceptable terms, or at all. Our failure to raise capital as and when needed would have a negative effect on our financial condition and our ability to pursue our business strategy. In addition, attempting to secure additional financing may divert the time and attention of our management from day-to-day activities and harm our product candidate development efforts.

Because the length of time and activities associated with successful development of our product candidates is highly uncertain, we are unable to estimate the actual funds we will require for development and any approved marketing and commercialization activities. Our future funding requirements, both near and long-term, will depend on many factors, including, but not limited to:

- the initiation, progress, timing, costs and results of our planned clinical trials for our product candidates;
- the outcome, timing and cost of meeting regulatory requirements established by the FDA and other comparable foreign regulatory authorities;
- the cost of filing, prosecuting, defending and enforcing our patent claims and other intellectual property rights;
- the cost of defending potential intellectual property disputes, including patent infringement actions brought by third parties against us or any of our product candidates;
- the effect of competing technological and market developments;
- the cost and timing of completion of commercial-scale manufacturing activities;
- the costs of operating as a public company;
- the costs of hiring additional clinical, research and operational personnel, and developing our own administrative systems and obtaining research and clinical facilities, in the event we shift away from or cease using services provided under the Shared Facilities Agreement;
- make royalty, milestone or other payments under current and any future in-license agreements in the event we begin generating sales from products derived from intellectual property under such in-license arrangements, including our Hydrogel patent license and sublicense, our license arrangement with ES Cell International Pte, a subsidiary of BioTime, and our sublicense of certain progenitor patents;
- the extent to which we in-license or acquire other products and technologies;
- the cost of establishing sales, marketing and distribution capabilities in regions where we choose to commercialize our products, if approved; and
- the initiation, progress, timing and results of our commercialization of our product candidates, if any are approved for commercial sale.

We cannot be certain that additional funding will be available on acceptable terms, or at all. If we are unable to raise additional capital in sufficient amounts or on terms acceptable to us, we may have to significantly delay, scale back or discontinue the development or commercialization of our product candidates or potentially discontinue operations.

Raising additional capital may cause dilution to our stockholders, restrict our operations or require us to relinquish rights to our technologies or product candidates.

Until such time, if ever, as we can generate substantial revenue, we may finance our cash needs through a combination of equity offerings, debt financings, marketing and distribution arrangements and other collaborations, strategic alliances and licensing arrangements. We do not currently have any committed external source of funds. In addition, we may seek additional capital due to favorable market conditions or strategic considerations, even if we believe that we have sufficient funds for our current or future operating plans.

To the extent that we raise additional capital through the sale of equity or convertible debt securities, your ownership interest will be diluted, and the terms of these securities may include liquidation or other preferences that adversely affect your rights as a common stockholder. Debt financing and preferred equity financing, if available, may involve agreements that include covenants limiting or restricting our ability to take specific actions, such as incurring additional debt, making capital expenditures or declaring dividends. If we raise additional funds through collaborations, strategic alliances or marketing, distribution or licensing arrangements with third parties, we may be required to relinquish valuable rights to our technologies, future revenue streams or product candidates or grant licenses on terms that may not be favorable to us. If we are unable to raise additional funds through equity or debt financings when needed, we may be required to delay, limit, reduce or terminate our product development or future commercialization efforts or grant rights to develop and market product candidates that we would otherwise prefer to develop and market ourselves.

We have not tested any of our product candidates in clinical trials. Success in early development and preclinical studies or clinical trials may not be indicative of results obtained in later preclinical studies and clinical trials.

Though BioTime has completed certain clinical trials involving our technology platform, including *Hystem*® being developed as a replacement for whole adipose tissue in cell assisted lipotransfer (CAL) procedures, our product candidates have never been evaluated in human clinical trials, and we may experience unexpected or adverse results in the future. We will be required to demonstrate through adequate and well-controlled clinical trials that our product candidates are safe and effective, with a favorable benefit-risk profile, for use in their target indications before we can seek regulatory approvals for their commercial sale. Any positive results that have been observed for product candidates similar to ours in preclinical animal models may not be predictive of future clinical trials in humans. Our product candidates may also fail to show the desired safety and efficacy in later stages of clinical development even if they successfully advance through initial clinical trials. Further, some or all of our cell-based therapies under development may require the genetic modification of the pluripotent master cell banks such that the resulting cells can escape immune rejection by the intended patient. There is no certainty that said genetic modification will provide a long-term solution to transplant rejection, or that said modified cells will not cause unanticipated health risks to the patient that could delay or even halt the development of the products.

Many companies in the biotechnology industry have suffered significant setbacks in late-stage clinical trials after achieving positive results in early-stage development and there is a high failure rate for product candidates proceeding through clinical trials. Data obtained from preclinical and clinical activities are subject to varying interpretations, which may delay, limit or prevent regulatory approval. Even if we demonstrate statistical significance, regulatory agencies may not accept the use of the historical control. Regulatory delays or rejections may be encountered as a result of many factors, including changes in regulatory policy during the period of product development. We cannot be certain that we will not face similar setbacks.

We do not currently have any products on the market and have not yet generated any substantial revenues from operations.

We were established and began operations in 2017. Our operations to date have been limited to financing and staffing our company, developing our technology and identifying and developing our product candidates. We have not yet demonstrated an ability to successfully commence or complete any clinical trials, including large-scale, pivotal clinical trials, obtain marketing approval, manufacture a commercial scale product, or arrange for a third party to do so on our behalf, or conduct sales and marketing activities necessary for successful product commercialization. Typically, it takes about six to ten years to develop a new drug from the time it enters Phase 1 clinical trials to when it is approved for treating patients, but in many cases it may take longer. Consequently, predictions about our future success or viability may not be as accurate as they could be if we had a longer operating history or a history of successfully developing and commercializing genetic medicine products. In addition, as a business with a limited operating history, we may encounter unforeseen expenses, difficulties, complications, delays and other known and unknown factors. We will eventually need to transition from a company with a research focus to a company capable of supporting commercial activities. We may not be successful in such a transition.

We need to successfully develop and market or license therapeutic products or technologies in order to earn revenues in sufficient amounts to meet our operating expenses. Without significant product sales or licensing fee revenues, we will not be able to operate at a profit, and we will not be able to cover our operating expenses without raising additional capital. Should we be able to successfully develop and market any therapeutic products we may not be able to receive reimbursement for them from payers, such as health insurance companies, health maintenance organizations and Medicare, or any reimbursement that we receive may be lower than we anticipate.

As we continue to build our business, we expect our financial condition and operating results may fluctuate significantly from quarter to quarter and year to year due to a variety of factors, many of which are beyond our control. Accordingly, you should not rely upon the results of any particular quarterly or annual period as indications of future operating performance.

We may not be successful in our efforts to identify additional product candidates.

Part of our strategy involves identifying novel product candidates. The process by which we identify product candidates may fail to yield product candidates for clinical development for a number of reasons, including those discussed in these risk factors and also:

- we may not be able to assemble sufficient resources to acquire or discover additional product candidates;
- competitors may develop alternatives that render our potential product candidates obsolete or less attractive;
- potential product candidates we develop may nevertheless be covered by third parties' patents or other exclusive rights;
- potential product candidates may, on further study, be shown to have harmful side effects, toxicities or other characteristics that indicate that they are unlikely to be products that will receive marketing approval and achieve market acceptance;
- potential product candidates may not be effective in treating their targeted diseases;
- the market for a potential product candidate may change so that the continued development of that product candidate is no longer reasonable;
- a potential product candidate may not be capable of being produced in commercial quantities at an acceptable cost, or at all; or
- the regulatory pathway for a potential product candidate is too complex and difficult to navigate successfully or economically.

In addition, we may choose to focus our efforts and resources on a potential product candidate that ultimately proves to be unsuccessful, such as our two cell-based product candidates. As a result, we may fail to capitalize on viable commercial products or profitable market opportunities, be required to forego or delay pursuit of opportunities with other product candidates or other diseases that may later prove to have greater commercial potential, or relinquish valuable rights to such product candidates through collaboration, licensing or other royalty arrangements in cases in which it would have been advantageous for us to retain sole development and commercialization rights. If we are unable to identify additional suitable product candidates for clinical development, this would adversely impact our business strategy and our financial position and share price and could potentially cause us to cease operations.

We will need to expand our organization, and we may experience difficulties in managing this growth, which could disrupt our operations.

As of September 30, 2018, we had 17 employees. We will need to significantly expand our organization, including through our services arrangements with BioTime following the Distribution, and we may have difficulty identifying, hiring and integrating new personnel. Future growth would impose significant additional responsibilities on our management, including the need to identify, recruit, maintain, motivate and integrate additional employees, consultants and contractors. Also, our management may need to divert a disproportionate amount of its attention away from our day-to-day activities and devote a substantial amount of time to managing these growth activities. We may not be able to effectively manage the expansion of our operations, which may result in weaknesses in our infrastructure, give rise to operational mistakes, loss of business opportunities, loss of employees and reduced productivity among remaining employees. Our expected growth could require significant capital expenditures and may divert financial resources from other projects, such as the development of product candidates. If our management is unable to effectively manage our growth, our expenses may increase more than expected, our ability to generate and/or grow revenues could be reduced, and we may not be able to implement our business strategy. Our future financial performance and our ability to commercialize our product candidates and compete effectively will depend, in part, on our ability to effectively manage any future growth.

Many of the biotechnology companies that we compete against for qualified personnel and consultants have greater financial and other resources, different risk profiles and a longer history in the industry than we do. If we are unable to continue to attract and retain high-quality personnel and consultants, the rate and success at which we can discover and develop product candidates and operate our business will be limited.

The commercial success of any of our current or future product candidates will depend upon the degree of market acceptance by physicians, patients, third-party payors, and others in the medical community.

Even with the approvals from the FDA and comparable foreign regulatory authorities, the commercial success of our products will depend in part on the health care providers, patients, and third-party payors accepting our product candidates as medically useful, cost-effective, and safe. Any product that we bring to the market may not gain market acceptance by physicians, patients, third-party payors and other health care providers. The clinical development, commercialization and marketing of cell therapies are at an early-stage, substantially research-oriented, and financially speculative. To date, very few companies have been successful in their efforts to develop and commercialize cell therapies. In general, cell therapies may be susceptible to various risks, including undesirable and unintended side effects, unintended immune system responses, inadequate therapeutic efficacy, potentially prohibitive costs or other characteristics that may prevent or limit their approval or commercial use. Furthermore, the number of people who may use cell- or tissue-based therapies is difficult to forecast with accuracy. Our future success is dependent on the establishment of a large global market for cell therapies and our ability to capture a share of this market with our product candidates.

Even if we successfully develop and obtain regulatory approval for our product candidates, the market may not understand or accept them. Our product candidates represent novel treatments and are expected to compete with a number of more conventional products and therapies manufactured and marketed by others, including major pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies. The degree of market acceptance of any of our products will depend on a number of factors, including without limitation:

- the efficacy of the product as demonstrated in clinical studies and potential advantages over competing treatments;
- the prevalence and severity of the disease and any side effects;
- the clinical indications for which approval is granted, including any limitations or warnings contained in a product's approved labeling;
- the convenience and ease of administration;
- the cost of treatment, particular as additive to existing treatments;
- the willingness of the patients and physicians to accept and use these therapies and the perception of efficacy and safety of our approved products by such parties;
- the marketing, sales and distribution support for the products;
- the publicity and ethical, social and legal concerns regarding the use of embryonic stem cells for our products or competing products and treatments; and
- government regulations restricting or prohibiting our research or manufacturing processes for stem cells due to ethical, social and legal concerns regarding their use in medical research and treatment; and
- the pricing and availability of third-party insurance coverage and reimbursement.

Even if a product displays a favorable efficacy and safety profile upon approval, market acceptance of the product will initially remain uncertain. Efforts to educate the medical community and third-party payors on the benefits of the products may require significant investment and resources and may never be successful. If our products fail to achieve an adequate level of acceptance by physicians, patients, third-party payors, and other health care providers, we will not be able to generate sufficient revenue to become or remain profitable.

If the market opportunities for our product candidates are smaller than we believe they are, we may not meet our revenue expectations and, even assuming approval of a product candidate, our business may suffer.

Our projections of the number of potential users of our product candidates in the markets we are attempting to address are based on our beliefs and estimates and include several key assumptions based on our industry knowledge, industry publications, third-party research reports and other surveys. You should bear in mind the following:

- Our estimates have been derived from a variety of sources, including publications and scientific literature or market research estimating the total number of patients and currently approved or used therapies, as well as certain assumptions regarding the potential size of the market assuming broad regulatory approval or potential usage by physicians beyond the approved label, any of which may prove to be incorrect.

- The scope of approval and potential use may be significantly narrower and the number of patients may turn out to be lower than expected.

- Competitive products or approaches may be approved or come into use by medical providers and the potentially addressable patient population for each of our product candidates may be limited or may not be amenable to treatment with our product candidates, and new patients may become increasingly difficult to identify or gain access to, any which could adversely affect our results of operations and our business.

If the actual market for any of our product candidates is smaller than we expect, our revenue may be limited and it may be more difficult for us to achieve or maintain profitability.

We will face risks related to the manufacture of medical products for any product candidates that we develop.

The manufacture of medical products, and in particular biologics, is complex and requires significant expertise and capital investment, including the development of advanced manufacturing techniques and process controls, none of which we presently have. Unless we are able to raise the capital required to construct our own manufacturing facilities, and are able to develop the expertise to manage and operate a manufacturing facility of our own, we may need to rely on third-party manufacturers to manufacture any products that we develop. There is no assurance that we will be able to identify manufacturers on acceptable terms or at all. Regardless of whether we do our own manufacturing or rely on third parties to manufacture products for us, we will face all risks related to the manufacture of therapeutic products for use in medicine including the following risks:

- We or any third-party manufacturers might be unable to timely formulate and manufacture our products or produce the quantity and quality required to meet our clinical and commercial needs, if any.

- We or any third-party manufacturers may not be able to execute our manufacturing procedures appropriately.

- Any third-party manufacturers we engage may not perform as agreed or may not remain in the contract manufacturing business for the time required to supply our clinical trials or to successfully produce, store and distribute our products on a commercial scale.

- We or any third-party manufacturers will be subject to ongoing periodic unannounced inspection by the United States Food and Drug Administration, or FDA, and corresponding state agencies to ensure strict compliance with cGMP and other government regulations and corresponding foreign standards. We will not have control over third-party manufacturers' compliance with applicable regulations and standards.

- We may not own, or may have to share, the intellectual property rights to any improvements made by our third-party manufacturers in the manufacturing process for our product candidates.

- Third-party manufacturers could breach or terminate their agreements with us.

- We or third-party manufacturers may experience manufacturing difficulties due to resource constraints or as a result of labor disputes or unstable political environments.

In addition, we may rely on third parties to perform release testing on our product candidates prior to delivery to patients. If these tests are not appropriately conducted and test data are not reliable, patients could be put at risk of serious harm which could result in product liability suits.

If we or any third-party manufacturers that we may engage were to encounter any of these difficulties, our ability to provide our product candidates to patients in clinical trials or to the medical market place would be jeopardized. Any delay or interruption in the supply of clinical trial supplies could delay the completion of clinical trials, increase the costs associated with maintaining clinical trial programs and, depending upon the period of delay, could require us to either commence new clinical trials at additional expense or terminate clinical trials completely.

The regulatory authorities also may, at any time following approval of a product for sale, audit our manufacturing facilities or those of our third-party contractors. If any such inspection or audit identifies a failure to comply with applicable regulations or if a violation of our product specifications or applicable regulations occurs independent of such an inspection or audit, we or the relevant regulatory authority may require remedial measures that may be costly and/or time-consuming for us or a third party to implement and that may include the temporary or permanent suspension of a clinical study or commercial sales or the temporary or permanent closure of a facility. Any such remedial measures imposed upon us or third parties with whom we contract could materially harm our business.

Additionally, if supply from one approved manufacturer is interrupted, there could be a significant disruption in commercial supply. The regulatory agencies may also require additional studies if a new manufacturer is relied upon for commercial production. Switching manufacturers may involve substantial costs and is likely to result in a delay in our desired clinical and commercial timelines.

Further, our product candidates are manufactured by starting with established master cell banks of human embryonic cells and other cells that are cryopreserved. We will be required to expand the numbers of the pluripotent stem cell master cell banks for future use, as well as produce working cell banks from which the product will be manufactured for clinical trials, produce the relevant product under cGMP conditions, expand the number of relevant cells and cryopreserve them under cGMP conditions. We may not be able to expand the numbers of the pluripotent stem cell master cell banks to provide sufficient cells for clinical trial or for commercial scale production. We may not be able to manufacture product that meets release criteria due to sterility, identity or potency issues. We may not have access or be able to make the reagents necessary to manufacture the cells and we may not have access to an adequate supply channels to transport and distribute the products. There are also risks that the cells may be destroyed by interruption in their cryopreservation by means of natural disasters such as earthquakes, power outages, or other unexpected events, or the cells may be determined to be unacceptable as a source of human cellular therapies for reasons we cannot envision. We cannot assure you that any stability or other issues relating to the manufacture of any of our product candidates or products will not occur in the future. If any of our master cell banks are lost or destroyed, including due to systems failure in the cryopreservation processes, our planned clinical trials would be severely delayed and we would incur significant costs associated with obtaining new supply of cell banks. Accordingly, failures or difficulties faced at any level of our supply chain could adversely affect our business and delay or impede the development and commercialization of any of our product candidates or products and could have an adverse effect on our business, prospects, financial condition and results of operations.

Any therapies that we may develop may compete with other product candidates and products for access to manufacturing facilities. There are a limited number of manufacturers that operate under cGMP regulations and that might be capable of manufacturing cell-based products for us. Any performance failure on the part of our existing or future manufacturers could delay clinical development or marketing approval.

Each of these risks could delay our clinical trials, any approval of our product candidates by the FDA, or the commercialization of our product candidates, and could result in higher costs or deprive us of potential product revenue.

Any cell-based products that receive regulatory approval may be difficult and expensive to manufacture on a commercial scale.

Pluripotent stem cell and progenitor cell derived therapeutic cells have only been produced on a small scale and not in quantities and at levels of purity and viability that will be needed for wide scale commercialization. If we are successful in developing products that consist of cells or compounds derived from pluripotent stem cells or progenitor cells, we will need to develop processes and technology for the commercial production of those products. Pluripotent stem cell or progenitor cell based products are likely to be more expensive to manufacture on a commercial scale than most other drugs on the market today. The high cost of manufacturing a product will require that we charge our customers a high price for the product in order to cover our costs and earn a profit. If the price of our products is too high, hospitals and physicians may be reluctant to purchase our products and we may not be able to sell our products in sufficient volumes to recover our costs or to earn a profit.

If we fail to meet our obligations under license agreements, we may lose our rights to key technologies on which our business depends.

Our business will depend on several critical technologies that we have licensed or sublicensed from BioTime or certain BioTime subsidiaries. The license and sublicense agreements impose obligations on us, including payment obligations and obligations to pursue development and commercialization of products and technologies under the licensed patents or technology. If the licensor or sublicensor believes that we have failed to meet our obligations under a license or sublicense agreement, they could seek to limit or terminate our license rights, which could lead to costly and time-consuming litigation and, potentially, our loss of the licensed rights. In addition, certain of our licensing counterparties may terminate without cause, including *Yeda* Research in connection with the relational databases that we in-license from *Yeda* for LifeMap Sciences. During the period of any such litigation our ability to carry out the development and commercialization of potential new products or technologies, and our ability to raise any capital that we might then need, could be significantly and negatively affected. If our license rights were restricted or ultimately lost, we would not be able to continue to use the licensed or sublicensed technology in our business.

Our future success depends on our ability to retain our key personnel and to attract, retain and motivate qualified personnel.

Our industry has experienced a high rate of turnover of management personnel in recent years. We are highly dependent on the development, regulatory, commercialization and business development expertise of Michael West, Ph.D., our Chief Executive Officer, as well as the other principal members of our management, scientific and clinical teams. Although we expect to have formal employment agreements with our executive officers, these agreements do not prevent them from terminating their employment with us at any time. In addition, several of our key employees are also employed in such roles at BioTime, which could result in the diversion of time and efforts away from the management and development of our business. For example, following the Distribution, our Chief Financial Officer intends to retain his role as Chief Financial Officer of BioTime.

If we lose one or more of our executive officers or key employees, our ability to implement our business strategy successfully could be seriously harmed. Furthermore, replacing executive officers and key employees may be difficult and may take an extended period of time because of the limited number of individuals in our industry with the breadth of skills and experience required to develop, gain regulatory approval of and commercialize product candidates successfully. Competition to hire from this limited pool is intense, and we may be unable to hire, train, retain or motivate these additional key personnel on acceptable terms given the competition among numerous pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies for similar personnel. We also experience competition for the hiring of scientific and clinical personnel from universities and research institutions. In addition, we rely on consultants and advisors, including scientific and clinical advisors, to assist us in formulating our research and development and commercialization strategy. Our consultants and advisors may be engaged by entities other than us and may have commitments under consulting or advisory contracts with other entities that may limit their availability to us. If we are unable to continue to attract and retain high quality personnel, our ability to develop and commercialize product candidates will be limited.

Our business and operations could suffer in the event of system failures.

Despite the implementation of security measures, our internal computer systems and those of our contractors and consultants are vulnerable to damage from computer viruses, unauthorized access, natural disasters including earthquakes and tsunamis, terrorism, war, and telecommunication and electrical failures. Such events could cause significant interruption of our operations and development programs. For example, the loss of data for our product candidates could result in delays in our regulatory filings and development efforts and significantly increase our costs. To the extent that any disruption or security breach was to result in a loss of or damage to our data, or inappropriate disclosure of confidential or proprietary information, we could incur liability and the development of our product candidates could be delayed.

In addition, our product candidates are manufactured by starting with cells that are stored in a cryopreserved master cell bank. While we believe we have adequate backup should any cell bank be lost in a catastrophic event, it is possible that we or our third-party suppliers and manufacturers could lose multiple cell banks and have our manufacturing severely impacted by the need to replace the cell banks. See "—We will face risks related to the manufacture of medical products for any product candidates that we develop." We cannot assure you that any stability or other issues relating to the manufacture of any of our product candidates or products will not occur in the future. Any delay or interruption in the supply of clinical trial supplies could delay the completion of planned clinical trials, increase the costs associated with maintaining clinical trial programs and, depending upon the period of delay, require us to commence new clinical trials at additional expense or terminate clinical trials completely. Any adverse developments affecting clinical or commercial manufacturing of our product candidates or products may result in shipment delays, inventory shortages, lot failures, product withdrawals or recalls or other interruptions in the supply of our product candidates or products. Accordingly, failures or difficulties faced at any level of our supply chain could adversely affect our business and delay or impede the development and commercialization of any of our product candidates or products and could have an adverse effect on our business, prospects, financial condition and results of operations.

We may expend our limited resources to pursue a particular product candidate or indication and fail to capitalize on product candidates or indications that may be more profitable or for which there is a greater likelihood of success.

Because we have limited financial and managerial resources, we focus on research programs and product candidates that we identify for specific indications. As a result, we may forego or delay pursuit of opportunities with other product candidates or for other indications that later prove to have greater commercial potential. Our resource allocation decisions may cause us to fail to timely capitalize on viable commercial products or profitable market opportunities. Our spending on current and future research and development programs and product candidates for specific indications may not yield any commercially viable products. If we do not accurately evaluate the commercial potential or target market for a particular product candidate, we may relinquish valuable rights to that product candidate through collaboration, licensing or other royalty arrangements in cases in which it would have been more advantageous for us to retain sole development and commercialization rights to such product candidate.

Failure of our internal control over financial reporting could harm our business and financial results.

Our management is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting. Internal control over financial reporting is a process designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting for external purposes in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the U.S. Internal control over financial reporting includes maintaining records that in reasonable detail accurately and fairly reflect our transactions; providing reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary for preparation of our financial statements; providing reasonable assurance that receipts and expenditures of our assets are made in accordance with management authorization; and providing reasonable assurance that unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition of our assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements would be prevented or detected on a timely basis. Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting is not intended to provide absolute assurance that a misstatement of our financial statements would be prevented or detected. If we are successful in developing new medical products and technologies, the commercialization of those products and technologies will place significant additional pressure on our system of internal control over financial reporting. Any failure to maintain an effective system of internal control over financial reporting could limit our ability to report our financial results accurately and timely or to detect and prevent fraud. See "—Risks Pertaining to Our Common Stock—Our accounting and other management systems and resources may not be adequately prepared to meet the financial reporting and other requirements to which we will be subject following the Distribution, and failure to achieve and maintain effective internal controls could have a material adverse effect on our business and the price of our common stock."

We will initially rely in part on financial systems maintained by BioTime and upon services provided by BioTime personnel. BioTime will allocate certain expenses among itself, us, and BioTime's other subsidiaries and affiliates, which creates a risk that the allocations may not accurately reflect the benefit of an expenditure or use of financial or other resources by us, BioTime, and the BioTime subsidiaries and affiliates among which the allocations are made.

Recent changes in U.S. federal income tax law may have an adverse effect on our cash flows, results of operations or financial condition.

On December 22, 2017, the United States enacted major federal tax reform legislation, Public Law No. 115-97, commonly referred to as the 2017 Tax Cuts and Jobs Act ("2017 Tax Act"), which enacted a broad range of changes to the Internal Revenue Code. Changes to taxes on corporations impacted by the 2017 Tax Act include, but not limited to, changing the U.S. federal tax rate on corporations to a 21 percent flat tax rate, eliminating the corporate alternative minimum tax ("AMT"), imposing additional limitations on the deductibility of interest and net operating losses, allowing any net operating loss ("NOLs") generated in tax years ending after December 31, 2017 to be carried forward indefinitely and generally repealing NOL carrybacks, reducing the maximum deduction for NOL carryforwards arising in tax years beginning after 2017 to a percentage of the taxpayer's taxable income, and allowing for additional expensing of certain capital expenditures. The 2017 Tax Act also puts into effect a number of changes impacting operations outside of the United States including, but not limited to, the imposition of a one-time tax "deemed repatriation" on accumulated offshore earnings not previously subject to U.S. tax, and shifts the U.S taxation of multinational corporations from a worldwide system of taxation to a territorial system. Notwithstanding the reduction in the corporate income tax rate, the overall impact of the new federal tax law is uncertain and our business and financial condition could be adversely affected. In addition, it is uncertain if and to what extent various states will conform to the newly enacted federal tax law.

Risks Related to Our Industry

We face significant competition in an environment of rapid technological change and the possibility that our competitors may achieve regulatory approval before us or develop therapies that are more advanced or effective than ours, which may harm our business and financial condition, and our ability to successfully market or commercialize our product candidates.

The biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries are characterized by rapidly changing technologies, competition and a strong emphasis on intellectual property. We may face competition from other companies focused on therapeutics for age-related disease, which is a highly competitive environment. There are numerous biotechnology companies developing therapeutics for human aging, with each company often focusing on a specific molecular pathway within cells. For example, ResTORbio, Inc. is developing modulators of the mechanistic target of rapamycin (mTOR) pathway to treat immunological and cardiovascular disorders. Calico Life Sciences LLC is a Google-founded research and development company aimed at identifying molecular pathways that control animal lifespan and translating these insights into novel therapeutics designed to increase human healthspan. Unity Biotechnology, Inc. focuses on cellular senescence, in particular, the use of agents that can target senescent cells for selective ablation (senolysis). Unity's stated targeted age-related diseases include osteoarthritis as well as other ophthalmological and pulmonary diseases. Our therapeutic products in development are likely to face competition from a large number of companies and technological strategies including therapeutics intended to address our lead indications. See "Business—Competition."

We may also face competition from large and specialty pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies, academic research institutions, government agencies and public and private research institutions. Many of our current or potential competitors, either alone or with their collaboration partners, have significantly greater financial resources and expertise in research and development, manufacturing, preclinical testing, conducting clinical trials, obtaining regulatory approvals, and marketing approved products than we do. Mergers and acquisitions in the pharmaceutical, biotechnology, and gene therapy industries may result in even more resources being concentrated among a smaller number of our competitors. Smaller or early-stage companies may also prove to be significant competitors, particularly through collaborative arrangements with large and established companies. These competitors also compete with us in recruiting and retaining qualified scientific and management personnel and establishing clinical trial sites and patient registration for clinical trials, as well as in acquiring technologies complementary to, or necessary for, our programs. Our commercial opportunity could be reduced or eliminated if our competitors develop and commercialize products that are safer, more effective, have fewer or less severe side effects, are more convenient, or are less expensive than any products that we may develop or that would render any products that we may develop obsolete or non-competitive. Our competitors also may obtain FDA or other regulatory approval for their products more rapidly than we may obtain approval for ours, which could result in our competitors establishing a strong market position before we are able to enter the market. In particular, the Ministry of Labor Health and Welfare in Japan may grant SAKIGAKE designation to a competing product candidate, which is designed to provide for faster review and approval for any such product candidate as compared to the conventional process. If any competing product candidate receives SAKIGAKE designation in Japan, it may be commercialized more quickly in Japan than any of our product candidates. Additionally, technologies developed by our competitors may render our potential product candidates uneconomic or obsolete, and we may not be successful in marketing any product candidates we may develop against competitors.

Any product candidates for which we intend to seek approval as biologic products may face competition sooner than anticipated.

The Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, signed into law on March 23, 2010 ("ACA"), includes a subtitle called the Biologics Price Competition and Innovation Act of 2009, or BPCIA, which created an abbreviated approval pathway for biological products that are biosimilar to or interchangeable with an FDA-licensed reference biological product. Under the BPCIA, an application for a biosimilar product may not be submitted to the FDA until four years following the date that the reference product was first licensed by the FDA. In addition, the approval of a biosimilar product may not be made effective by the FDA until 12 years from the date on which the reference product was first licensed. During this 12-year period of exclusivity, another company may still market a competing version of the reference product if the FDA approves a full BLA for the competing product containing the sponsor's own pre-clinical data and data from adequate and well-controlled clinical trials to demonstrate the safety, purity and potency of their product. The law is complex and is still being interpreted and implemented by the FDA. As a result, its ultimate impact, implementation, and meaning are subject to uncertainty. While it is uncertain when such processes intended to implement BPCIA may be fully adopted by the FDA, any such processes could have a material adverse effect on the future commercial prospects for our biological products.

There is a risk that any of our product candidates approved as a biological product under a BLA would not qualify for the 12-year period of exclusivity or that this exclusivity could be shortened due to congressional action or otherwise, or that the FDA will not consider our product candidates to be reference products for competing products, potentially creating the opportunity for generic competition sooner than anticipated. Other aspects of the BPCIA, some of which may impact the BPCIA exclusivity provisions, have also been the subject of recent litigation. Moreover, the extent to which a biosimilar, once approved, will be substituted for any one of our reference products in a way that is similar to traditional generic substitution for non-biological products is not yet clear, and will depend on a number of marketplace and regulatory factors that are still developing.

The regulatory approval processes of the FDA and comparable foreign authorities are lengthy, time consuming and inherently unpredictable, and if we are ultimately unable to obtain regulatory approval for our product candidates, our business will be substantially harmed.

The time required to obtain approval by the FDA and comparable foreign authorities is unpredictable but typically takes many years following the commencement of clinical trials and depends upon numerous factors, including the substantial discretion of the regulatory authorities. In addition, approval policies, regulations, or the type and amount of clinical data necessary to gain approval may change during the course of a product candidate's clinical development and may vary among jurisdictions. We have not obtained regulatory approval for any product candidate and it is possible that any other product candidates we may seek to develop in the future will ever obtain regulatory approval. Neither we nor any future collaborator is permitted to market any of our product candidates in the United States until we receive regulatory approval of a biologic license application, or BLA, from the FDA. It is possible that the FDA may refuse to accept for substantive review any BLAs that we submit for our product candidates or may conclude after review of our data that our application is insufficient to obtain marketing approval of our product candidates.

Prior to obtaining approval to commercialize a product candidate in the United States or abroad, we or our collaborators must demonstrate with substantial evidence from well-controlled clinical trials, and to the satisfaction of the FDA or foreign regulatory agencies, that such product candidates are safe and effective for their intended uses. Results from nonclinical studies and clinical trials can be interpreted in different ways. Even if we believe the nonclinical or clinical data for our product candidates are promising, such data may not be sufficient to support approval by the FDA and other regulatory authorities. The FDA may also require us to conduct additional preclinical studies or clinical trials for our product candidates either prior to or post-approval, or it may object to elements of our clinical development program. Depending on the extent of these or any other FDA-required studies, approval of any BLA or application that we submit may be delayed by several years, or may require us to expend significantly more resources than we have available.

Any therapeutic products that we and our subsidiaries may develop cannot be sold until the FDA and corresponding foreign regulatory authorities approve the products for medical use. The need to obtain regulatory approval to market a new product means that:

- We will have to conduct expensive and time-consuming clinical trials of new products. The full cost of conducting and completing clinical trials necessary to obtain FDA and foreign regulatory approval of a new product cannot be presently determined, but could exceed our financial resources.

- Clinical trials and the regulatory approval process for a pharmaceutical or cell-based product can take several years to complete. As a result, we will incur the expense and delay inherent in seeking FDA and foreign regulatory approval of new products, even if the results of clinical trials are favorable.

- Data obtained from preclinical and clinical studies is susceptible to varying interpretations and regulatory changes that could delay, limit, or prevent regulatory agency approvals.

- Because the therapeutic products we plan to develop with pluripotent stem cell technology or progenitor cell technology involve the application of new technologies and approaches to medicine, the FDA or foreign regulatory agencies may subject those products to additional or more stringent review than drugs or biologicals derived from other technologies.

- A product that is approved may be subject to restrictions on use.

- The FDA can recall or withdraw approval of a product, if it deems necessary.

- We will face similar regulatory issues in foreign countries.

- While we may elect to submit a 510(k) notification for regulatory clearance of our *Renelon* device, we have never submitted a 510(k) notification before and may be unsuccessful in obtaining clearance for our Renelon device. In addition, *Renelon* may not be classified by the FDA as a 510(k) device and may be required to be developed through a Premarket Approval (PMA) application, as an investigational new drug (IND), or regulated as a drug/device combination.

Approval of our product candidates may be delayed or refused for many reasons, including the following:

- the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may disagree with the design or implementation of our clinical trials;

- we may be unable to demonstrate to the satisfaction of the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities that our product candidates are safe and effective for any of their proposed indications;

- the results of clinical trials may not meet the level of statistical significance required by the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities for approval;

- we may be unable to demonstrate that our product candidates' clinical and other benefits outweigh their safety risks;

- the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may disagree with our interpretation of data from preclinical programs or clinical trials;

- the data collected from clinical trials of our product candidates may not be sufficient to support the submission of a BLA or other comparable submission in foreign jurisdictions or to obtain regulatory approval in the United States or elsewhere;

- the facilities of the third-party manufacturers with which we contract may not be adequate to support approval of our product candidates (for example, regulatory approval of cell- and tissue-based products require high standards of quality control); and

- the approval policies or regulations of the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may significantly change in a manner rendering our clinical data insufficient for approval.

Of the large number of potential products in development, only a small percentage successfully complete the FDA or foreign regulatory approval processes and are commercialized. The lengthy approval process as well as the unpredictability of future clinical trial results may result in our failing to obtain regulatory approval to market our product candidates, which would significantly harm our business, results of operations and prospects.

Ethical, social and legal concerns about research regarding stem cells, could result in regulations restricting or prohibiting the processes we may use. Federal and state agencies, congressional committees and foreign governments have expressed interest in further regulating biotechnology. More restrictive regulations or claims that our products are unsafe or pose a hazard could prevent us from commercializing any products. New government requirements may be established that could delay or prevent regulatory approval of our product candidates under development. It is impossible to predict whether legislative changes will be enacted, regulations, policies or guidance changed, or interpretations by agencies or courts changed, or what the impact of such changes, if any, may be.

Regulatory requirements governing gene and cell therapy products have changed frequently and may continue to change in the future. The FDA has established the Office of Tissues and Advanced Therapies within its Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, or CBER, to consolidate the review of gene therapy and related products, and has established the Cellular, Tissue and Gene Therapies Advisory Committee to advise the CBER in its review. Gene therapy clinical trials conducted at institutions that receive funding for recombinant DNA research from the United States National Institutes of Health, or NIH, also are potentially subject to review by the NIH Office of Science Policy's Recombinant DNA Advisory Committee, or the RAC, in limited circumstances. Although the FDA decides whether individual gene therapy protocols may proceed, the RAC public review process, if undertaken, can delay the initiation of a clinical trial, even if the FDA has reviewed the trial design and details and authorized its initiation. Conversely, the FDA can put an investigational new drug application, or IND, on clinical hold even if the RAC has provided a favorable review or an exemption from in-depth, public review. If we were to engage an NIH-funded institution, to conduct a clinical trial, that institution's institutional biosafety committee, or IBC, as well as its institutional review board, or IRB, would need to review the proposed clinical trial to assess the safety of the trial and may determine that RAC review is needed. In addition, adverse developments in clinical trials of gene therapy products conducted by others may cause the FDA or other oversight bodies to change the requirements for approval of any of our product candidates. Similarly, foreign regulatory authorities may issue new guidelines concerning the development and marketing authorization for gene therapy medicinal products and require that we comply with these new guidelines.

Some of our future products may be viewed by the FDA as combination products and the review of combination products is often more complex and more time consuming than the review of other types of products.

Our future products may be regulated by the FDA as combination products. For a combination product, the FDA must determine which center or centers within the FDA will review the product candidate and under what legal authority the product candidate will be reviewed. The process of obtaining FDA marketing clearance or approval is lengthy, expensive, and uncertain, and we cannot be sure that any of our combination products, or any other products, will be cleared or approved in a timely fashion, or at all. In addition, the review of combination products is often more complex and more time consuming than the review of a product candidate under the jurisdiction of only one center within the FDA. We cannot be sure that the FDA will not select to have our combination products reviewed and regulated by only one FDA center and/or different legal authority, in which case the path to regulatory approval would be different and could be more lengthy and costly. If the FDA does not approve or clear our products in a timely fashion, or at all, our business and financial condition will be adversely affected.

If we encounter difficulties enrolling patients in our clinical trials, our clinical development activities could be delayed or otherwise adversely affected.

The timely completion of clinical trials in accordance with their protocols depends, among other things, on our ability to enroll a sufficient number of patients who remain in the study until its conclusion. We may encounter delays in enrolling, or be unable to enroll, a sufficient number of patients to complete any of our clinical trials, and even once enrolled we may be unable to retain a sufficient number of patients to complete any of our trials. The enrollment of patients depends on many factors, including:

- the patient eligibility criteria defined in the protocol;
- the size of the patient population required for analysis of the trial's primary endpoints;
- the proximity of patients to study sites;
- the design of the trial;
- our ability to recruit clinical trial investigators with the appropriate competencies and experience;
- clinicians' and patients' perceptions as to the potential advantages of the product candidate being studied in relation to other available therapies, including any new products that may be approved for the indications we are investigating;
- our ability to obtain and maintain patient consents; and
- the risk that patients enrolled in clinical trials will drop out of the trials before completion.

In addition, our clinical trials will compete with other clinical trials for product candidates that are in the same therapeutic areas as our product candidates, and this competition will reduce the number and types of patients available to us, because some patients who might have opted to enroll in our trials may instead opt to enroll in a trial being conducted by one of our competitors. Since the number of qualified clinical investigators is limited, we expect to conduct some of our clinical trials at the same clinical trial sites that some of our competitors use, which will reduce the number of patients who are available for our clinical trials in such clinical trial site.

Delays or failures in planned patient enrollment or retention may result in increased costs, program delays or both, which could have a harmful effect on our ability to develop our product candidates, or could render further development impossible.

Even if we obtain FDA approval for any of our product candidates in the United States, we may never obtain approval for or commercialize it in any other jurisdiction, which would limit our ability to realize its full market potential.

In order to market any products in any particular jurisdiction, we must establish and comply with numerous and varying regulatory requirements on a country-by-country basis regarding safety and efficacy. Approval by the FDA in the United States does not ensure approval by regulatory authorities in other countries or jurisdictions. However, the failure to obtain approval in one jurisdiction may negatively impact our ability to obtain approval elsewhere. In addition, clinical trials conducted in one country may not be accepted by regulatory authorities in other countries, and regulatory approval in one country does not guarantee regulatory approval in any other country.

Approval processes vary among countries and can involve additional product testing and validation and additional administrative review periods. Seeking foreign regulatory approval could result in difficulties and increased costs for us and require additional preclinical studies or clinical trials which could be costly and time consuming. Regulatory requirements can vary widely from country to country and could delay or prevent the introduction of our products in those countries. We do not have any product candidates approved for sale in any jurisdiction, including in international markets, and we do not have experience in obtaining regulatory approval in international markets. If we fail to comply with regulatory requirements in international markets or to obtain and maintain required approvals, or if regulatory approvals in international markets are delayed, our target market will be reduced and our ability to realize the full market potential of any product we develop will be unrealized.

Clinical studies are costly, time consuming and inherently risky, and we may fail to demonstrate safety and efficacy to the satisfaction of applicable regulatory authorities

Clinical development is expensive, time consuming and involves significant risk. We cannot guarantee that any clinical studies will be conducted as planned or completed on schedule, if at all. A failure of one or more clinical studies can occur at any stage of development. Events that may prevent successful or timely completion of clinical development include but are not limited to:

- inability to generate satisfactory preclinical, toxicology, or other *in vivo* or *in vitro* data to support the initiation or continuation of clinical studies necessary for product approval;

- delays in reaching agreement on acceptable terms with CROs and clinical study sites, the terms of which can be subject to extensive negotiation and may vary significantly among different CROs and clinical study sites;

- delays in obtaining required Institutional Review Board, or IRB, approval at each clinical study site;
- failure to permit the conduct of a study by regulatory authorities, after review of an investigational new drug, or IND, or equivalent foreign application or amendment;
- delays in recruiting qualified patients in our clinical studies;
- failure by clinical sites or our CROs or other third parties to adhere to clinical study requirements or report complete findings;
- failure to perform the clinical studies in accordance with the FDA's good clinical practices requirements, or applicable foreign regulatory guidelines;
- patients dropping out of our clinical studies;
- occurrence of adverse events associated with our product candidates;
- inability to use clinical trial results from foreign jurisdictions in support of U.S. regulatory approval;
- changes in regulatory requirements and guidance that require amending or submitting new clinical protocols;
- the cost of clinical studies of our product candidates;
- negative or inconclusive results from our clinical trials which may result in our deciding, or regulators requiring us, to conduct additional clinical studies or abandon development programs for a product candidate; and
- delays in reaching agreement on acceptable terms with third-party manufacturers, or delays in the manufacture of sufficient quantities of our product candidates for use in clinical studies.

Any inability to successfully complete clinical development and obtain regulatory approval could result in additional costs to us or impair our ability to generate revenue. Clinical study delays could also shorten any periods during which our products have patent protection and may allow competitors to develop and bring products to market before we do and may harm our business and results of operations.

Even if we receive regulatory approval of our product candidates, we will be subject to ongoing regulatory obligations and continued regulatory review, which may result in significant additional expense, and we may be subject to penalties if we fail to comply with regulatory requirements or experience unanticipated problems with our product candidates.

Any product candidate for which we obtain marketing approval, along with the manufacturing processes, post-approval clinical data, labeling, packaging, distribution, adverse event reporting, storage, recordkeeping, export, import, advertising and promotional activities for such product, among other things, will be subject to extensive and ongoing requirements of and review by the FDA and other regulatory authorities. These requirements include submissions of safety and other post-marketing information and reports, establishment registration and drug listing requirements, continued compliance with cGMP requirements relating to manufacturing, quality control, quality assurance and corresponding maintenance of records and documents, requirements regarding the distribution of samples to physicians and recordkeeping and Good Clinical Practice, or GCP, requirements for any clinical trials that we conduct post-approval.

The FDA closely regulates the post-approval marketing and promotion of genetic medicines to ensure they are marketed only for the approved indications and in accordance with the provisions of the approved labeling. The FDA imposes stringent restrictions on manufacturers' communications regarding off-label use and if we market our products for uses beyond their approved indications, we may be subject to enforcement action for off-label marketing. Violations of the U.S. federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, or FDCA, relating to the promotion of prescription drugs may lead to FDA enforcement actions and investigations alleging violations of federal and state health care fraud and abuse laws, as well as state consumer protection laws.

In addition, later discovery of previously unknown adverse events or other problems with our products, manufacturers or manufacturing processes, including adverse events of unanticipated severity or frequency, or with our third-party manufacturers or manufacturing processes, or failure to comply with regulatory requirements, may yield various results, including:

- restrictions on manufacturing such products;
- restrictions on the labeling or marketing of a product;
- restrictions on product distribution or use;
- requirements to conduct post-marketing studies or clinical trials;
- warning letters or holds on clinical trials;
- withdrawal of the products from the market;
- refusal to approve pending applications or supplements to approved applications that we submit;
- recall of products;
- fines, restitution or disgorgement of profits or revenues;
- suspension or withdrawal of marketing approvals;
- refusal to permit the import or export of our products;
- product seizure or detention; or
- injunctions or the imposition of civil or criminal penalties.

The FDA's policies may change and additional government regulations may be enacted that could prevent, limit or delay regulatory approval of any of our product candidates. For example, in December 2016, the 21st Century Cures Act, or Cures Act, was signed into law. The Cures Act, among other things, is intended to modernize the regulation of drugs and biologics and spur innovation, but its ultimate implementation is unclear. If we are slow or unable to adapt to changes in existing requirements or the adoption of new requirements or policies, or if we are not able to maintain regulatory compliance, we may lose any marketing approval that we may have obtained which would adversely affect our business, prospects and ability to achieve or sustain profitability.

We also cannot predict the likelihood, nature or extent of government regulation that may arise from future legislation or administrative or executive action, either in the United States or abroad. For example, certain policies of the Trump administration may impact our business and industry. Namely, the Trump administration has taken several executive actions, including the issuance of a number of Executive Orders, that could impose significant burdens on, or otherwise materially delay, FDA's ability to engage in routine regulatory and oversight activities such as implementing statutes through rulemaking, issuance of guidance, and review and approval of marketing applications. Notably, on January 30, 2017, President Trump issued an Executive Order, applicable to all executive agencies, including the FDA, that requires that for each notice of proposed rulemaking or final regulation to be issued in fiscal year 2017, the agency shall identify at least two existing regulations to be repealed, unless prohibited by law. These requirements are referred to as the "two-for-one" provisions. This Executive Order includes a budget neutrality provision that requires the total incremental cost of all new regulations in the 2017 fiscal year, including repealed regulations, to be no greater than zero, except in limited circumstances. For fiscal years 2018 and beyond, the Executive Order requires agencies to identify regulations to offset any incremental cost of a new regulation and approximate the total costs or savings associated with each new regulation or repealed regulation. In interim guidance issued by the Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs within the Office of Management and Budget on February 2, 2017, the Trump administration indicates that the "two-for-one" provisions may apply not only to agency regulations, but also to significant agency guidance documents. Further, on February 24, 2017, President Trump issued an Executive Order requiring each agency to designate a regulatory reform officer and create a regulatory reform task force to evaluate existing regulations and make recommendations regarding their repeal, replacement or modification. It is difficult to predict how these requirements will be implemented, and the extent to which they will impact the FDA's ability to exercise its regulatory authority. If these executive actions impose constraints on FDA's ability to engage in oversight and implementation activities in the normal course, our business may be negatively impacted.

Our product candidates may cause serious adverse events or undesirable side effects or have other properties which may delay or prevent their regulatory approval, limit the commercial profile of an approved label, or, result in significant negative consequences following marketing approval, if any.

Serious adverse events or undesirable side effects caused by our product candidates could cause us or regulatory authorities to interrupt, delay or halt clinical trials and could result in a more restrictive label or the delay or denial of regulatory approval by the FDA or other comparable foreign authorities. Results of our clinical trials could reveal a high and unacceptable severity and prevalence of side effects, toxicities or unexpected characteristics, including death.

For example, there have been significant adverse side effects in cell therapy treatments in the past, including reported cases of certain cancers. In addition to side effects that may be caused by our product candidates, the conditioning, administration process or related procedures also can cause adverse side effects, including compromise of a patient's immune system. If unacceptable side effects arise in the development of our product candidates, we, the FDA, the IRBs at the institutions in which our studies are conducted or Data Safety Monitoring Board, or DSMB, could suspend or terminate our clinical trials or the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities could order us to cease clinical trials or deny approval of our product candidates for any or all targeted indications. Treatment-related side effects could also affect patient recruitment or the ability of enrolled patients to complete the trial or result in potential product liability claims. In addition, these side effects may not be appropriately recognized or managed by the treating medical staff. We expect to have to train medical personnel using our product candidates to understand the side effect profiles for our clinical trials and upon any commercialization of any of our product candidates. Inadequate training in recognizing or managing the potential side effects of our product candidates could result in patient injury or death. Any of these occurrences may harm our business, financial condition and prospects significantly.

If any of our product candidates receives marketing approval, and we or others later identify undesirable side effects caused by any such product, including during any long-term follow-up observation period recommended or required for patients who receive treatment using our products, a number of potentially significant negative consequences could result, including:

- regulatory authorities may withdraw approvals of such product;
- we may be required to recall a product or change the way such product is administered to patients;
- additional restrictions may be imposed on the marketing of the particular product or the manufacturing processes for the product;
- regulatory authorities may require additional warnings on the label, such as a "black box" warning or contraindication;
- we may be required to implement a Risk Evaluation and Mitigation Strategy, or REMS, or create a medication guide outlining the risks of such side effects for distribution to patients;
- the product could become less competitive;
- we could be sued and held liable for harm caused to patients; and
- our reputation may suffer.

Any of these events could prevent us from achieving or maintaining market acceptance of the particular product candidate, if approved, and could significantly harm our business, results of operations and prospects.

We face potential product liability, and, if successful claims are brought against us, we may incur substantial liability and costs. If the use or misuse of our product candidates harm patients, or is perceived to harm patients even when such harm is unrelated to our product candidates, our regulatory approvals could be revoked or could otherwise be negatively impacted, and we could be subject to costly and damaging product liability claims.

The use or misuse of any product candidates in clinical trials and the sale of any products for which we obtain marketing approval exposes us to the risk of product liability claims. Product liability claims might be brought against us by consumers, healthcare providers, pharmaceutical companies, or others selling or otherwise coming into contact with our products. There is a risk that our product candidates may induce adverse events. If we cannot successfully defend against product liability claims, we could incur substantial liability and costs. In addition, regardless of merit or eventual outcome, product liability claims may result in:

- impairment of our business reputation;
- initiation of investigations by regulators;
- withdrawal of clinical trial participants;
- costs due to related litigation;
- distraction of management's attention from our primary business;
- substantial monetary awards to patients or other claimants;
- the inability to commercialize our product candidates;
- product recalls, withdrawals or labeling, and marketing or promotional restrictions;
- loss of revenue; and
- decreased demand for our product candidates, if approved for commercial sale.

We may not be able to maintain insurance coverage at a reasonable cost or in sufficient amounts to protect us against losses due to liability. If and when we commence clinical trials or obtain marketing approval for any product candidates, we intend to increase our insurance coverage to include clinical use or the sale of commercial products, as applicable; however, we may be unable to obtain product liability insurance on commercially reasonable terms or in adequate amounts. On occasion, large judgments have been awarded in class action lawsuits based on drugs or medical treatments that had unanticipated adverse effects. A successful product liability claim or series of claims brought against us could cause our stock price to decline and, if judgments exceed our insurance coverage, could adversely affect our results of operations and business.

Our insurance policies are expensive and protect us only from some business risks, which leaves us exposed to significant uninsured liabilities.

We do not carry insurance for all categories of risk that our business may encounter. Some of the policies we currently maintain include general liability, employment practices liability, property, auto, workers' compensation, umbrella, and directors' and officers' insurance.

Any additional product liability insurance coverage we acquire in the future, may not be sufficient to reimburse us for any expenses or losses we may suffer. Moreover, insurance coverage is becoming increasingly expensive and in the future we may not be able to maintain insurance coverage at a reasonable cost or in sufficient amounts to protect us against losses due to liability. If we obtain marketing approval for any of our product candidates, we intend to acquire insurance coverage to include the sale of commercial products; however, we may be unable to obtain product liability insurance on commercially reasonable terms or in adequate amounts. A successful product liability claim or series of claims brought against us could cause our share price to decline and, if judgments exceed our insurance coverage, could adversely affect our results of operations and business, including preventing or limiting the commercialization of any product candidates we develop.

We also expect that operating as a public company will make it more difficult and more expensive for us to obtain director and officer liability insurance, and we may be required to accept reduced policy limits and coverage or incur substantially higher costs to obtain the same or similar coverage. As a result, it may be more difficult for us to attract and retain qualified people to serve on our Board of Directors, our board committees or as executive officers. We do not know, however, if we will be able to maintain existing insurance with adequate levels of coverage. Any significant uninsured liability may require us to pay substantial amounts, which would adversely affect our cash position and results of operations.

Our employees and independent contractors, including principal investigators, CROs, consultants, vendors, and any third parties we may engage in connection with development and commercialization may engage in misconduct or other improper activities, including noncompliance with regulatory standards and requirements, which could have a material adverse effect on our business.

Misconduct by our employees and independent contractors, including principal investigators, contract research organizations, or CROs, consultants, vendors, and any third parties we may engage in connection with development and commercialization, could include intentional, reckless or negligent conduct or unauthorized activities that violate: (i) the laws and regulations of the FDA, EMA rules and regulations and other similar regulatory requirements, including those laws that require the reporting of true, complete and accurate information to such authorities; (ii) manufacturing standards; (iii) data privacy, security, fraud and abuse and other healthcare laws and regulations; or (iv) laws that require the reporting of true, complete and accurate financial information and data. Specifically, sales, marketing and business arrangements in the healthcare industry are subject to extensive laws and regulations intended to prevent fraud, misconduct, kickbacks, self-dealing and other abusive practices. These laws and regulations may restrict or prohibit a wide range of pricing, discounting, marketing and promotion, sales commission, customer incentive programs and other business arrangements. Activities subject to these laws could also involve the improper use or misrepresentation of information obtained in the course of clinical trials, creation of fraudulent data in pre-clinical studies or clinical trials or illegal misappropriation of drug product, which could result in regulatory sanctions and cause serious harm to our reputation. It is not always possible to identify and deter misconduct by employees and other third parties, and the precautions we take to detect and prevent this activity may not be effective in controlling unknown or unmanaged risks or losses or in protecting us from governmental investigations or other actions or lawsuits stemming from a failure to comply with such laws or regulations. Additionally, we are subject to the risk that a person or government could allege such fraud or other misconduct, even if none occurred. If any such actions are instituted against us, and we are not successful in defending ourselves or asserting our rights, those actions could have a significant impact on our business and results of operations, including the imposition of significant civil, criminal and administrative penalties, damages, monetary fines, disgorgements, possible exclusion from participation in Medicare, Medicaid, other U.S. federal healthcare programs or healthcare programs in other jurisdictions, individual imprisonment, other sanctions, contractual damages, reputational harm, diminished profits and future earnings, and curtailment of our operations.

Government-imposed bans or restrictions and religious, moral, and ethical concerns about the use of human embryonic stem cells could prevent us from developing and successfully marketing stem cell products.

Government-imposed bans or restrictions on the use of embryos or human embryonic stem cells ("hES cells"), in research and development in the United States and abroad could generally constrain stem cell research, thereby limiting the market and demand for our products.

California law requires that stem cell research be conducted under the oversight of a stem cell review oversight committee ("SCRO"). Many kinds of stem cell research, including the derivation of new hES cell lines, may only be conducted in California with the prior written approval of the SCRO. A SCRO could prohibit or impose restrictions on the research that we plan to do.

The use of hES cells may give rise to religious, moral, and ethical issues. These considerations could lead to more restrictive government regulations or could generally constrain stem cell research, thereby limiting the market and demand for our products.

Adverse publicity regarding cell-based therapies could impact our business.

Adverse publicity due to the ethical and social controversies surrounding the use of embryonic stem cells or any adverse reported side effects from any stem cell or other cell therapy clinical trials or to the failure of such trials to demonstrate that these therapies are efficacious could materially and adversely affect our ability to raise capital, conduct and complete clinical trials and achieve market acceptance of such products, if approved. For example, research institutions, including those who may be our collaborators, may from time to time publish findings or studies regarding the human genome (such as the Human Genome Project) that adversely implicate our product candidates, including findings of cancer dependencies in cell lines used in our cell-based therapies.

The price and sale of any products that we may develop may be limited by health insurance coverage and government regulation.

Success in selling our pharmaceutical and cell-based products and medical devices may depend in part on the extent to which health insurance companies, HMOs, and government health administration authorities such as Medicare and Medicaid will pay for the cost of the products and related treatment. Until we introduce a new product into the medical marketplace, we will not know with certainty whether adequate health insurance, HMO, and government coverage will be available to permit the product to be sold at a price high enough for us to generate a profit. In some foreign countries, pricing or profitability of health care products is subject to government control, which may result in low prices for our products. In the United States, there have been a number of federal and state proposals to implement similar government controls, and new proposals are likely to be made in the future. We cannot be sure that coverage and reimbursement in the United States, the EU or elsewhere will be available for our product candidates or any product that we may develop, and any reimbursement that may become available may be decreased or eliminated in the future.

Third-party payors increasingly are challenging prices charged for pharmaceutical products and services, and many third-party payors may refuse to provide coverage and reimbursement for particular drugs or biologics when an equivalent generic drug, biosimilar or a less expensive therapy is available. It is possible that a third-party payor may consider our product candidates as substitutable and only offer to reimburse patients for the less expensive product. Even if we show improved efficacy or improved convenience of administration with our product candidates, pricing of existing third-party therapeutics may limit the amount we will be able to charge for our product candidates. These payors may deny or revoke the reimbursement status of a given product or establish prices for new or existing marketed products at levels that are too low to enable us to realize an appropriate return on our investment in our product candidates. If reimbursement is not available or is available only at limited levels, we may not be able to successfully commercialize our product candidates, and may not be able to obtain a satisfactory financial return on our product candidates.

There is significant uncertainty related to the insurance coverage and reimbursement of newly-approved products. In the United States, third-party payors, including private and governmental payors, such as the Medicare and Medicaid programs, play an important role in determining the extent to which new drugs and biologics will be covered. The Medicare and Medicaid programs increasingly are used as models in the United States for how private payors and other governmental payors develop their coverage and reimbursement policies for drugs and biologics. Some third-party payors may require pre-approval of coverage for new or innovative devices or drug therapies before they will reimburse healthcare providers who use such therapies. We cannot predict at this time what third-party payors will decide with respect to the coverage and reimbursement for our product candidates.

No uniform policy for coverage and reimbursement for products exists among third-party payors in the United States. Therefore, coverage and reimbursement for products can differ significantly from payor to payor. As a result, the coverage determination process is often a time-consuming and costly process that will require us to provide scientific and clinical support for the use of our product candidates to each payor separately, with no assurance that coverage and adequate reimbursement will be applied consistently or obtained in the first instance. Furthermore, rules and regulations regarding reimbursement change frequently, in some cases on short notice, and we believe that changes in these rules and regulations are likely.

Outside the United States, international operations are generally subject to extensive governmental price controls and other market regulations, and we believe the increasing emphasis on cost-containment initiatives in Europe and other countries have and will continue to put pressure on the pricing and usage of our product candidates. In many countries, the prices of medical products are subject to varying price control mechanisms as part of national health systems. Other countries allow companies to fix their own prices for medical products, but monitor and control company profits. Additional foreign price controls or other changes in pricing regulation could restrict the amount that we are able to charge for our product candidates. Accordingly, in markets outside the United States, the reimbursement for our product candidates may be reduced compared with the United States and may be insufficient to generate commercially-reasonable revenue and profits.

Moreover, increasing efforts by governmental and third-party payors in the United States and abroad to cap or reduce healthcare costs may cause such organizations to limit both coverage and the level of reimbursement for newly approved products and, as a result, they may not cover or provide adequate payment for our product candidates. We expect to experience pricing pressures in connection with the sale of our product candidates due to the trend toward managed health care, the increasing influence of health maintenance organizations and additional legislative changes. The downward pressure on healthcare costs in general, particularly prescription drugs and biologics and surgical procedures and other treatments, has become intense. As a result, increasingly high barriers are being erected to the entry of new products.

Enacted and future healthcare legislation, including the ACA, may increase the difficulty and cost for us to obtain marketing approval of and commercialize our product candidates and may affect the prices we may set.

In the United States, the EU and other jurisdictions, there have been, and we expect there will continue to be, a number of legislative and regulatory changes and proposed changes to the healthcare system that could affect our future results of operations. As a result of the adoption of the ACA in the United States, substantial changes have been made to the system for paying for healthcare in the United States. Certain provisions related to cost-savings and reimbursement measures could adversely affect our future financial performance. For example, among the provisions of the ACA, those of greatest importance to the biopharmaceutical industry includes the following:

- an annual, non-deductible fee payable by any entity that manufactures or imports certain branded prescription drugs and biologic agents (other than those designated as orphan drugs), which is apportioned among these entities according to their market share in certain government healthcare programs;

- new requirements to report certain financial arrangements with physicians and teaching hospitals, including reporting "transfers of value" made or distributed to prescribers and other healthcare providers and reporting investment interests held by physicians and their immediate family members;

- a new methodology by which rebates owed by manufacturers under the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program are calculated for drugs that are inhaled, infused, instilled, implanted or injected;

- expansion of eligibility criteria for Medicaid programs by, among other things, allowing states to offer Medicaid coverage to certain individuals with income at or below 133% of the federal poverty level, thereby potentially increasing a manufacturer's Medicaid rebate liability;

- a licensure framework for follow on biologic products;

- a new Patient-Centered Outcomes Research Institute to oversee, identify priorities in, and conduct comparative clinical effectiveness research, along with funding for such research; and

- establishment of a Center for Medicare Innovation at the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services, or CMS, to test innovative payment and service delivery models to lower Medicare and Medicaid spending, potentially including prescription drug spending.

Since its enactment, some of the provisions of the ACA have yet to be fully implemented, while certain provisions have been subject to judicial, congressional, and executive challenges. As a result, there have been delays in the implementation of, and action taken to repeal or replace, certain aspects of the ACA. The U.S. Supreme Court has upheld certain key aspects of the legislation, including a tax-based shared responsibility payment imposed on certain individuals who fail to maintain qualifying health coverage for all or part of a year, which is commonly known as the requirement that all individuals maintain health insurance coverage or pay a penalty, referred to as the "individual mandate." However, as a result of tax reform legislation passed in December 2017, the individual mandate has been eliminated effective January 1, 2019. According to the Congressional Budget Office, the repeal of the individual mandate will cause 13 million fewer Americans to be insured in 2027 and premiums in insurance markets may rise.

Since January 2017, President Trump has signed two Executive Orders designed to delay the implementation of certain provisions of the ACA or otherwise circumvent some of the requirements for health insurance mandated by the ACA. One Executive Order directs federal agencies with authorities and responsibilities under the ACA to waive, defer, grant exemptions from, or delay the implementation of any provision of the ACA that would impose a fiscal or regulatory burden on states, individuals, healthcare providers, health insurers, or manufacturers of pharmaceuticals or medical devices. The Order requires that for each notice of proposed rulemaking or final regulation to be issued in fiscal year 2017, the applicable agency shall identify at least two existing regulations to be repealed, unless prohibited by law. These requirements are referred to as the "two-for-one" provisions. This Executive Order includes a budget neutrality provision that requires the total incremental cost of all new regulations in the 2017 fiscal year, including repealed regulations, to be no greater than zero, except in limited circumstances. For fiscal years 2018 and beyond, the Executive Order requires agencies to identify regulations to offset any incremental cost of a new regulation and approximate the total costs or savings associated with each new regulation or repealed regulation. In interim guidance issued by the Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs within the Office of Management and Budget on February 2, 2017, the Trump administration indicates that the "two-for-one" provisions may apply not only to agency regulations, but also to significant agency guidance documents.

The second Executive Order terminates the cost-sharing subsidies that reimburse insurers under the ACA. Several state Attorneys General filed suit to stop the administration from terminating the subsidies, but their request for a restraining order was denied by a federal judge in California on October 25, 2017. The loss of the cost share reduction payments is expected to increase premiums on certain policies issued by qualified health plans under the ACA. In addition, the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services, or CMS, has recently proposed regulations that would give states greater flexibility in setting benchmarks for insurers in the individual and small group marketplaces, which may have the effect of relaxing the essential health benefits required under the ACA for plans sold through such marketplaces. Litigation and legislation over the ACA are likely to continue, with unpredictable and uncertain results. We continue to evaluate the effect that the ACA and its possible repeal and replacement has on our business.

Further, on February 24, 2017, President Trump issued an Executive Order requiring each agency to designate a regulatory reform officer and create a regulatory reform task force to evaluate existing regulations and make recommendations regarding their repeal, replacement or modification. It is difficult to predict how these requirements will be implemented, and the extent to which they will impact the FDA's ability to exercise its regulatory authority.

In addition, other legislative changes have been proposed and adopted in the United States since the ACA was enacted. In August 2011, the Budget Control Act of 2011, among other things, created measures for spending reductions by Congress. A Joint Select Committee on Deficit Reduction, tasked with recommending a targeted deficit reduction of at least $1.2 trillion for the years 2013 through 2021, was unable to reach required goals, thereby triggering the legislation's automatic reduction to several government programs. This includes aggregate reductions of Medicare payments to providers of 2% per fiscal year. These reductions went into effect in April 2013 and, due to subsequent legislative amendments to the statute, will remain in effect through 2025 unless additional action is taken by Congress. In January 2013, the American Taxpayer Relief Act of 2012 was signed into law, which, among other things, further reduced Medicare payments to several types of providers, including hospitals, imaging centers and cancer treatment centers, and increased the statute of limitations period for the government to recover overpayments to providers from three to five years. These new laws or any other similar laws introduced in the future may result in additional reductions in Medicare and other health care funding, which could negatively affect our customers and accordingly, our financial operations.

The costs of prescription pharmaceuticals in the United States has also been the subject of considerable debate, and members of Congress and the Trump Administration have indicated that each will address such costs through new legislative and administrative measures. To date, there have been several recent U.S. congressional inquiries and proposed state and federal legislation designed to, among other things, improve transparency in drug pricing, review the relationship between pricing and manufacturer patient programs, reduce the costs of drugs under Medicare, and reform government program reimbursement methodologies for drug products. The pricing of prescription pharmaceuticals is also subject to governmental control outside the United States. In these other countries, pricing negotiations with governmental authorities can take considerable time after the receipt of marketing approval for a product. To obtain reimbursement or pricing approval in some countries, we may be required to conduct a clinical trial that compares the cost effectiveness of our product candidates to other available therapies. If reimbursement of our products is unavailable or limited in scope or amount, or if pricing is set at unsatisfactory levels, our ability to generate revenues and become profitable could be impaired.

Legislative and regulatory proposals have been made to expand post-approval requirements and restrict sales and promotional activities for approved products. In addition, there have been several recent Congressional inquiries and proposed bills designed to, among other things, bring more transparency to drug pricing, review the relationship between pricing and manufacturer patient programs, reduce the cost of drugs under Medicare and reform government program reimbursement methodologies for drugs. We cannot be sure whether additional legislative changes will be enacted, or whether the FDA regulations, guidance or interpretations will be changed, or what the impact of such changes on the marketing approvals of our product candidates, if any, may be. In addition, increased scrutiny by the U.S. Congress of the FDA's approval process may significantly delay or prevent marketing approval, as well as subject us to more stringent labeling and post-marketing testing and other requirements.

Moreover, payment methodologies may be subject to changes in healthcare legislation and regulatory initiatives. For example, CMS may develop new payment and delivery models, such as bundled payment models. In addition, recently there has been heightened governmental scrutiny over the manner in which manufacturers set prices for their marketed products. We expect that additional U.S. federal healthcare reform measures will be adopted in the future, any of which could limit the amounts that the U.S. federal government will pay for healthcare products and services, which could result in reduced demand for our product candidates or additional pricing pressures.

Individual states in the United States have also become increasingly aggressive in passing legislation and implementing regulations designed to control pharmaceutical and biological product pricing, including price or patient reimbursement constraints, discounts, restrictions on certain product access and marketing cost disclosure and transparency measures, and, in some cases, designed to encourage importation from other countries and bulk purchasing. Legally-mandated price controls on payment amounts by third-party payors or other restrictions could harm our business, results of operations, financial condition and prospects. In addition, regional healthcare authorities and individual hospitals are increasingly using bidding procedures to determine what pharmaceutical products and which suppliers will be included in their prescription drug and other healthcare programs. This could reduce the ultimate demand for our product candidates or put pressure on our product pricing.

In the EU, similar political, economic and regulatory developments may affect our ability to profitably commercialize our product candidates, if approved. In addition to continuing pressure on prices and cost containment measures, legislative developments at the EU or member state level may result in significant additional requirements or obstacles that may increase our operating costs. The delivery of healthcare in the EU, including the establishment and operation of health services and the pricing and reimbursement of medicines, is almost exclusively a matter for national, rather than EU, law and policy. National governments and health service providers have different priorities and approaches to the delivery of health care and the pricing and reimbursement of products in that context. In general, however, the healthcare budgetary constraints in most EU member states have resulted in restrictions on the pricing and reimbursement of medicines by relevant health service providers. Coupled with ever-increasing EU and national regulatory burdens on those wishing to develop and market products, this could prevent or delay marketing approval of our product candidates, restrict or regulate post-approval activities and affect our ability to commercialize our product candidates, if approved.

In markets outside of the United States and EU, reimbursement and healthcare payment systems vary significantly by country, and many countries have instituted price ceilings on specific products and therapies.

We cannot predict the likelihood, nature or extent of government regulation that may arise from future legislation or administrative action in the United States, the EU or any other jurisdiction. If we or any third parties we may engage are slow or unable to adapt to changes in existing requirements or the adoption of new requirements or policies, or if we or such third parties are not able to maintain regulatory compliance, our product candidates may lose any regulatory approval that may have been obtained and we may not achieve or sustain profitability.

If we fail to comply with the extensive legal and regulatory requirements affecting the health care industry, we could face increased costs, penalties and a loss of business.

Our activities, and the activities of any collaborators, distributors and other third-party providers that we may engage in the future, will be subject to extensive government regulation and oversight both in the U.S. and in foreign jurisdictions. The FDA and comparable agencies in other jurisdictions will directly regulate many of our most critical business activities, including the conduct of preclinical and clinical studies, product manufacturing, advertising and promotion, product distribution, adverse event reporting, and product risk management. Our interactions in the U.S. or abroad with physicians and other health care providers that prescribe or purchase our products will also be subject to government regulation designed to prevent fraud and abuse in the sale and use of the products, and place greater restrictions on the marketing practices of health care companies. Health care companies such as ours are facing heightened scrutiny of their relationships with health care providers from anti-corruption enforcement officials. In addition, health care companies such as ours have been the target of lawsuits and investigations alleging violations of government regulation, including claims asserting submission of incorrect pricing information, impermissible off-label promotion of pharmaceutical products, payments intended to influence the referral of health care business, submission of false claims for government reimbursement, antitrust violations, and violations related to environmental matters. Risks relating to compliance with laws and regulations may be heightened if we operate globally.

Regulations governing the health care industry are subject to change, with possibly retroactive effect, including:

- new laws, regulations or judicial decisions, or new interpretations of existing laws, regulations or decisions, related to health care availability, pricing or marketing practices, compliance with wage and hour laws and other employment practices, method of delivery, payment for health care products and services, compliance with health information and data privacy and security laws and regulations, tracking and reporting payments and other transfers of value made to physicians and teaching hospitals, extensive anti-bribery and anti-corruption prohibitions, product serialization and labeling requirements and used product take-back requirements;

- changes in the FDA and foreign regulatory approval processes that may delay or prevent the approval of new products and result in lost market opportunity;

- requirements that provide for increased transparency of clinical trial results and quality data, such as the EMA's clinical transparency policy, which could impact our ability to protect trade secrets and competitively-sensitive information contained in approval applications or could be misinterpreted leading to reputational damage, misperception, or legal action which could harm our business; and

- changes in FDA and foreign regulations that may require additional safety monitoring, labeling changes, restrictions on product distribution or use, or other measures after the introduction of our products to market, which could increase our costs of doing business, adversely affect the future permitted uses of approved products, or otherwise adversely affect the market for our products.

Violations of governmental regulation may be punishable by criminal and civil sanctions against us, including fines and civil monetary penalties and exclusion from participation in government programs, including Medicare and Medicaid, as well as sanctions against executives overseeing our business. In addition to penalties for violation of laws and regulations, we could be required to repay amounts we received from government payors, or pay additional rebates and interest if we are found to have miscalculated the pricing information we have submitted to the government. We cannot ensure that our compliance controls, policies and procedures will in every instance protect us from acts committed by our employees, collaborators, partners or third-party providers that would violate the laws or regulations of the jurisdictions in which we operate. Whether or not we have complied with the law, an investigation into alleged unlawful conduct could increase our expenses, damage our reputation, divert management time and attention, and adversely affect our business.

We may be subject, directly or indirectly, to federal and state healthcare fraud and abuse laws, false claims laws, and health information privacy and security laws, and if we are unable to comply with such laws, we could face substantial penalties.

If we obtain FDA approval for any of our product candidates or technologies and begin commercializing those products or technologies in the United States, our operations may be subject to various federal and state fraud and abuse laws, including, without limitation, the federal Anti-Kickback Statute, the federal False Claims Act, and physician sunshine laws and regulations. These laws may impact, among other things, our proposed sales, marketing, and education programs. In addition, we may be subject to patient privacy regulation by both the federal government and the states in which we conduct our business. The laws that may affect our ability to operate include:

- the federal Anti-Kickback Statute, which prohibits, among other things, persons from knowingly and willfully soliciting, receiving, offering or paying remuneration, directly or indirectly, to induce, or in return for, the purchase or recommendation of an item or service reimbursable under a federal healthcare program, such as the Medicare and Medicaid programs;

- federal civil and criminal false claims laws and civil monetary penalty laws, which prohibit, among other things, individuals or entities from knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, claims for payment from Medicare, Medicaid, or other third-party payors that are false or fraudulent;

- the federal Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, or HIPAA, which created new federal criminal statutes that prohibit executing a scheme to defraud any healthcare benefit program and making false statements relating to healthcare matters;

- HIPAA, as amended by the Health Information Technology and Clinical Health Act, or HITECH, and implementing regulations, which impose certain requirements relating to the privacy, security, and transmission of individually identifiable health information;

- the Physician Payments Sunshine Act which requires manufacturers of drugs, devices, biologics, and medical supplies to report annually to the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services information related to payments and other transfers of value to physicians, other healthcare providers, and teaching hospitals, and ownership and investment interests held by physicians and other healthcare providers and their immediate family members and applicable group purchasing organizations;

- the FDCA, which prohibits, among other things, the adulteration or misbranding of drugs, biologics and medical devices;

- the U.S. Public Health Service Act, which prohibits, among other things, the introduction into interstate commerce of a biological product unless a biologics license is in effect for that product; and

- state law equivalents of each of the above federal laws, such as anti-kickback and false claims laws that may apply to items or services reimbursed by any third-party payors, including commercial insurers; state laws that require pharmaceutical companies to comply with the pharmaceutical industry's voluntary compliance guidelines and the relevant compliance guidance promulgated by the federal government, or that otherwise restrict payments that may be made to healthcare providers and other potential referral sources; state laws that require drug manufacturers to report information related to payments and other transfers of value to physicians and other healthcare providers or marketing expenditures; and state laws governing the privacy and security of health information in certain circumstances.

Because of the breadth of these laws and the narrowness of the statutory exceptions and safe harbors available, it is possible that some of our business activities could be subject to challenge under one or more of such laws. In addition, recent health care reform legislation has strengthened these laws. Further, state laws differ from each other and from federal law in significant ways, thus complicating compliance efforts.

If our operations are found to be in violation of any of the laws described above or any other governmental regulations that apply, we may be subject to penalties, including civil and criminal penalties, damages, fines, exclusion from participation in government health care programs, such as Medicare and Medicaid, imprisonment, and the curtailment or restructuring of our operations, any of which could adversely affect our ability to operate our business and our results of operations.

Risks Related to our Dependence on Third Parties

We may become dependent on future collaborations to develop and commercialize our product candidates and to provide the regulatory compliance, sales, marketing, and distribution capabilities required for the success of our business.

We may enter into various kinds of collaborative research and development and product marketing agreements to develop and commercialize our products. The expected future milestone payments and cost reimbursements from collaboration agreements could provide an important source of financing for our research and development programs, thereby facilitating the application of our technology to the development and commercialization of our products, but there are risks associated with entering into collaboration arrangements.

The process of establishing and maintaining collaborative relationships is difficult, time-consuming and involves significant uncertainty, such as:

- a collaboration partner may shift its priorities and resources away from our product candidates due to a change in business strategies, or a merger, acquisition, sale or downsizing;
- a collaboration partner may seek to renegotiate or terminate their relationships with us due to unsatisfactory clinical results, manufacturing issues, a change in business strategy, a change of control or other reasons;
- a collaboration partner may cease development in therapeutic areas which are the subject of our strategic collaboration;
- a collaboration partner may not devote sufficient capital or resources towards our product candidates;
- a collaboration partner may change the success criteria for a product candidate thereby delaying or ceasing development of such candidate;
- a significant delay in initiation of certain development activities by a collaboration partner will also delay payment of milestones tied to such activities, thereby impacting our ability to fund our own activities;
- a collaboration partner could develop a product that competes, either directly or indirectly, with our product candidate;
- a collaboration partner with commercialization obligations may not commit sufficient financial or human resources to the marketing, distribution or sale of a product;
- a collaboration partner with manufacturing responsibilities may encounter regulatory, resource or quality issues and be unable to meet demand requirements;
- a collaboration partner may terminate a strategic alliance;
- a dispute may arise between us and a partner concerning the research, development or commercialization of a product candidate resulting in a delay in milestones, royalty payments or termination of an alliance and possibly resulting in costly litigation or arbitration which may divert management attention and resources; and
- a partner may use our products or technology in such a way as to invite litigation from a third party.

There is a risk that a collaboration partner might fail to perform its obligations under the collaborative arrangements or may be slow in performing its obligations. In addition, a collaboration partner may experience financial difficulties at any time that could prevent it from having available funds to contribute to the collaboration. If a collaboration partner fails to conduct its product development, commercialization, regulatory compliance, sales and marketing or distribution activities successfully and in a timely manner, or if it terminates or materially modifies its agreements with us, the development and commercialization of one or more product candidates could be delayed, curtailed, or terminated because we may not have sufficient financial resources or capabilities to continue such development and commercialization on our own.

We have no marketing, sales, or distribution resources for the commercialization of any products or technologies that we might successfully develop.

We do not have any infrastructure for the sales, marketing or distribution of our products, and the cost of establishing and maintaining such an organization may exceed the cost-effectiveness of doing so. There are significant expenses and risks involved with establishing our own sales, marketing and distribution capabilities, including our ability to hire, retain and appropriately incentivize qualified individuals, generate sufficient sales leads, provide adequate training to sales and marketing personnel, and effectively manage a geographically dispersed sales and marketing team. Any failure or delay in the development of our internal sales, marketing and distribution capabilities could delay any product launch, which would adversely impact the commercialization of any approved product candidate.

If we market products through arrangements with third parties, we may pay sales commissions to sales representatives or we may sell or consign products to distributors at wholesale prices. As a result, our gross profit from product sales may be lower than it would be if we were to sell our products directly to end users at retail prices through our own sales force. There can be no assurance we will able to negotiate distribution or sales agreements with third parties on favorable terms to justify our investment in our products or achieve sufficient revenues to support our operations.

If we are unable to build our own sales force or negotiate a collaborative relationship for the commercialization of our product candidates, we may be forced to delay the potential commercialization of such candidates or reduce the scope of our sales or marketing activities for them. If we elect to increase our expenditures to fund commercialization activities ourselves, we will need to obtain additional capital, which may not be available to us on acceptable terms, or at all. We could enter into arrangements with collaborative partners at an earlier stage than otherwise would be ideal and we may be required to relinquish rights to our product candidates or otherwise agree to terms unfavorable to us, any of which may have an adverse effect on our business, operating results and prospects.

If we are unable to establish adequate sales, marketing and distribution capabilities, either on our own or in collaboration with third parties, we will not be successful in commercializing our product candidates and may not become profitable and may incur significant additional losses. We will be competing with many companies that currently have extensive and well-funded marketing and sales operations. Without an internal team or the support of a third party to perform marketing and sales functions, we may be unable to compete successfully against these more established companies.

We do not have the ability to independently conduct clinical trials required to obtain regulatory approvals for our product candidates and intend to rely on third parties to conduct, supervise and monitor our clinical trials.

We will need to rely on third parties, such as contract research organizations, data management companies, contract clinical research associates, medical institutions, clinical investigators and contract laboratories to conduct any clinical trials that we may undertake for our product candidates. We may also rely on third parties to assist with our preclinical development of product candidates.

If we outsource clinical trials, we may be unable to directly control the timing, conduct and expense of our clinical trials. However, we will remain responsible for ensuring that each of our studies is conducted in accordance with the applicable protocol, legal, regulatory and scientific standards and our reliance on the CROs does not relieve us of our regulatory responsibilities.

We and our third party contractors will be required to comply with the GLPs and GCPs, which are regulations and guidelines enforced by the FDA and are also required by the Competent Authorities of the Member States of the European Economic Area and comparable foreign regulatory authorities in the form of International Conference on Harmonization guidelines for any of our product candidates that are in preclinical and clinical development. The Regulatory authorities enforce GCPs through periodic inspections of trial sponsors, principal investigators and clinical trial sites. If we or our third party contractors fail to comply with GCPs, the clinical data generated in our clinical trials may be deemed unreliable and the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may require us to perform additional clinical trials before approving our marketing applications. We cannot assure you that upon inspection by a given regulatory authority, such regulatory authority will determine that any of our clinical trials comply with GCP regulations. In addition, our clinical trials must be conducted with product produced under cGMP regulations. Accordingly, if our third party contractors fail to comply with these regulations or fail to recruit a sufficient number of subjects, we may be required to repeat clinical trials, which would delay the regulatory approval process.

Our third party contractors will not be our employees, and we will not control whether or not they devote sufficient time and resources to our future clinical and nonclinical programs. These third party contractors may also have relationships with other commercial entities, including our competitors, for whom they may also be conducting clinical trials, or other product development activities which could harm our competitive position. We face the risk of potential unauthorized disclosure or misappropriation of our intellectual property by third party contractors, which may reduce our trade secret protection and allow our potential competitors to access and exploit our proprietary technology. If our third party contractors do not successfully carry out their contractual duties or obligations, fail to meet expected deadlines, or if the quality or accuracy of the clinical data they obtain is compromised due to the failure to adhere to our clinical protocols or regulatory requirements or for any other reasons, our clinical trials may be extended, delayed or terminated, and we may not be able to obtain regulatory approval for, or successfully commercialize any product candidate that we develop. As a result, our financial results and the commercial prospects for any product candidate that we develop would be harmed, our costs could increase, and our ability to generate revenues could be delayed.

If our relationship with any third party contractors terminate, we may not be able to enter into arrangements with alternative third party contractors or do so on commercially reasonable terms. Switching or adding additional third party contractors involves substantial cost and requires management time and focus. In addition, there is a natural transition period when a new third party commences work. As a result, delays occur, which can materially impact our ability to meet our desired clinical development timelines. Though we intend to carefully manage our relationships with our third party contractors, there can be no assurance that we will not encounter challenges or delays in the future or that these delays or challenges will not have an adverse impact on our business, financial condition and prospects.

Risks Related to Intellectual Property

If we are unable to obtain and enforce patents and to protect our trade secrets, others could use our technology to compete with us, which could limit opportunities for us to generate revenues by licensing our technology and selling our products.

- Our success will depend in part on our ability to obtain and enforce patents and maintain trade secrets in the United States and in other countries. If we are unsuccessful in obtaining and enforcing patents, our competitors could use our technology and create products or technologies that compete with our products and technologies, without paying license fees or royalties to us.

- The preparation, filing, and prosecution of patent applications can be costly and time consuming. Our limited financial resources may not permit us to pursue patent protection of all of our technology and products throughout the world.

- Even if we are able to obtain issued patents covering our technology or products, we may have to incur substantial legal fees and other expenses to enforce our patent rights in order to protect our technology and products from infringing uses. We may not have the financial resources to finance the litigation required to preserve our patent and trade secret rights.

There is no certainty that our pending or future patent applications will result in the issuance of patents.

We acquired rights to patent applications for technology that BioTime has developed, and we may file additional new patent applications in the future seeking patent protection for new technology or products that we develop ourselves or jointly with others. However, there is no assurance that any of our licensed patent applications, or any patent applications that we may file in the future in the United States or abroad, will result in the issuance of patents.

The process of applying for and obtaining patents can be expensive and slow.

- The preparation and filing of patent applications, and the maintenance of patents that are issued, may require substantial time and money.

- A patent interference proceeding may be instituted with the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office (the "USPTO") when more than one person files a patent application covering the same technology, or if someone wishes to challenge the validity of an issued patent. At the completion of the interference proceeding, the USPTO will determine which competing applicant is entitled to the patent, or whether an issued patent is valid. Patent interference proceedings are complex, highly contested legal proceedings, and the USPTO's decision is subject to appeal. This means that if an interference proceeding arises with respect to any of our patent applications, we may experience significant expenses and delay in obtaining a patent, and if the outcome of the proceeding is unfavorable to us, the patent could be issued to a competitor rather than to us.

- A derivation proceeding may be instituted by the USPTO or an inventor alleging that a patent or application was derived from the work of another inventor.

- Post Grant Review under the new America Invents Act will make available opposition-like proceedings in the United States. As with the USPTO interference proceedings, Post Grant Review proceedings will be very expensive to contest and can result in significant delays in obtaining patent protection or can result in a denial of a patent application.

- Oppositions to the issuance of patents may be filed under European patent law and the patent laws of certain other countries. As with USPTO interference proceedings, these foreign proceedings can be very expensive to contest and can result in significant delays in obtaining a patent or can result in a denial of a patent application.

Intellectual property we may develop using grants received from the federal government are subject to rights maintained by the government.

Research and development we perform that is funded by grants from the federal government, and any intellectual property that we create using those grants, is subject to the rights maintained by the federal government.

Our patents may not protect our technologies or products from competition.

- We might not be able to obtain any patents beyond those we already own or have licensed or sublicensed, and any patents that we do obtain might not be comprehensive enough to provide us with meaningful patent protection.

- There will always be a risk that our competitors might be able to successfully challenge the validity or enforceability of any patent issued to us.

- In addition to interference proceedings, the USPTO can reexamine issued patents at the request of a third party. Our patents may be subject to inter partes review (replacing the reexamination proceeding), a proceeding in which a third party can challenge the validity of one of our patents to have the patent invalidated. This means that patents owned or licensed by us may be subject to reexamination and may be lost if the outcome of the reexamination is unfavorable to us.

- The patents to which we have licenses to, including the licenses to HyStem are broadly licensed to other companies and in some instances, in overlapping fields of use. Asterias Biotherapeutics, Inc. ("Asterias"), an affiliate of BioTime, has a non-exclusive license to HyStem patents in certain fields of use that overlap with the AgeX sublicensed fields of use. Asterias and AgeX may create competing products. In addition, AgeX, through ReCyte, is sublicensed under the BioTime Asterias Cross-license, which creates another potential risk of the two companies to create competing products.

We may be subject to patent infringement claims that could be costly to defend, which may limit our ability to use disputed technologies, and which could prevent us from pursuing research and development or commercialization of some of our technologies or products, require us to pay licensing fees to have freedom to operate and/or result in monetary damages or other liability for us.

The success of our business depends significantly on our ability to operate without infringing patents and other proprietary rights of others. If the technology that we use infringes a patent held by others, we could be sued for monetary damages by the patent holder or its licensee, or we could be prevented from continuing research, development, and commercialization of technologies and products that rely on that technology, unless we are able to obtain a license to use the patent. The cost and availability of a license to a patent cannot be predicted, and the likelihood of obtaining a license at an acceptable cost would be lower if the patent holder or any of its licensees is using the patent to develop or market a technology or product with which our technologies or products would compete. If we could not obtain a necessary license, we would need to develop or obtain rights to alternative technologies, which could prove costly and could cause delays in developing our technologies or products, or we could be forced to discontinue the development or marketing of any technologies and products that were developed using the technology covered by the patent.

Risks Related to Our Relationship with BioTime

We will initially rely upon BioTime for certain services and resources

Although we plan to have our own research facilities in the near future, our own scientific personnel, and many critical management personnel, we will initially rely on BioTime to provide certain management and administrative services, including patent prosecution, certain legal services, human resources management, accounting, financial management, and controls over financial accounting and reporting. We have entered into a Shared Facilities and Services Agreement ("Shared Facilities Agreement") with BioTime under which we have agreed to bear costs allocated to us by BioTime for our use of BioTime's office and laboratory facilities and human resources, and for services and materials provided for our benefit by BioTime. We will pay BioTime 105% of its costs of providing personnel and services to us, and for our use of its facilities, including an allocation of general overhead based on that use. We may also share the services of some research personnel with BioTime. Either party to the Shared Facilities Agreement may terminate the agreement for any reason with six months written notice to the other party.

If BioTime's human resources are not sufficient to serve both BioTime's needs and ours, we will have to hire additional personnel of our own, either on a full-time or part-time basis, as employees or as consultants, and the cost of doing so could be greater than the costs that would be allocated to us by BioTime. Also, any new personnel that we may need to hire may not be as familiar with our business or operations as BioTime's personnel, which means that we would incur the expense and inefficiencies related to training new employees or consultants.

Two of our five current directors are also an officer of Juvenescence or a director of BioTime which may result in conflicts of interest.

Two of the five current members of our Board of Directors are also either an officer of Juvenescence or a director of BioTime. This commonality of directors and officers means that we will not have a Board of Directors making business decisions on our behalf completely independent from BioTime and Juvenescence, and certain of our executive officers will continue to serve in managerial positions at BioTime and make executive decisions on its behalf. In addition, under the Shared Facilities Agreement, a portion of our Chief Executive Officer's salary has historically been reimbursed by BioTime. Finally, our former Executive Chairman's annual salary was set by our board of directors following recommendation by BioTime's compensation committee to its board of directors.

Conflicts of interest may arise from our relationship with BioTime.

Our relationship with BioTime could give rise to certain conflicts of interest that could have an impact on our research and development programs, business opportunities, and operations generally.

- Even if we utilize different technologies than BioTime or its subsidiaries, we could find ourselves in competition with them for research scientists, financing and other resources, licensing, manufacturing, and distribution arrangements, and for customers if we and BioTime or a BioTime subsidiary both bring competing products or technologies to market.

- BioTime and its subsidiaries will engage for their own accounts in research and product development programs, investments, and business ventures, and we will not be entitled to participate or to receive an interest in those programs, investments, or business ventures. BioTime and its other subsidiaries will not be obligated to present any particular research and development, investment, or business opportunity to us, even if the opportunity would be within the scope of our research and development plans or programs, business objectives, or investment policies. These opportunities may include, for example, opportunities to acquire businesses or assets, including but not limited to patents and other intellectual property that could be used by us or by BioTime or by any of BioTime's subsidiaries.

- We have entered into certain patent and technology licenses and sublicenses, and other agreements with BioTime and certain BioTime subsidiaries. The BioTime companies that are parties to those agreements will have interests that conflict with our interests in determining how and when they should enforce their rights under the agreements if we were to default or otherwise fail to perform any of our obligations under the agreements. In addition, our agreements with BioTime related to the Distribution, including the Tax Matters Agreement and Employee Matters Agreement, have been negotiated with BioTime in the context of our separation from BioTime. Accordingly, these agreements may not reflect terms that would have resulted from negotiations among unaffiliated third parties.

- Each conflict of interest will be resolved by our respective boards of directors in keeping with their fiduciary duties and such policies as they may implement from time to time. However, the terms and conditions of our current patent and technology licenses and other agreements with BioTime or BioTime subsidiaries may not reflect terms and conditions that would have resulted from negotiations among unaffiliated third parties due to BioTime's ownership of a controlling interest in us at the time we entered into those licenses, sublicenses and other agreements.

Conflicts of interest may arise from our relationship with Juvenescence, which will continue to own a significant percentage of our common stock following the Distribution and will be able to exert control over matters subject to stockholder approval, and will have the right to appoint up to three directors to our board of directors.

Following the Distribution, Juvenescence will beneficially own approximately 45.8% of the voting power of our outstanding common stock and will retain certain rights over our corporate governance pursuant to the Shareholders' Agreement. Therefore, even after the Distribution, Juvenescence will have the ability to substantially influence us and exert control through this ownership position. For example, Juvenescence will be able to exert control over or substantially influence elections of directors, approval of our equity incentive plans, amendments to our organizational documents, or approval of any merger, amalgamation, sale of assets or other major corporate transaction. Juvenescence's interests may not always coincide with our corporate interests or the interests of other stockholders, and it may exercise its voting and other rights in a manner with which you may not agree or that may not be in the best interests of our other stockholders. So long as Juvenescence continues to own a significant amount of our equity, it will continue to be able to strongly influence and effectively control our decisions. In addition, Juvenescence will be entitled to appoint up to three directors to our board of directors so long as it maintains certain ownership levels in our equity. While the directors appointed by Juvenescence will be obligated to act in accordance with their fiduciary duty, they may have equity or other interests in Juvenescence and, accordingly, their interests may be aligned with Juvenescence's interests, which may not always coincide with our corporate interests or the interests of our other stockholders.

Risks Related to the Distribution

The distribution of AgeX common stock will not qualify for tax-free treatment and may be taxable to you as a dividend.

The distribution of AgeX common stock will not qualify for tax-free treatment. An amount equal to the fair market value of AgeX common stock received by you on the Distribution Date (plus any cash received in lieu of fractional shares) will be treated as a taxable dividend to the extent of your ratable share of any current or accumulated earnings and profits of BioTime, with the excess treated first as a non-taxable return of capital to the extent of your tax basis in BioTime common stock and then as capital gain. The fair market value of AgeX common stock reported by BioTime to you on IRS Form 1099-DIV may differ from the trading price of AgeX's common stock on the Distribution Date. In addition, BioTime or other applicable withholding agents may be required or permitted to withhold at the applicable rate on all or a portion of the distribution payable to non-U.S. stockholders, and any such withholding could be satisfied by BioTime or such agent withholding and selling a portion of the AgeX common stock otherwise distributable to non-U.S. stockholders or by withholding from other property held in the non-U.S. stockholder's account with the withholding agent. Your tax basis in shares of BioTime held at the time of the Distribution will be reduced (but not below zero) if the fair market value of AgeX shares distributed by BioTime to you in the Distribution (plus any cash received in lieu of fractional shares) exceeds your ratable share of BioTime's available current and accumulated earnings and profits. Your holding period for BioTime shares will not be affected by the Distribution. Your holding period for your shares of AgeX common stock will begin the day following the Distribution, and your tax basis in AgeX common stock will equal the fair market value of the shares received by you on the Distribution Date. The lack of an existing market for AgeX common stock could limit the ability of BioTime shareholders to sell a sufficient quantity of AgeX common stock to satisfy potential tax liabilities. As a result, BioTime shareholders may incur tax liabilities, but be unable to realize value from AgeX common stock distributed by BioTime.

BioTime will not be able to advise stockholders of the amount of earnings and profits of BioTime until after the end of the 2018 calendar year. Additionally, BioTime's current earnings and profits are measured as of the end of the tax year and are generally allocated to all distributions made during such tax year on a pro rata basis. As a result, a proportionate part of BioTime's current earnings and profits for the entire taxable year of the Distribution will be allocated to the Distribution. That proportionate part will be treated as dividend income to you even if you have not held BioTime stock for the entire taxable year of BioTime in which the Distribution occurs. Thus, if you did not hold your BioTime common stock for the entire taxable year of BioTime in which the Distribution occurs, you may be allocated a disproportionate amount of ordinary income attributable to BioTime's current earnings and profits as a result of the Distribution.

Although BioTime will be ascribing a value to AgeX shares in the Distribution for tax purposes, this valuation is not binding on the IRS or any other tax authority. These taxing authorities could ascribe a higher valuation to AgeX shares, particularly if such stock trades at prices significantly above the value ascribed to our shares by BioTime in the period following the Distribution. Such a higher valuation may cause a larger reduction in the tax basis of your BioTime shares or may cause you to recognize additional dividend or capital gain income. You should consult your own tax advisor as to the particular tax consequences of the Distribution to you.

The historical and pro forma financial information presented herein is not necessarily representative of the results that our business would have achieved as a separate, publicly traded company and may not be a reliable indicator of our future results.

The historical and pro forma financial information for AgeX included in this information statement does not necessarily reflect the financial condition, results of operations or cash flows that AgeX would have achieved as a separate, publicly traded company during the periods presented or those that AgeX will achieve in the future. We expect significant changes may occur in AgeX's cost structure, management, financing and business operations as a result of operating as a separate publicly-traded company. For additional information about the historical financial performance of AgeX's business and the basis of presentation of the historical consolidated financial statements and the unaudited pro forma condensed combined financial statements of AgeX's business, see "Selected Historical Consolidated Financial Data," "Unaudited Pro Forma Condensed Combined Financial Statements," "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" and the historical financial statements and accompanying notes of AgeX included elsewhere in this information statement.

Our ability to meet our capital needs may be harmed by the loss of financial support from BioTime.

The loss of financial support from BioTime could harm our ability to meet our capital needs. BioTime historically has provided financing to us at rates that we believe are not representative of the cost of financing that we will incur as a stand-alone company. After the Distribution, we expect to obtain any funds needed in excess of the amounts generated by our operating activities through the capital markets or bank financing, and not from BioTime. After the Distribution, we may incur higher debt servicing and other costs relating to new indebtedness than we would have otherwise incurred as a part of BioTime. As a stand-alone company, the cost of our financing also will depend on other factors such as our performance and financial market conditions generally. Further, we cannot guarantee that we will be able to obtain capital market financing or credit on favorable terms, or at all, in the future. We cannot be certain that our ability to meet our capital needs, including servicing our own debt, will not be harmed by the loss of financial support from BioTime.

We may be unable to achieve some or all of the benefits that we expect to achieve from the Distribution.

As discussed under "The Distribution—Reasons for the Distribution," we and BioTime believe that a Distribution will enhance our long-term value. However, by separating from BioTime, we may be more susceptible to market fluctuations and other adverse events than we would have been were we still a part of BioTime. In addition, we may not be able to achieve some or all of the benefits that we expect to achieve as an independent company in the time we expect, if at all.

Our accounting and other management systems and resources may not be adequately prepared to meet the financial reporting and other requirements to which we will be subject following the Distribution, and failure to achieve and maintain effective internal controls could have a material adverse effect on our business and the price of our common stock.

Our financial results previously were included within the consolidated results of BioTime, and we believe that our financial reporting and internal controls were appropriate for a subsidiary of a public company. However, we were not directly subject to the reporting and other requirements of the Exchange Act. As a result of the Distribution, we will be directly subject to reporting and other obligations under the Exchange Act. Beginning with our second annual report on Form 10-K, we will be required to comply with Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (the "Sarbanes-Oxley Act") which will require annual management assessments of the effectiveness of our internal controls over financial reporting and a report by our independent registered public accounting firm as to whether we maintained, in all material respects, effective internal controls over financial reporting as of the last day of the year. These reporting and other obligations may place significant demands on our management, administrative and operational resources, including accounting systems and resources.

The Exchange Act requires that we file annual, quarterly and current reports with respect to our business and financial condition. Under the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, we are required to maintain effective disclosure controls and procedures and internal controls over financial reporting. To comply with these requirements, we will need to establish our own systems; implement additional financial and management controls, reporting systems and procedures; and hire additional accounting and finance staff. We expect to incur additional annual expenses for the purpose of addressing these requirements, and those expenses may be significant. If we are unable to establish our financial and management controls, reporting systems, information technology systems and procedures in a timely and effective fashion, our ability to comply with our financial reporting requirements and other rules that apply to reporting companies under the Exchange Act could be impaired.

If, during periods we are required to assess the effectiveness of our internal controls, we are unable to conclude that we have effective internal controls over financial reporting or our independent public accounting firm is unwilling or unable to provide us with an unqualified report on the effectiveness of our internal controls as required by Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, we may be unable to report our financial information on a timely basis, investors may lose confidence in our operating results, the price of our common stock could decline and we may be subject to litigation or regulatory enforcement actions, which would require additional financial and management resources. This could have a material adverse effect on our business and lead to a decline in the price of our common stock.

Following the Distribution, we will be dependent on BioTime to continue to provide certain services.

Currently, we rely on BioTime to provide certain corporate and administrative services such as information technology, financial and human resource services pursuant to a number of services agreements. We expect to develop the capability to provide all such services internally or through the use of third parties at AgeX. However, to the extent that we are unable to develop such capabilities prior to the separation, we will rely on BioTime to continue to provide certain services for a period of time pursuant to such service agreements that we may enter in connection with the Distribution. If BioTime is unable or unwilling to provide such services pursuant to any such agreements, or if the agreements are terminated prior to the end of its term, we may be unable to provide such services ourselves or we may have to incur additional expenditures to obtain such services from another provider.

The Distribution may not be completed on the terms or timeline currently contemplated, if at all.

We are actively engaged in planning for the Distribution. We expect to incur expenses in connection with the Distribution and any delays in the anticipated completion of the distribution may increase these expenses. Unanticipated developments could delay or negatively impact the distribution, including those related to the filing and effectiveness of appropriate filings with the SEC, the listing of our common stock on a trading market, and receiving any required regulatory approvals. In addition, BioTime's Board of Directors may, in its absolute and sole discretion, decide at any time prior to the consummation of the Distribution not to proceed with the Distribution. Therefore, we cannot assure that the Distribution will be completed. Until the consummation of the Distribution, BioTime's Board of Directors will have the sole and absolute discretion to determine and change the terms of the Distribution, including the establishment of the record date and distribution date.

Risks Pertaining to Our Common Stock

There is presently no public market for our common stock and there is no assurance that a market will develop and be sustained.

There is presently no public market for our common stock or any other AgeX securities. There can be no assurance that an active market for our common stock will materialize or, if a market does develop, that it will be sustained.

For many reasons, including the risks identified in this information statement, the market price of our common stock following the Distribution may be more volatile than the market price of BioTime's common stock before the Distribution. These factors may result in short-term or long-term negative pressure on the value of our common stock.

We cannot predict the prices at which our common stock may trade after the Distribution. The market price of our common stock may fluctuate significantly, depending upon many factors, some of which may be beyond our control, including, but not limited to:

- a shift in our investor base;
- our quarterly or annual earnings, or those of comparable companies;

- actual or anticipated fluctuations in our operating results;
- our ability to obtain financing as needed;
- changes in laws and regulations affecting our business;
- changes in accounting standards, policies, guidance, interpretations or principles;
- announcements by us or our competitors of significant investments, acquisitions or dispositions;
- the failure of securities analysts to cover our common stock after the Distribution;
- changes in earnings estimates by securities analysts or our ability to meet those estimates;
- the operating performance and stock price of comparable companies;
- overall market fluctuations; and
- general economic conditions and other external factors.

Additional shares of our common stock will become eligible for public sale, and sales of those shares could create downward pressure on the trading price of our common stock.

After the Distribution, shares held by new AgeX shareholders, as well as Juvenescence, will become eligible to be publicly sold in compliance with the provisions of Rule 144 under the Securities Act after the shares have been beneficially owned for at least one year, or for at least six months if the shares are sold after we have been subject to the reporting requirements of Section 13 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the Exchange Act, for a period of 90 days and have filed all reports required under the Exchange Act, other than any Current Report on Form 8-K. Based on the expected Distribution Date, we expect that of those shares will begin to become eligible for sale under Rule 144 immediately following the Distribution.

Sales of AgeX common stock under Rule 144 could create downward pressure on the trading price of our common stock.

Because we are engaged in the development of pharmaceutical and cell therapy products, the price of shares of our common stock may rise and fall rapidly.

The price of our common stock may rise rapidly in response to certain events, such as the commencement of clinical trials of an experimental new therapy, even though the outcome of those trials and the likelihood of ultimate FDA approval of a therapeutic product remain uncertain. Similarly, prices of our common stock may fall rapidly in response to certain events such as unfavorable results of clinical trials or a delay or failure to obtain FDA approval. Further, the failure of our earnings to meet analysts' expectations could result in a significant rapid decline in the market price of our common stock

Because we do not pay dividends, our stock may not be a suitable investment for anyone who needs to earn dividend income.

We do not have current plans to pay any cash dividends on our common stock. The declaration, amount and payment of any future dividends on shares of common stock will be at the sole discretion of our Board of Directors. Our Board of Directors may take into account general and economic conditions, our financial condition and results of operations, our available cash and current and anticipated cash needs, capital requirements, contractual, legal, tax and regulatory restrictions and implications on the payment of dividends by us to our stockholders or by our subsidiaries to us and such other factors as our Board of Directors may deem relevant. For the foreseeable future we anticipate that any earnings generated in our business will be used to finance the growth of our business and will not be paid out as dividends to our shareholders. This means that our stock may not be a suitable investment for anyone who needs to earn income from their investments.

Securities analysts may not initiate coverage or continue to cover our common stock, and this may have a negative impact on the market price of our shares.

If a trading market for our common stock develops, the market will depend, in part, on the research and reports that securities analysts publish about our business and our common stock. We do not have any control over these analysts. There is no guarantee that securities analysts will cover our common stock. If securities analysts do not cover our common stock, the lack of research coverage may adversely affect the market price of those shares. If securities analysts do cover our shares, they could issue reports or recommendations that are unfavorable to the price of our shares, and they could downgrade a previously favorable report or recommendation, and in either case our share price could decline as a result of the report. If one or more of these analysts ceases to cover our shares or fails to publish regular reports on our business, we could lose visibility in the financial markets, which could cause our share price or trading volume to decline.

You may experience dilution of your ownership interests if we issue additional shares of common stock or preferred stock.

In the future, we may issue our authorized but previously unissued equity securities, resulting in the dilution of the ownership interests of our present shareholders. We are currently authorized to issue an aggregate of 105,000,000 shares of capital stock consisting of 100,000,000 shares of common stock and 5,000,000 “blank check” shares of preferred stock. Upon completion of the Distribution, we expect that there will be 35,830,000 shares of common stock outstanding based on the number of our common shares outstanding as of November 16, 2018, 2,000,000 shares of common stock that may become issuable upon issuance of outstanding common stock purchase warrants at $2.50 per share, and 1,418,500 shares of common stock reserved for issuance upon the exercise of stock options or other stock-based awards under our 2017 Equity Incentive Plan (the “Plan”). The actual number of shares of our common stock to be distributed was determined on the Record Date and will reflect any issuances of shares of our common stock in respect of equity awards under the Plan or otherwise between the date BioTime declares the dividend for the Distribution and the Record Date. No shares of preferred stock are presently outstanding.

We may issue additional common stock or other securities that are convertible into or exercisable for common stock in order to raise additional capital, or in connection with hiring or retaining employees or consultants, or in connection with future acquisitions of licenses to technology or medical products or for other business purposes. The future issuance of any additional shares of common stock or other securities may create downward pressure on the trading price of our common stock.

We may also issue preferred stock having rights, preferences, and privileges senior to the rights of our common stock with respect to dividends, rights to share in distributions of our assets if we liquidate our company, or voting rights. Any preferred stock may also be convertible into common stock on terms that would be dilutive to holders of common stock.

Unless our common stock is approved for listing on a national securities exchange it will be subject to the so-called "penny stock" rules that impose restrictive sales practice requirements.

If we are unable to obtain approval from a national securities exchange to list our common stock, those shares could become subject to the so-called "penny stock" rules if the shares have a market value of less than $5.00 per share. The SEC has adopted regulations that define a penny stock to include any stock that has a market price of less than $5.00 per share, subject to certain exceptions, including an exception for stock traded on a national securities exchange. The SEC regulations impose restrictive sales practice requirements on broker-dealers who sell penny stocks to persons other than established customers and accredited investors. An accredited investor generally is a person whose individual annual income exceeded $200,000, or whose joint annual income with a spouse exceeded $300,000 during the past two years and who expects their annual income to exceed the applicable level during the current year, or a person with net worth in excess of $1.0 million, not including the value of the investor's principal residence and excluding mortgage debt secured by the investor's principal residence up to the estimated fair market value of the home, except that any mortgage debt incurred by the investor within 60 days prior to the date of the transaction shall not be excluded from the determination of the investor's net worth unless the mortgage debt was incurred to acquire the residence. For transactions covered by this rule, the broker-dealer must make a special suitability determination for the purchaser and must have received the purchaser's written consent to the transaction prior to sale. This means that if we are unable to list our common stock on a national securities exchange, the ability of shareholders to sell their AgeX common stock in the secondary market could be adversely affected.

If a transaction involving a penny stock is not exempt from the SEC's rule, a broker-dealer must deliver a disclosure schedule relating to the penny stock market to each investor prior to a transaction. The broker-dealer also must disclose the commissions payable to both the broker-dealer and its registered representative, current quotations for the penny stock, and, if the broker-dealer is the sole market-maker, the broker-dealer must disclose this fact and the broker-dealer's presumed control over the market. Finally, monthly statements must be sent disclosing recent price information for the penny stock held in the customer's account and information on the limited market in penny stocks.

We are an "emerging growth company," and may elect to comply with reduced public company reporting requirements applicable to emerging growth companies, which could make our common stock less attractive to investors.

We are an "emerging growth company," as defined in the JOBS Act, and we may take advantage of certain exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to other public companies that are not "emerging growth companies" including reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in our periodic reports and proxy statements, and exemptions from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and shareholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved. We cannot predict if investors will find our common stock less attractive because we may rely on these exemptions. If some investors find our common stock less attractive as a result, there may be a less active trading market for our common stock and our stock price may be more volatile. We may take advantage of these reporting exemptions until we are no longer an "emerging growth company." We will remain an "emerging growth company" until the earliest of (i) the last day of the fiscal year in which we have total annual gross revenues of $1.07 billion or more; (ii) the fifth anniversary of the Distribution; (iii) the date on which we have issued more than $1.0 billion in nonconvertible debt during the previous three years; or (iv) the date on which we are deemed to be a "large accelerated filer" under the Exchange Act.

We will incur costs as a result of operating as a public company, and our management will be required to devote substantial time to new compliance initiatives.

As a public reporting company, and particularly after we are no longer an emerging growth company, we will incur significant legal, accounting and other expenses. The Sarbanes-Oxley Act and rules subsequently implemented by the SEC, have imposed various requirements on public companies, including establishment and maintenance of effective disclosure and financial controls and corporate governance practices. Our management and other personnel will need to devote a substantial amount of time to these compliance initiatives. Moreover, these rules and regulations will entail significant legal and financial compliance costs and will make some activities more time consuming and costly. For example, we expect that these rules and regulations may make it difficult and expensive for us to obtain director and officer liability insurance, and we may be required to accept low policy limits and coverage.

We could be subject to securities class action litigation.

In the past, securities class action litigation has often been brought against a company following a decline in the market price of its securities. This risk is especially relevant for us because biopharmaceutical companies have experienced significant stock price volatility in recent years. If we face such litigation, it could result in substantial costs and a diversion of management's attention and resources, which could harm our business.

The implementation of a new FASB accounting standard could increase the risk that our future consolidated financial statements could be qualified by going concern uncertainty.

We are subject to ASU No. 2014-15, "*Presentation of Financial Statements-Going Concern (Subtopic 205-40): Disclosure of Uncertainties about an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern,*" which defines management's responsibility to assess an entity's ability to continue as a going concern, and to provide related footnote disclosures. In connection with preparing consolidated financial statements for each annual and interim reporting period, ASU No. 2014-15 requires that an entity's management evaluate whether there are conditions or events, considered in the aggregate, that raise substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern within one year after the date that the consolidated financial statements are issued (or within one year after the date that the consolidated financial statements are available to be issued when applicable). As a result of the implementation of ASU No. 2014-15, we will be required to have more cash, cash equivalents, and liquid investments on hand on the date we issue or file our consolidated financial statements than had been the case during prior years in order to avoid a going concern qualification in our auditor's report and in the footnotes to our consolidated financial statements. If our consolidated financial statements were to become subject to a going concern qualification or uncertainty or if we are unable to alleviate substantial doubt as part of our going concern assessment, or both, the market price of our common stock could decline.

Provisions in our restated certificate of incorporation and restated bylaws and under Delaware law could make an acquisition of our company, which may be beneficial to our stockholders, more difficult and may prevent attempts by our stockholders to replace or remove our current management.

Provisions in our restated certificate of incorporation and our restated bylaws, which will become effective upon the closing of this offering may discourage, delay or prevent a merger, acquisition or other change in control of our company that stockholders may consider favorable, including transactions in which you might otherwise receive a premium for your shares. These provisions could also limit the price that investors might be willing to pay in the future for shares of our common stock, thereby depressing the market price of our common stock. In addition, because our Board of Directors is responsible for appointing the members of our management team, these provisions may frustrate or prevent any attempts by our stockholders to replace or remove our current management by making it more difficult for stockholders to replace members of our Board of Directors. Among other things, these provisions include those establishing:

- no cumulative voting in the election of directors, which limits the ability of minority stockholders to elect director candidates;

- the ability of our Board of Directors to authorize the issuance of shares of preferred stock and to determine the terms of those shares, including preferences and voting rights, without stockholder approval, which could be used to significantly dilute the ownership of a hostile acquirer; and

- the ability of our Board of Directors to alter our bylaws without obtaining stockholder approval.

Moreover, because we are incorporated in Delaware, we are governed by the provisions of Section 203 of the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware, which prohibits a person who owns in excess of 15% of our outstanding voting stock from merging or combining with us for a period of three years after the date of the transaction in which the person acquired in excess of 15% of our outstanding voting stock, unless the merger or combination is approved in a prescribed manner.

SPECIAL NOTE ABOUT FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This information statement contains forward-looking statements including in the sections entitled "Summary," "Risk Factors," "The Distribution," "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" "Unaudited Pro Forma Condensed Combined Financial Statements" and "Business," that are based on our management's beliefs and assumptions and on information currently available to our management. Forward-looking statements include, but are not limited to, statements related to our expectations regarding our business, our financial results, the results of our ongoing or future clinical trials or studies, our prospective products and product approvals, our research and development costs, our future revenue, our liquidity and capital resources, the benefits resulting from our separation from BioTime, the effects of competition and the effects of future legislation or regulations and other non-historical statements. Forward-looking statements include all statements that are not historical facts and can be identified by the use of forward-looking terminology such as the words "outlook," "believes," "expects," "potential," "continues," "may," "will," "should," "could," "seeks," "projects," "predicts," "intends," "plans," "estimates," "anticipates" or the negative version of these words or other comparable words.

Forward-looking statements involve risks, uncertainties and assumptions. Actual results may differ materially from those expressed in these forward-looking statements. You should not put undue reliance on any forward-looking statements in this information statement. We do not have any intention or obligation to update forward-looking statements after we distribute this information statement except as required by law.

In addition, statements that "we believe" and similar statements reflect our beliefs and opinions on the relevant subject. These statements are based upon information available to us as of the date of this information statement, and while we believe such information forms a reasonable basis for such statements, such information may be limited or incomplete, and our statements should not be read to indicate that we have conducted an exhaustive inquiry into, or review of, all potentially available relevant information. These statements are inherently uncertain and investors are cautioned not to unduly rely upon these statements.

The risk factors discussed in "Risk Factors" could cause our results to differ materially from those expressed in forward-looking statements. There may be other risks and uncertainties that we are unable to predict at this time or that we currently do not expect to have a material adverse effect on our business. Any such risks could cause our results to differ materially from those expressed in forward-looking statements.

THE DISTRIBUTION

Background

BioTime presently operates a substantial portion of its stem cell and regenerative medicine business through subsidiaries, some of which are wholly owned, and some, are majority-owned by BioTime but have minority shareholders. BioTime determined that certain early stage pre-clinical technologies and related research and development programs should be consolidated within a new subsidiary, AgeX, and on August 17, 2017, BioTime contributed certain assets to AgeX for use in those research and development programs. In exchange for those assets, AgeX issued to BioTime 28,800,000 shares of AgeX common stock. The asset contribution was made pursuant to the Asset Contribution and Separation Agreement, dated August 17, 2017, between BioTime and AgeX (the "Asset Contribution Agreement").

The assets that BioTime contributed to AgeX include the following:

- Intellectual property and proprietary technology, including certain patents and patent applications and know-how comprising AgeX's induced tissue regeneration or "iTR" technology and adipose brown fat tissue technology;
- Approximately 95% of the outstanding shares of ReCyte Therapeutics, Inc. or "ReCyte" which constitute all of the shares BioTime held prior to the contribution;
- Approximately 82% of the outstanding shares of LifeMap Sciences, Inc. which constitute all of the shares BioTime held prior to the contribution;
- Approximately 44% of the outstanding shares of Ascendance Biotechnology, Inc., or "Ascendance" which constitute all of the shares BioTime held prior to the contribution;
- $100,000 in cash; and
- Certain other assets and contracts, including BioTime research and development departments and personnel related to the AgeX research and development programs that AgeX will conduct.

Under the Asset Contribution Agreement, AgeX agreed to assume all obligations and liabilities related to the assets contributed and contracts assigned to AgeX or the operation of AgeX's related business. The Asset Contribution Agreement also sets forth other terms that govern certain aspects of BioTime's ongoing relationship with AgeX in connection with and after the Distribution.

Under the Asset Contribution Agreement, the obligations and liabilities assumed by AgeX were primarily related to and arising from the normal operations of AgeX to be incurred on or after July 1, 2017. As of June 30, 2017, in contemplation of capitalizing AgeX and to further incentivize new investors to invest in AgeX, all material liabilities and obligations between AgeX and BioTime had been settled or canceled. See Note 4. Related Party Transactions to our historical audited consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement.

The Asset Contribution Agreement includes representations, warranties and covenants which were made solely for the benefit of the parties to the Asset Contribution Agreement. BioTime shareholders who are receiving AgeX shares in the Distribution are not third-party beneficiaries under the Asset Contribution Agreement and should not rely on the representations, warranties and covenants or any descriptions thereof as characterizations of the actual state of facts or condition of BioTime or AgeX or any of BioTime's or AgeX's subsidiaries or affiliates.

The foregoing description of the Asset Contribution Agreement is qualified in its entirety by reference to the Asset Contribution Agreement, a copy of which is filed as an Exhibit to AgeX's Registration Statement on Form 10 and is incorporated herein by reference.

Concurrently with the contribution of assets to AgeX under the Asset Contribution Agreement, BioTime and AgeX entered into a License Agreement pursuant to which BioTime has licensed to AgeX, with rights to sublicense, certain intellectual property, including patents and patent applications and know-how for use in the development, manufacture and commercialization of products or services for the prevention, treatment, amelioration, diagnosis or monitoring of all human and non-human animal diseases and conditions except for medical products, devices and services for the reserved BioTime fields of orthopedic, ophthalmic, and medical aesthetic uses. In addition, BioTime retains an option right, on terms to be negotiated, to license iTR patents in research, development, manufacturing and commercialization of treatments based on iTR in the reserved BioTime fields. The licensed patents and know-how relate generally to (a) BioTime's *PureStem*® human embryonic progenitor cell lines, and (b) telomere length and DNA quality control analysis in pluripotent stem cells. BioTime or certain of its subsidiaries have also agreed to license or sublicense to AgeX certain additional patents and patent rights and know-how relating to BioTime's *HyStem*® hydrogel technology, human embryonic progenitor cell technology, and human pluripotent stem cell lines and technology for use outside the fields reserved to BioTime, or in the case of certain sublicense rights, fields previously licensed to third parties. The terms of the licenses and sublicenses are more fully described under "Business—Our License Arrangements— License Agreement With BioTime: iTR, PureStem® and Telomere Length."

BioTime currently owns 40.2% of the outstanding shares of AgeX common stock, and the remaining 59.8% of the AgeX shares outstanding are owned by other shareholders, including Juvenescence. AgeX also has issued and outstanding common stock purchase warrants entitling the warrant holders to purchase 2,000,000 shares of AgeX common stock, in the aggregate. AgeX also maintains the Plan under which it has granted options to purchase approximately 1.4 million shares of common stock as of September 30, 2018 to certain officers, directors and employees, some of whom are also officers or directors of BioTime.

On August 1, 2018 and October 24, 2018, the BioTime board of directors formally approved the Distribution to each holder of record of BioTime common shares at 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on the Record Date in the ratio of one share of AgeX common stock for every 10 BioTime common shares held.

Reasons for the Distribution

BioTime's board of directors determined that it would be beneficial to distribute some or all of BioTime's shares of AgeX to BioTime shareholders after considering how to:

- Best provide management and employee incentives tied to AgeX's growth and financial performance in order to facilitate the eventual hiring and retention of high quality managers, research scientists, and other employees;
- Best position AgeX to finance its future capital needs for its operations;
- Best position AgeX to finance business and technology acquisitions; and
- Maximize value for BioTime shareholders.

BioTime believes that creating a substantially separate management team for AgeX in the future and fostering public ownership of AgeX common stock following the Distribution will better enable AgeX to focus on maximizing opportunities for its business, and to access the capital markets to obtain the financing that AgeX will need in the long run to fund its research and product development programs, and to conduct clinical trials and commercialize any therapeutic products that it may develop. In this regard, AgeX and BioTime will each be able to establish an expense structure appropriate for its business and size, and to establish management and employee incentives tied to each company's performance. Both BioTime and AgeX believe that the Distribution will present the opportunity for enhanced performance of both BioTime and AgeX, thus providing additional value to BioTime shareholders.

In order to finance AgeX's research and development programs and related general administrative expenses, BioTime has had to raise equity capital through the sale of BioTime common shares. While BioTime has benefitted from that financing, the sale of BioTime common shares has diluted BioTime shareholders' overall interests in BioTime and its other operating subsidiaries, and AgeX will need to raise additional capital for its operations for the foreseeable future. The Distribution will give AgeX direct access to capital markets. After the Distribution, AgeX's financing activities in the capital markets may be dilutive to shareholders of AgeX who do not participate in the financing.

In addition, by separating the operation and financing of AgeX from BioTime, BioTime's board of directors believes that the Distribution will facilitate a deeper understanding by investors of the different businesses of BioTime and AgeX, allowing investors to more transparently value the merits, performance, and future prospects of each company, which could increase overall shareholder value. The Distribution will also provide enhanced liquidity to holders of BioTime common shares, who after the Distribution will hold two separate publicly traded securities that they may seek to retain or monetize. Investors will have a more targeted investment opportunity by having equity in two separate companies with different investment and business characteristics, including opportunities for growth, capital structure, business models, and financial returns.

Neither BioTime nor AgeX can assure that, following the Distribution, any of these benefits will be realized to the extent anticipated or at all. See "Risk Factors—Risks Related to the Distribution."

BioTime's board of directors also considered a number of other factors in evaluating the Distribution, including:

- The one-time and on-going expenditures and financial costs of the Distribution to both BioTime and AgeX;
- The possibility that the Distribution may affect the financial strength of BioTime or its subsidiaries;
- The possibility that BioTime and AgeX could potentially become competitors in the future;
- The potential tax consequences to BioTime, BioTime shareholders and AgeX; and
- The risk that the combined trading prices of AgeX common stock and BioTime common shares after the Distribution may be lower than the trading price of BioTime's common shares before the Distribution.

BioTime's board of directors concluded, however, that the potential benefits of the Distribution outweigh these factors and that the Distribution is appropriate and advisable for BioTime and its shareholders at this time.

Manner of Effecting the Distribution

The Distribution will be effective as of 4:30 p.m., New York City time, on the Distribution Date, which is expected to be on November 28, 2018. As a result of the Distribution, each BioTime shareholder will receive one share of AgeX common stock for every 10 BioTime common shares that the shareholder owned on the Record Date. No fractional shares will be issued. Those BioTime shareholders who would otherwise be entitled to receive fractional shares will receive cash in lieu of fractional shares. In order to be entitled to receive AgeX shares in the Distribution, BioTime shareholders must be shareholders as of 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on the Record Date, which is November 16, 2018. Each share of AgeX common stock that is distributed will be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable and free of preemptive rights. See "Description of Securities." The actual number of shares of AgeX common stock to be distributed will be calculated on the Record Date.

BioTime shareholders will not be required to pay for the Distribution Shares of AgeX that they receive in the Distribution and will not need to surrender or exchange BioTime common share certificates in order to receive their AgeX stock, or to take any other action in connection with the Distribution. No vote of BioTime shareholders is required or sought in connection with the Distribution and BioTime shareholders have no appraisal rights in connection with the Distribution.

Book-Entry Distribution

On the Distribution Date, BioTime will release the shares of our common stock to our distribution agent to distribute to BioTime stockholders. For most BioTime stockholders, our distribution agent will credit their shares of our common stock to book-entry accounts established to hold their shares of our common stock. Our distribution agent will send these stockholders a statement reflecting their ownership of our common stock. Book-entry refers to a method of recording stock ownership in our records in which no physical certificates are issued. For stockholders who own BioTime common stock through a broker or other nominee, their shares of our common stock will be credited to these stockholders' accounts by the broker or other nominee. It may take the distribution agent up to two weeks to issue shares of our common stock to BioTime stockholders or to their bank or brokerage firm electronically by way of direct registration in book-entry form. Trading of our stock will not be affected by this delay in issuance by the distribution agent.

Cash in Lieu of Fractional Shares

The distribution agent will not deliver any fractional shares of AgeX common stock in connection with the Distribution. Instead, the distribution agent will aggregate fractional shares into whole shares, sell the whole shares in the open market at prevailing market prices, and distribute the aggregate cash proceeds of the sales, net of brokerage fees and other costs, to each holder of BioTime common shares who would otherwise be entitled to receive a fractional share in the Distribution. Those cash payments will be made to the holders in the same accounts in which the underlying shares are held. If a BioTime shareholder physically holds BioTime stock certificates, that shareholder's check for any cash that he or she may be entitled to receive instead of fractional shares will be included together with the account statement in the mailing that the distribution agent expects to send out on or after the Distribution Date.

BioTime, AgeX, and the distribution agent cannot guarantee any minimum sale price for the fractional shares of AgeX common stock. Neither BioTime nor AgeX will pay any interest on the proceeds from the sale of fractional shares. The distribution agent will have the sole discretion to select the broker-dealers through which to sell the aggregated fractional shares and to determine when, how and at what price to sell such shares. Neither the distribution agent nor the selected broker-dealers will be affiliates of BioTime or AgeX.

Distribution Conditions and Termination

We expect that the Distribution will be effective on the Distribution Date, November 28, 2018, provided that certain conditions set forth in the Asset Contribution Agreement are met or waived by the BioTime board of directors, including:

- the SEC has declared effective our Registration Statement on Form 10, of which this information statement is a part, under the Exchange Act;

- AgeX common stock has been approved and accepted for listing by the NYSE American or Nasdaq, subject to official notice of issuance, or if BioTime so determines the AgeX Common Stock shall have been approved for quotation on the OTC Bulletin Board;

- AgeX and BioTime have received all material licenses, permits, estoppels, consents, approvals, authorizations, qualifications and orders of governmental authorities and third parties as are necessary for consummation of the Distribution; and

- no action, proceeding or investigation shall have been instituted or threatened before any court or administrative body to restrain, enjoin or otherwise prevent the consummation of the Distribution, and no restraining order or injunction issued by any court of competent jurisdiction.

The fulfillment of the foregoing conditions will not create any obligation on BioTime's part to effect the Distribution, and the board of directors of BioTime has reserved the right to amend, modify or abandon the Distribution at any time prior to the Distribution Date.

In addition, BioTime has the right not to complete the Distribution if, at any time, the BioTime board of directors determines, in its sole discretion, that the Distribution is not in the best interests of BioTime and its shareholders. If BioTime determines to terminate the Distribution, changes the Distribution Date or the Record Date, or amends or modifies the terms of the Distribution, BioTime and AgeX will issue a press release, BioTime will file a Current Report on Form 8-K and AgeX will provide a supplement to this Information Statement disclosing the applicable changes.

Reason for Furnishing this Information Statement

This information statement is being furnished solely to provide information to BioTime shareholders who will receive shares of AgeX common stock in the Distribution. It is not and is not to be construed as an inducement or encouragement to buy or sell any securities. We believe that the information contained in this information statement is accurate as of the date set forth on the cover. Changes may occur after that date and neither AgeX nor BioTime undertakes any obligation to update the information except in the normal course of our respective public disclosure obligations.

Results of the Distribution

After the Distribution, we will be an independent, self-administered, publicly traded company. Immediately following the Distribution, we expect to have approximately 274 stockholders of record and 35,830,000 shares of our common stock outstanding (excluding equity awards and warrants), based on the number of stockholders of record and the number of shares of our and BioTime's common stock outstanding as of November 16, 2018 and the distribution ratio. The actual number of AgeX shares of common stock to be distributed was determined on the Record Date and will reflect any issuances of shares of AgeX common stock in respect of equity awards under the Plan between the date BioTime declares the dividend for the Distribution and the Record Date.

We have entered into, or will enter into prior to the Distribution, several agreements with BioTime, including the Asset Contribution Agreement, the Tax Matters Agreement and the Employee Matters Agreement, to effect the Distribution and provide a framework for our relationship with BioTime after the Distribution. These agreements will govern the relationship between us and BioTime after completion of the Distribution. See "Certain Relationships and Related Party Transactions—Agreements with BioTime and its Subsidiaries."

MARKET FOR OUR COMMON EQUITY

Market for Our Common Stock

There is presently no market for our common stock and there is no assurance that a market will be developed or be sustained. We have applied to list AgeX's common stock on the NYSE American under the symbol "AGE." Trading of our common stock commenced on a "when-issued" basis at least one trading day prior to the Record Date and will continue through the Distribution Date. When-issued trading refers to a sale or purchase made conditionally because the security has been authorized but not yet issued. When-issued trades generally settle within three trading days after the distribution date. If you are a record holder of common shares of BioTime as of 5:00 p.m., New York City time on the Record Date, you will be entitled to shares of our common stock distributed pursuant to the Distribution. On the first trading day following the distribution date, any when-issued trading with respect to our common stock will end and "regular-way" trading will begin.

If our listing application is not approved, we plan to arrange for the trading of our common stock on the OTC Bulletin Board no later than the completion of the Distribution. If our common stock initially trades on the OTC Bulletin Board, we intend to apply to list our common stock on a national securities exchange if and when we are able to meet the applicable listing standards of an exchange, but there is no assurance that any listing application that we may file will be approved by the exchange.

If you sell your BioTime common shares after the Record Date and before the date of the Distribution, you will also be selling your right to receive shares of AgeX common stock in the Distribution.

We cannot predict the prices at which our common stock may trade before the spin-off or after the Distribution. Those prices will be determined by the marketplace. Prices at which trading in our common stock occurs may fluctuate significantly. Those prices may be influenced by many factors, including anticipated or actual fluctuations in our operating results or those of other companies in our industry, investor perception of our company and the lodging industry, market fluctuations and general economic conditions. In addition, the stock market in general has experienced extreme price and volume fluctuations that have affected the performance of many stocks and that have often been unrelated or disproportionate to the operating performance of these companies. These are just some factors that may adversely affect the market price of our common stock. See "Risk Factors—Risks Pertaining to Our Common Stock" for further discussion of risks relating to the trading prices of our common stock.

Transferability of Shares of Our Common Stock

We expect that upon completion of the Distribution, we will have 35,830,000 million shares of common stock issued and outstanding based on the number of shares of our common stock outstanding on November 16, 2018. The actual number of shares of our common stock to be distributed will be determined on the Record Date and will reflect any issuances of shares of our common stock in respect of equity awards under the Plan or otherwise between the date BioTime declares the dividend for the Distribution and the Record Date. The shares of our common stock that you will receive in the Distribution are expected to be freely transferable, unless you are considered an "affiliate" of ours under Rule 144 under the Securities Act or have been an affiliate at the time of, or at any time during the three months preceding, any sale of our shares of common stock. Persons who can be considered our affiliates after the Distribution generally include individuals or entities that directly, or indirectly through one or more intermediaries, control, are controlled by, or are under common control with, us, and may include certain of our officers and directors. As of the Distribution Date, we estimate that our directors and officers will beneficially own in the aggregate less than one percent of our shares. In addition, individuals who are affiliates of BioTime on the Distribution Date may be deemed to be affiliates of ours. Our affiliates may sell shares of our common stock received in the Distribution only:

- under a registration statement that the SEC has declared effective under the Securities Act; or
- under an exemption from registration under the Securities Act, such as the exemption afforded by Rule 144 under the Securities Act.

In general, under Rule 144 as currently in effect, an affiliate will be entitled to sell, within any three-month period commencing 90 days after the date that the registration statement on Form 10 of which this information statement is a part is declared effective, a number of shares of our common stock that does not exceed the greater of:

- 1.0% of our common stock then outstanding, which will equal 358,300 shares immediately after the completion of the Distribution based on the number of shares of common stock outstanding on November 16, 2018; or
- the average weekly trading volume of our common stock on the NYSE American during the four calendar weeks preceding the filing of a notice on Form 144 with respect to the sale.

Sales under Rule 144 are also subject to restrictions relating to manner of sale and the availability of current public information about us.

As of September 30, 2018, we had 1,419,000 shares of common stock reserved for issuance upon the exercise of stock options or other stock-based awards under the Plan, with 2,581,000 remaining available for grants under the Plan. In the future, we may adopt new equity-based compensation plans and issue stock-based awards. We currently expect to file a registration statement on Form S-8 under the Securities Act to register shares to be issued under these equity plans. Shares issued pursuant to awards after the effective date of that registration statement, other than shares issued to "affiliates" as defined under the Exchange Act, generally will be freely tradable without further registration under the Securities Act.

We have agreed to register for sale under the Securities Act certain shares of common stock, including all shares held by Juvenescence as well as shares of common stock that may be purchased upon the exercise of certain warrants that we sold to certain investors without registration under the Securities Act. We have agreed to file a registration statement covering those shares following a written request for registration from any holder or group of holders of not less than 50% of the shares covered by the Registration Rights Agreement, but not earlier than one year after we complete the Distribution. See "Certain Relationships and Related Party Transactions."

DIVIDEND POLICY

We have never declared or paid any cash dividends on our common stock. For the foreseeable future, we anticipate that all available funds and any earnings generated in our business will be used to finance the growth of our business and will not be paid out as dividends to our shareholders. Any future determination related to our dividend policy will be made at the discretion of our Board of Directors and will depend upon, among other factors, our results of operations, financial condition, capital requirements, contractual restrictions, business prospects and other factors our Board of Directors may deem relevant.

SELECTED FINANCIAL DATA

The following table summarizes the financial data for our business, which has been derived from our historical audited consolidated financial statements as of and for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 as well as our historical unaudited condensed consolidated interim financial statements as of and for the nine months ended September 30, 2018 and nine months ended September 30, 2017, each included elsewhere in this information statement, and should be read in conjunction with the sections entitled "Risk Factors," "Capitalization," "Unaudited Pro Forma Condensed Combined Financial Statements" and "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" and with our consolidated financial statements and related notes, all included elsewhere in this information statement. Our unaudited condensed consolidated interim financial statements were prepared on the same basis as our audited consolidated financial statements and include, in our opinion, all adjustments, consisting of normal recurring adjustments that we consider necessary for a fair presentation of the financial information set forth in those financial statements. Historical results are not necessarily indicative of the results that may be expected in the future and results as of and for the nine months ended September 30, 2018 and for the nine months ended September 30, 2017 are not necessarily indicative of results to be expected for any full fiscal year.

Prior to August 2017, our current subsidiaries and certain research and development departments, including personnel within AgeX operated as subsidiaries and research and development departments and employees of BioTime. As a result, our consolidated financial statements have been prepared on a "carve-out" basis for presenting what our consolidated financial results would have been had AgeX operated as a standalone entity for such periods. Such results are not necessarily indicative of future performance and do not necessarily reflect what our financial position and results of operations would have been had we been operating as an independent, publicly traded company during the periods presented, including changes that will occur in our operations and capitalization as a result of the Distribution. See "Risk Factors—Risks Related to the Distribution—The historical and pro forma financial information presented herein is not necessarily representative of the results that our business would have achieved as a separate, publicly traded company and may not be a reliable indicator of our future results."

Consolidated Statements of Operations Data:

(in thousands, except per share figures)	Nine Months Ended September 30, (unaudited)		Year Ended December 31,	
	2018	2017	2017	2016
REVENUES:				
Subscription and advertisement revenues	$ 945	$ 944	$ 1,399	$ 980
Service and other revenues	138	2	5	686
Total revenues	1,083	946	1,404	1,666
Cost of sales	(184)	(114)	(168)	(304)
Gross profit	899	832	1,236	1,362
OPERATING EXPENSES:				
Research and development	(4,307)	(4,517)	(5,784)	(8,479)
Acquired in-process research and development	(800)	-	-	-
General and administrative	(3,679)	(3,174)	(3,869)	(5,622)
Total operating expenses	(8,786)	(7,691)	(9,653)	(14,101)
Gain on sale of assets	-	1,754	1,754	-
Loss from operations	(7,887)	(5,105)	(6,663)	(12,739)
OTHER INCOME/(EXPENSES):				
Interest income (expense), net	84	(28)	(12)	(25)
AgeX's share of losses and impairment in equity method investment in Ascendance	-	-	-	(4,671)
Gain on equity method investment in Ascendance	3,215	-	-	-
Other income, net	131	40	38	80
Total other income (expenses), net	3,430	12	26	(4,616)
NET LOSS	(4,457)	(5,093)	(6,637)	(17,355)
Net loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	141	20	57	1,863
NET LOSS ATTRIBUTABLE TO AGEX THERAPEUTICS, INC.	$ (4,316)	$ (5,073)	$ (6,580)	$ (15,492)
NET LOSS PER COMMON SHARE: BASIC AND DILUTED	$ (0.12)	$ (0.17)	$ (0.21)	$ (0.54)
WEIGHTED AVERAGE NUMBER OF SHARES OF COMMON STOCK OUTSTANDING: BASIC AND DILUTED	34,606	29,598	30,644	28,800

Balance Sheet Data:

(in thousands)	September 30, 2018 (unaudited)	December 31, 2017
Consolidated Balance Sheet Data:		
Cash and cash equivalents	$ 8,756	$ 7,375
Intangible assets, net	2,849	1,874
Total assets	12,142	9,631
Related party payable to BioTime	98	210
Total liabilities	1,405	1,312
Total stockholders' equity	$ 10,737	$ 8,319

UNAUDITED PRO FORMA CONDENSED COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

AgeX was incorporated in January 2017 in the state of Delaware as a subsidiary of BioTime, a publicly traded, clinical-stage biotechnology company targeting degenerative diseases. BioTime common stock trades on the NYSE American and Tel Aviv Stock Exchange under the symbol "BTX".

AgeX is a biotechnology company focused on the development and commercialization of novel therapeutics targeting human aging. AgeX's initial pre-clinical programs focus on utilizing brown adipose tissue in targeting diabetes, obesity, and heart disease; and induced tissue regeneration ("iTR") in utilizing the human body's own abilities to scarlessly regenerate tissues damaged from age or trauma. AgeX may also pursue other early-stage pre-clinical programs.

On June 6, 2017, BioTime and LifeMap Sciences entered into a Debt Conversion Agreement whereby BioTime acquired (1) a direct 100% ownership of LifeMap Solutions, a wholly owned subsidiary of LifeMap Sciences, (2) additional shares of common stock in LifeMap Sciences and (3) certain other assets and intellectual property of LifeMap Sciences. These items were acquired in exchange for the settlement of related party payables due to BioTime by LifeMap Sciences and LifeMap Solutions.

On August 17, 2017, BioTime contributed all of its then-existing ownership interests in LifeMap Sciences (approximately 82% ownership), ReCyte Therapeutics (approximately 95% ownership), an equity method investment in Ascendance (approximately 44% ownership), and certain BioTime general research and development departments, including personnel, to AgeX in exchange for 28,800,000 shares of AgeX common stock pursuant to an Asset Contribution and Separation Agreement (the "Asset Contribution Agreement") discussed in Note 4 to our consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement.

Effective as of June 6, 2017, as a result of the transfer of the LifeMap Solutions entity to BioTime, LifeMap Sciences deconsolidated LifeMap Solutions from its financial statements. The exchange of LifeMap Sciences assets, including LifeMap Solutions, for the settlement of related party payables due to BioTime, and the subsequent contribution in August 2017 by BioTime of assets to AgeX under the Asset Contribution Agreement are transactions between entities under common control. Accordingly, the contributed assets and liabilities are recorded at historical carrying values, with the resulting gain recorded in AgeX's additional paid-in capital as an equity as contribution by BioTime in accordance with, and pursuant to ASC 805-50, *Transactions Between Entities Under Common Control*.

The LifeMap Sciences deconsolidation is not considered a discontinued operation in accordance with ASC 205-20, *Presentation of Financial Statements—Discontinued Operations* because the disposition of LifeMap Solutions does not represent a strategic shift in AgeX' s operations, as defined by ASC 205-20, and the criteria for discontinued operations under ASC 205-20 are not met.

In accordance with the accounting guidance related to carve-out entities, LifeMap Solutions' historical financial statements and operating results have been included in the AgeX consolidated financial statements for reporting periods prior to June 6, 2017, the transfer date of LifeMap Solutions to Bio Time. Subsequent to June 6, 2017, LifeMap Solutions' financial statements and operating results are no longer included in AgeX's consolidated financial statements.

We have included in this section the unaudited pro forma condensed combined statement of operations for the year ended December 31, 2017, which gives effect to the deconsolidation of LifeMap Solutions as if it had occurred on January 1, 2017.

The unaudited pro forma condensed combined statement of operations is presented for illustrative purposes and is based on available information and assumptions we believe are reasonable. The unaudited pro forma condensed combined statement of operations was prepared in accordance with the rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") and should not be considered indicative of the consolidated results of operations that would have occurred if the transaction above had been completed on the date indicated, nor is it necessarily indicative of our future consolidated results of operations.

AGEX THERAPEUTICS, INC AND SUBSIDIARIES
UNAUDITED PRO FORMA CONDENSED COMBINED STATEMENT OF OPERATIONS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2017
IN THOUSANDS, EXCEPT PER SHARE DATA

	AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. Consolidated, as Reported	Pro Forma Adjustments for LifeMap Solutions	Notes	Pro Forma
REVENUES:				
Subscription and advertisement revenues	$ 1,399	$ -		$ 1,399
Service and other revenues	5	-		5
Total revenues	1,404	-		1,404
Cost of sales	(168)	-		(168)
Gross Profit	1,236	-		1,236
OPERATING EXPENSES:				
Research and development	(5,784)	473	(a)	(5,311)
General and administrative	(3,869)	481	(a)	(3,388)
Total operating expenses	(9,653)	954		(8,699)
Gain on sale of assets	1,754	(1,754)	(a)	-
Loss from operations	(6,663)	(800)		(7,463)
OTHER INCOME/(EXPENSES):				
Interest expense, net	(12)	12	(b)	-
Other income, net	38	-		38
Total other income, net	26	12		38
NET LOSS	(6,637)	(788)		(7,425)
Net loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	57	172	(c)	229
NET LOSS ATTRIBUTABLE TO AGEX THERAPEUTICS, INC.	$ (6,580)	$ (616)		$ (7,196)
NET LOSS PER COMMON SHARE: BASIC AND DILUTED	$ (0.21)			$ (0.23)
WEIGHTED AVERAGE NUMBER OR COMMON SHARES OUTSTANDING: BASIC AND DILUTED	30,644			30,644

Notes to Unaudited Pro Forma Condensed Combined Statement of Operations.

(a) Adjustment reflects the operating expenses attributable to LifeMap Solutions, including the gain on sale of certain assets of LifeMap Solutions prior to the transfer to BioTime on June 6, 2017.

(b) Adjustment reflects other income and expenses, net, attributable to LifeMap Solutions.

(c) Adjustment reflects the net loss attributable to AgeX's noncontrolling interests of LifeMap Solutions.

MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

The following Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations is intended to provide information necessary to understand our unaudited interim condensed consolidated financial statements for the nine months ended September 30, 2018 and 2017, and our audited consolidated financial statements for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, and highlight certain other information which, in the opinion of management, will enhance a reader's understanding of our financial condition, changes in financial condition and results of operations. These historical financial statements may not be indicative of our future performance. This Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations contains a number of forward-looking statements, all of which are based on our current expectations and could be affected by the uncertainties and risks described throughout this filing, particularly in "Risk Factors."

Overview

We were incorporated in January 2017 in the state of Delaware as a subsidiary of BioTime, a publicly traded, clinical-stage biotechnology company targeting degenerative diseases. BioTime common stock trades on the NYSE American and Tel Aviv Stock Exchange under the symbol "BTX".

We are a biotechnology company focused on the development and commercialization of novel therapeutics targeting human aging. Our initial discovery and preclinical programs focus on utilizing brown adipose tissue in targeting diabetes, obesity, and heart disease; and induced tissue regeneration in utilizing the human body's own abilities to scarlessly regenerate tissues damaged from age or trauma. We may also pursue other early-stage pre-clinical programs.

On August 17, 2017, we completed an asset acquisition and stock sale pursuant to which we received certain assets from BioTime for use in our research and development programs and raised $10.0 million in cash from investors to finance our operations.

On June 7, 2018, we sold 2.0 million shares of common stock for $2.50 per share to Juvenescence Limited ("Juvenescence") for aggregate cash proceeds to us of $5.0 million. These financings have allowed us to focus our resources on our pre-clinical programs.

On September 25, 2017, BioTime's Board of Directors approved a distribution of our common stock owned by BioTime to BioTime's shareholders.

Following the consummation of the Juvenescence Transaction on August 30, 2018, BioTime owned 40.2% and Juvenescence owned 45.8% of our issued and outstanding shares of common stock and, accordingly, we are no longer a subsidiary of BioTime as of that date. We remain an affiliate of BioTime.

On August 15, 2018, we completed the acquisition of certain patents and patent applications relating primarily to HLA-G to suppress rejection of transplanted cells and tissues and certain pluripotent stem cell lines from Escape Therapeutics for upfront consideration of $1,072,436 in cash and 80,000 new shares of our common stock, with an approximate value of $240,000, issued to Escape. See "Information Statement Summary—Recent Developments—Escape Acquisition." See also Note 3. *Intangible Assets, net*, to our historical unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement.

The inherent uncertainties of early-stage pre-clinical or exploratory type research and development programs make it impossible to predict the amount of time and expense that will be required to test proof of concepts, identify particular programs that may lead to clinical trials or even possible commercialization of any new product or technology we are working on or may work on in the future. There is no assurance that we will be successful in developing any new technology, or that any technology we may develop will be proven safe and effective in humans or will be successfully commercialized.

Since inception, our operations have focused on building our technology platform, identifying potential product candidates, establishing and protecting our intellectual property and raising capital. Our revenues have been principally derived from subscription and advertising revenue from LifeMap Sciences' online databases based upon applicable subscription or advertising periods. We do not have any products approved for sale and have not generated any revenue from product sales.

We believe we have sufficient capital to carry out our current research and development programs and other operations through at least twelve months from the issuance date of our historical unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement. We will need to obtain additional financing in order to continue our research and development programs after this date. Our determination as to when we will seek new financing and the amount of financing that we will need will be based on our evaluation of the progress we make in our research and development programs, any changes to or the expansion of the scope and focus of our research, and our projection of future costs. See "Liquidity and Capital Resources" for a discussion of our available capital resources, our potential need for future financing, and possible sources of capital.

Since inception, we have incurred significant operating losses. Our operating losses were $6.7 million, $12.7 million, and $7.9 million, for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 and the nine months ended September 30, 2018, respectively. As of September 30, 2018, we had an accumulated deficit of $70.9 million. We expect to continue to incur significant expenses and operating losses over the next several years. We anticipate that our expenses will increase significantly in connection with our ongoing activities, if we:

- commence clinical development of our product candidates;
- continue activities to discover, validate and develop additional product candidates;
- maintain, expand and protect our intellectual property portfolio;
- hire research, development and general and administrative personnel as we begin operations as a standalone, publicly-traded company; and
- incur additional costs associated with operating as a public company.

Critical Accounting Policies

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts in our consolidated financial statements and related notes. Our significant accounting policies are described in Note 2 to our consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement. We have identified below our critical accounting policies and estimates that we believe require the greatest amount of judgment. On an ongoing basis, we evaluate our estimates that are subject to significant judgment including those related to going concern assessment of consolidated financial statements, allocations and adjustments necessary for carve-out basis of presentation, including the separate return method for income taxes, useful lives associated with long-lived assets, including evaluation of asset impairment, allowances for uncollectible accounts receivables, loss contingencies, deferred income taxes and tax reserves, including valuation allowances related to deferred income taxes, and assumptions used to value stock-based awards, or other equity instruments. Actual results could differ materially from those estimates. On an ongoing basis, we evaluate our estimates compared to historical experience and trends, which form the basis for making judgments about the carrying value of assets and liabilities. To the extent that there are material differences between our estimates and our actual results, our future consolidated financial statement presentation, financial condition, results of operations and cash flows will be affected.

We believe the assumptions and estimates associated with the following have the greatest potential impact on our consolidated financial statements.

Going concern assessment – We assess going concern uncertainty for our consolidated financial statements to determine if we have sufficient cash and cash equivalents on hand and working capital to operate for a period of at least one year from the date our consolidated financial statements are issued or are available to be issued, which is referred to as the "look-forward period" as defined by FASB's ASU No. 2014-15. As part of this assessment, based on conditions that are known and reasonably knowable to us, we will consider various scenarios, forecasts, projections, and estimates, and we will make certain key assumptions, including the timing and nature of projected cash expenditures or programs, and our ability to delay or curtail those expenditures or programs, if necessary, among other factors. Based on this assessment, as necessary or applicable, we make certain assumptions concerning our ability to curtail or delay research and development programs and expenditures within the look-forward period in accordance with ASU No. 2014-15.

Related party transactions - Shared Facilities and Services Agreement - As more fully described in Note 4 to our consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement, to the extent we do not have our own employees, human resources or facilities for our operations, BioTime provides certain employees for administrative or operational services, including laboratory space and administrative facilities, as necessary, for our benefit, under a Shared Facilities and Services Agreement (the "Shared Facilities Agreement") with BioTime. Accordingly, BioTime allocates expenses such as salaries and payroll related expenses incurred and paid on our behalf based on the amount of time that particular employees devote to AgeX affairs. Other expenses such as legal, accounting and financial reporting, marketing, and travel expenses are allocated to us to the extent that those expenses are incurred by or on behalf of AgeX. BioTime also allocates certain overhead expenses such as rent and utilities, property taxes, insurance, laboratory expenses and supplies, telecommunications and other indirect expenses. These allocations are made based upon activity-based allocation drivers such as time spent, percentage of square feet of office or laboratory space used, headcount and percentage of personnel devoted to our operations or management. Management evaluates the appropriateness of the allocations on a periodic basis and believes that this basis for allocation is reasonable.

Related party transactions - allocated expenses from BioTime - Consistent with the principles of carve-out financial statements and presentation discussed in Note 2 to our consolidated financial statements, certain expenses have been allocated by BioTime and included in our consolidated statements of operations and consolidated statements of shareholders' equity as a contribution by BioTime.

Research and development expenses include allocations from BioTime primarily attributable to certain former BioTime general research departments contributed to us primarily comprised of former BioTime personnel and related expenses, including stock-based compensation, and other outside expenses relevant to the nature of the research projects being conducted that were contributed to us pursuant to the Asset Contribution Agreement discussed in Note 4 to our consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement.

General and administrative expenses include allocations from certain BioTime general and administrative expenses, including allocated stock-based compensation, for carve-out presentation purposes of our consolidated statements of operations. These allocations are principally based on the historical general and administrative functions and expenses relevant to BioTime and our subsidiaries that operated prior to and after our formation and capitalization.

Management considers the allocation methodologies used to allocate expenses as reasonable and appropriate based on historical BioTime expenses attributable to us and our operations for purposes of the standalone, carve-out consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement. The expenses reflected in the consolidated financial statements may not be indicative of expenses that we will incur as an independent, publicly traded company and should not be relied upon as an indicator of our future results.

Research and development – Research and development expenses include both direct expenses incurred by us or our subsidiaries and indirect overhead costs allocated by BioTime that benefit or support our research and development functions. Direct research and development expenses consist primarily of personnel costs and related benefits, including stock-based compensation, amortization of intangible assets, outside consultants and suppliers, and license fees paid to third parties to acquire patents or licenses to use patents and other technology. Direct research and development expenses also include allocations for carve-out presentation purposes from certain former BioTime general research departments discussed above under *Related party transactions - allocated expenses from BioTime*. Indirect research and development expenses include overhead expenses allocated to us by BioTime discussed under *Related party transactions - Shared Facilities and Services Agreement* above. Research and development costs are expensed as incurred. Research and development expenses incurred and reimbursed by grants from third parties or governmental agencies, including service revenues from co-development projects with customers, if any and as applicable, approximate the respective revenues recognized in the consolidated statements of operations.

General and administrative – General and administrative expenses include both direct expenses incurred by us and indirect overhead costs allocated by BioTime that benefit or support our general and administrative functions. Direct general and administrative expenses consist primarily of compensation and related benefits, including stock-based compensation, for executive and corporate personnel, and professional and consulting fees. Direct general and administrative expenses also include allocations for carve-out presentation purposes discussed above under *Related party transactions - allocated expenses from BioTime*. Indirect general and administrative expenses include overhead expenses allocated to us by BioTime discussed under *Related party transactions - Shared Facilities and Services Agreement* above.

Income taxes – For Federal and California income tax purposes, our activity for 2016 and 2017 was or will be included in BioTime's federal and California combined tax returns. The income tax provision was prepared in accordance with ASC 740, *Income Taxes,* using the separate return method to determine the tax provision of AgeX Therapeutics Inc. for carve-out presentation purposes of its consolidated financial statements. The separate return method, amongst other things, requires that the amount of current and deferred tax expense for a group that files a consolidated income tax return be allocated among the members of that group as if each group member were a separate taxpayer. As a result, the provision for income taxes has been presented as if AgeX had filed a separate federal consolidated tax return and a California combined tax return for the periods presented. In using the separate return method, the sum of the amounts allocated to the members of the income tax return group may not equal the consolidated amount. If tax attributes recorded in the carve-out consolidated financial statements are materially different from the actual tax attributes pertaining to us or our legal entities and our subsidiaries, or to BioTime and its subsidiaries, those differences are identified and disclosed in Note 7 to our consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in the information statement. Accordingly, depending on our future legal structure and related tax elections that may be taken by us or our parent company, BioTime, our effective tax rate in future years could vary materially from our historical effective tax rates. The historical deferred tax assets, including the operating losses and credit carryforwards generated by certain research and development departments that operated within BioTime and were transferred to us on August 17, 2017, have been presented as our tax attributes consistent with the principles of the separate return method described above. However, the net operating losses and research and development credits that these departments generated before August 17, 2017, the contribution date to AgeX, will remain as tax attributes of BioTime.

In general, net operating losses and other tax credit carryforwards generated by legal entities in a consolidated federal tax group or a combined state tax group, collectively "the tax group", are available to other members of the tax group depending on the nature of the transaction that a member may enter into while still in the tax group. However, under the Tax Matters Agreement between BioTime and us on August 17, 2017, any use of a member's net operating loss and other tax credit carryforwards by the other member is subject to reimbursement by the benefiting member for the actual tax benefit realized.

We account for income taxes in accordance with ASC 740, which prescribes the use of the asset and liability method, whereby deferred tax asset or liability account balances are calculated at the balance sheet date using current tax laws and enacted rates in effect. Valuation allowances are established when necessary to reduce deferred tax assets when it is more likely than not that a portion or all of the deferred tax assets will not be realized. Our judgments, estimates and projections regarding future taxable income may change over time due to changes, among other factors, in market conditions, changes in tax laws, and tax planning strategies. If our assumptions and consequently our estimates change in the future, the valuation allowance may be increased or decreased, which may have a material impact on our consolidated financial statements.

The guidance also prescribes a recognition threshold and a measurement attribute for the financial statement recognition and measurement of tax positions taken or expected to be taken in a tax return. For those benefits to be recognized, a tax position must be more-likely-than-not sustainable upon examination by taxing authorities. We recognize accrued interest and penalties related to unrecognized tax benefits as income tax expense. No amounts were accrued for the payment of interest and penalties as of December 31, 2017 and 2016. We are not aware of any uncertain tax positions that could result in significant additional payments, accruals, or other material adjustments for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016. We are currently unaware of any tax issues under review.

Certain majority-owned subsidiaries that we consolidate under GAAP file their own, standalone federal income tax returns as those subsidiaries are not considered consolidated under federal income tax regulations, and accordingly, AgeX and those subsidiaries may not use each other's tax attributes.

As further discussed in Notes 1 and 7 to our unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement, on August 30, 2018, BioTime consummated the sale of 14,400,000 shares of our common stock owned by BioTime to Juvenescence. We received no proceeds from this transaction. Prior to the Juvenescence Transaction, Juvenescence owned 5.6% of our issued and outstanding common stock. Upon completion of the Juvenescence Transaction, BioTime's ownership stake was reduced from 80.4% to 40.2% of our issued and outstanding shares of common stock, and Juvenescence's ownership was increased from 5.6% to 45.8% of our issued and outstanding shares of common stock. Accordingly, beginning on August 31, 2018, we will no longer be included in BioTime's consolidated federal and state income tax returns as we will file our own, standalone returns, with our consolidated subsidiaries.

On December 22, 2017, the United States enacted major federal tax reform legislation, Public Law No. 115-97, commonly referred to as the 2017 Tax Cuts and Jobs Act ("2017 Tax Act"), which enacted a broad range of changes to the Internal Revenue Code. Changes to taxes on corporations impacted by the 2017 Tax Act include, but not limited to, lowering the U.S. federal tax rates to a 21 percent flat tax rate, eliminating the corporate alternative minimum tax ("AMT"), imposing additional limitations on the deductibility of interest and net operating losses, allowing any net operating loss ("NOLs") generated in tax years ending after December 31, 2017 to be carried forward indefinitely and generally repealing carrybacks, reducing the maximum deduction for NOL carryforwards arising in tax years beginning after 2017 to a percentage of the taxpayer's taxable income, and allowing for additional expensing of certain capital expenditures. The 2017 Tax Act also puts into effect a number of changes impacting operations outside of the United States including, but not limited to, the imposition of a one-time tax "deemed repatriation" on accumulated offshore earnings not previously subject to U.S. tax, and shifts the U.S taxation of multinational corporations from a worldwide system of taxation to a territorial system. ASC 740 requires the effects of changes in tax rates and laws on deferred tax balances (including the effects of the one-time transition tax) to be recognized in the period in which the legislation is enacted.

On December 22, 2017, the SEC staff issued Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 118 ("SAB 118") to provide guidance for companies that are not able to complete their accounting for the income tax effects of the 2017 Tax Act in the period of enactment. SAB 118 allows us to record provisional amounts during a measurement period not to extend beyond one year of the enactment date.

Stock-based compensation – We recognize compensation expense related to employee option grants and restricted stock grants, if any, in accordance with FASB ASC 718, *Compensation – Stock Compensation* ("ASC 718").

We estimate the fair value of employee stock-based payment awards on the grant-date and recognize the resulting fair value, net of estimated forfeitures for grants prior to 2017, over the requisite service period. Upon adoption of Accounting Standards Update ("ASU") 2016-09 on January 1, 2017, forfeitures are accounted for as they occur instead of based on the number of awards that were expected to vest prior to adoption of ASU 2016-09.

We use the Black-Scholes option pricing model for estimating the fair value of options granted under our 2017 Equity Incentive Plan (the "Plan"). The fair value of each restricted stock grant, if any, is determined based on the value of the common stock granted or sold. We have elected to treat stock-based payment awards with graded vesting schedules and time-based service conditions as a single award and recognize stock-based compensation on a straight-line basis over the requisite service period.

Compensation expense for non-employee stock-based awards is recognized in accordance with ASC 718 and FASB ASC 505-50, *Equity-Based Payments to Non-Employees*. Stock option awards issued to non-employees, principally consultants or outside contractors, as applicable, are accounted for at fair value using the Black-Scholes option pricing model. Management believes that the fair value of the stock options can more reliably be measured than the fair value of services received. We record compensation expense based on the then-current fair values of the stock options at each financial reporting date. Compensation expense recorded during the service period is adjusted in subsequent periods for changes in the fair value of the stock options until the earlier of the date at which the non-employee's performance is complete or a performance commitment is reached, which is generally when the stock option award vests. Compensation expense for non-employee grants is recorded on a straight-line basis in the consolidated statements of operations. To date, we have not granted stock-based awards to non-employees.

The Black-Scholes option pricing model requires us to make certain assumptions including the fair value of the underlying common stock, the expected term, the expected volatility, the risk-free interest rate and the dividend yield.

The fair value of the shares of common stock underlying the stock options has historically been determined by our Board of Directors. Because there has been no public market for our common stock, our Board of Directors has determined the fair value of the common stock at the time of the grant of options by considering a number of objective and subjective factors including contemporaneous sales of our common stock to investors, valuation of comparable companies, operating and financial performance and general and industry-specific economic outlook, amongst other factors. The fair value of the underlying common stock will be determined by our Board of Directors until such time as our common stock is traded on an established stock exchange or national market system. The fair value was determined in accordance with applicable elements of the practice aid issued by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants titled *Valuation of Privately Held Company Equity Securities Issued As Compensation*.

The expected term of employee stock options represents the weighted-average period that the stock options are expected to remain outstanding. We estimate the expected term of options granted based upon the "simplified method" provided under *Staff Accounting Bulletin, Topic 14*, or SAB Topic 14.

Because our common stock has no publicly traded history, we estimate the expected volatility of the awards from the historical volatility of selected public companies within the biotechnology industry with comparable characteristics to us, including similarity in size, lines of business, market capitalization, revenue and financial leverage. We determined the expected volatility assumption using the frequency of daily historical prices of comparable public company's common stock for a period equal to the expected term of the options. We periodically assess the comparable companies and other relevant factors used to measure expected volatility for future stock option grants.

The risk-free interest rate assumption is based upon observed interest rates on the United States government securities appropriate for the expected term of our stock options.

The dividend yield assumption is based on our history and expectation of dividend payouts. We have never declared or paid any cash dividends on our common stock, and we do not anticipate paying any cash dividends in the foreseeable future.

Since we did not have an equity incentive plan until July 2017, consolidated stock-based compensation expense for the year ended December 31, 2016 consists of stock-based compensation allocated from BioTime, principally related to stock-based compensation of former BioTime employees transferred to AgeX, and stock-based compensation of our subsidiaries that have their own equity plans. Stock-based compensation expense for the year ended December 31, 2017 consists of stock-based compensation under the Plan, stock-based compensation allocated from BioTime and stock-based compensation of our subsidiaries that have their own equity plans.

As discussed above, certain of our consolidated subsidiaries have their own share-based compensation plans. For share-based compensation awards granted by those privately-held consolidated subsidiaries under their respective equity plans, we determine the fair value of the options granted under those plans using similar methodologies and assumptions we used for our stock options discussed above.

Although the fair value of stock options is determined in accordance with FASB guidance, changes in the assumptions and allocations can materially affect the estimated value and therefore the amount of compensation expense recognized in the consolidated financial statements.

Long-lived intangible assets – Long-lived intangible assets, consisting primarily of acquired patents, patent applications, and licenses to use certain patents are stated at acquired cost, less accumulated amortization. Amortization expense is computed using the straight-line method over the estimated useful lives of the assets, generally over 10 years.

Impairment of long-lived assets – Long-lived assets, including long-lived intangible assets, are reviewed for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of an asset may not be fully recoverable. If an impairment indicator is present, we evaluate recoverability by a comparison of the carrying amount of the assets to future undiscounted net cash flows expected to be generated by the assets. If the assets are impaired, the impairment recognized is measured by the amount by which the carrying amount exceeds the estimated fair value of the assets. Through September 30, 2018, there have been no such impairment losses.

Adoption of ASU 2014-09, Revenues from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606). During May 2014, the FASB issued ASU 2014-09 ("Topic 606") *Revenue from Contracts with Customers* which supersedes the revenue recognition requirements in Topic 605 *Revenue Recognition* ("Topic 605"). Topic 606 describes principles an entity must apply to measure and recognize revenue and the related cash flows, using the following five steps: (i) identify the contract(s) with a customer; (ii) identify the performance obligations in the contract; (iii) determine the transaction price; (iv) allocate the transaction price to the performance obligation(s) in the contract; and (v) recognize revenue when (or as) the entity satisfies a performance obligation. Topic 606 core principle is that it requires entities to recognize revenue when control of the promised goods or services is transferred to customers at an amount that reflects the consideration to which the entity expects to be entitled to in exchange for those goods or services.

We adopted Topic 606 as of January 1, 2018 using the modified retrospective transition method applied to those contracts which were not completed as of the adoption date. Results for reporting periods beginning on January 1, 2018 and thereafter are presented under Topic 606, while prior period amounts are not adjusted and continue to be reported in accordance with our historic revenue recognition accounting under Topic 605.

On January 1, 2018, the impact of the adoption and application of Topic 606 was immaterial and no cumulative effect adjustment was made as of that date. In the applicable paragraphs below, we have summarized our revenue recognition policies for various revenue sources in accordance with Topic 606.

Subscription and advertisement revenues. LifeMap Sciences, our direct majority-owned subsidiary, sells subscription-based products, including research databases and software tools, for biomedical, gene, disease, and stem cell research. LifeMap Sciences sells these subscriptions primarily through the internet to biotech and pharmaceutical companies worldwide. LifeMap Sciences' principal subscription product is the *GeneCards*® Suite, which includes the *GeneCards*® human gene database, and the *MalaCards* human disease database.

LifeMap Sciences' performance obligations for subscriptions include a license of intellectual property related to its genetic information packages and premium genetic information tools. These licenses are deemed functional licenses that provide customers with a "right to access" to LifeMap Sciences' intellectual property during the subscription period and, accordingly, revenue is recognized over a period of time, which is generally the subscription period. Payments are typically received at the beginning of a subscription period and revenue is recognized according to the type of subscription sold.

For subscription contracts in which the subscription term commences before a payment is due, LifeMap Sciences records an accounts receivable as the subscription is earned over time and bills the customer according to the contract terms. LifeMap Sciences continuously monitors collections and payments from customers and maintains a provision for estimated credit losses and uncollectible accounts based upon its historical experience and any specific customer collection issues that have been identified. Amounts determined to be uncollectible are written off against the allowance for doubtful accounts. LifeMap Sciences has not historically provided significant discounts, credits, concessions, or other incentives from the stated price in the contract as the prices are offered on a fixed fee basis for the type of subscription package being purchased. LifeMap Sciences may issue refunds only if the packages cease to be available for reasons beyond its control. In such an event, the customer will get a refund on a pro-rata basis. Using the most likely amount method for estimating refunds under Topic 606, including historical experience, LifeMap Sciences determined that the single most likely amount of variable consideration for refunds is immaterial as LifeMap Sciences does not expect to pay any refunds. Both the customer and LifeMap Sciences expect the subscription packages to be available during the entire subscription period, and LifeMap Sciences has not experienced any significant issues with the availability of the product and has not issued any material refunds.

LifeMap Sciences performance obligations for advertising are overall advertising services and represent a series of distinct services. Contracts are typically less than a year in duration and the fees charged may include a combination of fixed and variable fees with the variable fees tied to click throughs to the customer's products on their website. LifeMap Sciences allocates the variable consideration to each month the click through services occur and allocates the annual fee to the performance obligation period of the initial term of the contract because those amounts correspond to the value provided to the customer each month. For click-through advertising services, at the time the variable compensation is known and determinable, the service has been rendered. Revenue is recognized at that time. The annual fee is recognized over the initial subscription period because this is a service and the customer simultaneously receives and consumes the benefit of LifeMap Sciences' performance.

LifeMap Sciences deferred subscription revenues primarily represent subscriptions for which cash payment has been received for the subscription term but the subscription term has not been completed as of the balance sheet date reported. For the nine months ended September 30, 2018 and 2017, LifeMap Sciences recognized $945,000 and $944,000 in subscription and advertisement revenues. As of September 30, 2018, there was $208,000 included in deferred revenues in the condensed consolidated balance sheets which is expected to be recognized as subscription revenue over the next twelve months.

LifeMap Sciences has licensed from a third party the databases it commercializes and has a contractual obligation to pay royalties to the licensor on subscriptions sold. These costs are included in cost of sales on the condensed consolidated statements of operations when the cash is received and the royalty obligation is incurred as the royalty payments do not qualify for capitalization of costs to fulfill a contract under ASC 340-40, *Other Assets and Deferred Costs - Contracts with Customers*.

Grant revenues. In applying the provisions of Topic 606, we have determined that government grants are out of the scope of Topic 606 because the government entities do not meet the definition of a "customer", as defined by Topic 606, as there is not considered to be a transfer of control of good or services to the government entities funding the grant. We have, and will continue to, account for grants received to perform research and development services in accordance with ASC 730-20, *Research and Development Arrangements*, which requires an assessment, at the inception of the grant, of whether the grant is a liability or a contract to perform research and development services for others. If we or a subsidiary receiving the grant are obligated to repay the grant funds to the grantor regardless of the outcome of the research and development activities, then we are required to estimate and recognize that liability. Alternatively, if we or a subsidiary receiving the grant are not required to repay, or if we are required to repay the grant funds only if the research and development activities are successful, then the grant agreement is accounted for as a contract to perform research and development services for others, in which case, grant revenue is recognized when the related research and development expenses are incurred. We had no grant revenues for any of the periods presented.

On April 5, 2018, ReCyte Therapeutics, our subsidiary, was awarded a grant of up to approximately $386,000 from the National Institutes of Health (NIH). The NIH grant provides funding for continued development of our technologies for treating stroke. The grant funds will be made available by NIH for payment to ReCyte Therapeutics as allowable expenses are incurred. As of September 30, 2018, we had not incurred any allowable expenses under the NIH grant.

Arrangements with multiple performance obligations. Our contracts with customers may include multiple performance obligations. For such arrangements, we allocate revenue to each performance obligation based on its relative standalone selling price. We generally determine or estimate standalone selling prices based on the prices charged, or that would be charged, to customers for that product or service. As of, and for the nine months ended, September 30, 2018, we did not have significant arrangements with multiple performance obligations.

Financial Operations Overview

To date, our revenues have been principally derived from subscription and advertising revenue from LifeMap Sciences' online databases based upon applicable subscription or advertising periods. We do not have any products approved for sale and have not generated any revenue from commercialized product sales, and we do not expect to generate any revenue from product sales for the foreseeable future.

Our operating expenses consist of research and development expenses primarily from our pre-clinical programs and general and administrative expenses, including a significant amount of operating expenses allocated to us from BioTime, either incurred directly for our benefit or indirect overhead costs, as described under "—Critical Accounting Policies."

We expect to continue to incur significant expenses and operating losses over the next several years. We anticipate that our expenses will increase significantly in connection with our ongoing activities, if we:

- commence clinical development of our product candidates;
- continue activities to discover, validate and develop additional product candidates;
- maintain, expand and protect our intellectual property portfolio;
- hire research, development and general and administrative personnel as we begin operations as a standalone, publicly-traded company;
- enter into our own leases for laboratory and administrative facilities; and
- incur additional costs associated with operating as a public company.

Results of Operations

Comparison of Nine Months Ended September 30, 2018 and 2017

Revenues and Cost of Sales

The amounts in the table below show our revenues by source and cost of sales for the nine months ended September 30, 2018 and 2017 (in thousands).

	Nine Months Ended September 30, (unaudited)		$ Increase/ (Decrease)	% Increase (Decrease)
	2018	2017		
Subscription and advertising revenues	$ 945	$ 944	$ 1	-%
Service and other revenues	138	2	136	*%
Total revenues	1,083	946	137	+14.5%
Cost of sales	(184)	(114)	70	+61.4%
Gross profit	$ 899	$ 832	$ 67	+8.1%

*Not meaningful.

All of our revenues were generated by LifeMap Sciences, primarily as subscription and advertising revenues from its *GeneCards*® online database. Subscription and advertising revenues amounted to $0.9 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2018 and for the same period for 2017. During the nine months ended September 30, 2018, LifeMap Sciences also generated $0.1 million of revenues from performing services under contracts, while service revenues were insignificant during the same period for 2017.

Cost of sales for the nine months ended September 30, 2018 as compared to the same period in 2017 increased primarily attributable to an increase in the royalty payments made or incurred by LifeMap Sciences for its subscriptions products due to a long-term increase in the royalty rate effective January 1, 2018 and timing of cash received and the related royalty obligation incurred.

Operating Expenses

The following table shows our consolidated operating expenses for the nine months ended September 30, 2018 and 2017 (in thousands).

	Nine Months Ended September 30, (unaudited)		$ Increase/	% Increase/
	2018	2017	(Decrease)	(Decrease)
Research and development expenses	$ 4,307	$ 4,517	$ (210)	-4.6%
Acquired in-process research and development	800	-	800	*%
General and administrative expenses	3,679	3,174	505	15.9%

*Not meaningful.

Research and development expenses

The following table shows the amounts and percentages of our total research and development expenses of $5.1 million and $4.5 million, including acquired in-process research and development, allocated to our primary research and development programs, during the nine months ended September 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively (amounts in thousands).

		Nine Months Ended September 30, (unaudited)			
		Amount[1]		Percent of Total	
Company	Program	2018	2017	2018	2017
AgeX including ReCyte Therapeutics	*PureStem® progenitor cell lines, brown adipose fat, iTR technology, and pre-clinical cardiovascular therapy research and development*	$ 3,187	$ 2,900	62.4%	64.2%
AgeX	Acquired in-process research and development	800	-	15.7%	-%
LifeMap Sciences [2]	Biomedical, gene, and disease databases and tools	1,120	1,144	21.9%	25.3%
LifeMap Solutions [3]	Mobile health co-developed software application	-	473	-%	10.5%
Total research and development expenses		$ 5,107	$ 4,517	100.0%	100.0%

(1) Amount includes research and development expenses incurred both directly by us or the named subsidiary and indirect overhead costs allocated by BioTime that benefit or support our research and development programs. Direct research and development expenses attributable to us also include allocations for carve-out presentation purposes from certain former BioTime general research departments contributed to us primarily comprised of former BioTime personnel and related expenses, including stock-based compensation, transferred to us, and other outside expenses relevant to the nature of the research projects being conducted that were contributed to us pursuant to the Asset Contribution Agreement. Amount also includes indirect expenses allocated from BioTime for certain general research and development expenses, such as lab supplies, lab expenses, rent and insurance allocated to research and development expenses, incurred directly by BioTime on behalf of the subsidiary and allocated to the subsidiary. See Notes 2 and 4 to our consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement.

(2) LifeMap Sciences is a subsidiary of AgeX. See Notes 2 and 4 to our historical audited consolidated financial statements.

(3) LifeMap Solutions was transferred to BioTime on June 6, 2017 and ceased conducting its mobile health co-developed software application business; accordingly, no further research and development expenses are expected to be incurred.

On March 23, 2018, we purchased certain in-process research and development assets, primarily related to stem cell derived cardiomyocytes (heart muscle cells) to be developed by us, for a total cash consideration of $800,000. The transaction was considered an asset acquisition rather than a business combination. Accordingly, the $800,000 was expensed on the acquisition date as acquired in-process research and development as those assets have no alternative future use.

We expect to continue to incur a significant amount of research and development expenses. See "—Financial Operations Overview."

General and administrative expenses

The following table shows the amount and percentages of our total general and administrative expenses of $3.7 million and $3.2 million incurred during the nine months ended September 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively (amounts in thousands).

	Nine Months Ended September 30, (unaudited)			
	Amount[1]		Percent	
Company	**2018**	**2017**	**2018**	**2017**
AgeX including ReCyte Therapeutics	$ 3,062	$ 2,223	83.2%	70.0%
LifeMap Sciences [2]	617	470	16.8%	14.8%
LifeMap Solutions [3]	-	481	-%	15.2%
Total general and administrative expenses	$ 3,679	$ 3,174	100.0%	100.0%

(1) Amount includes both direct expenses incurred by us or the named subsidiary and indirect overhead costs allocated by BioTime that benefit or support our general and administrative functions. Direct general and administrative expenses attributable to us also include allocations from certain BioTime general and administrative expenses, including allocated stock-based compensation, for carve-out presentation purposes of our consolidated statements of operations. These allocations are principally based on the historical general and administrative functions and expenses relevant to BioTime and our subsidiaries that operated prior to and after our formation during the periods presented. Amount also includes indirect general and administrative expenses allocated by BioTime to us under the Shared Facilities Agreement. See Notes 2 and 4 to our consolidated financial statements included in this information statement.

(2) LifeMap Sciences is a subsidiary of AgeX. See Notes 2 and 4 to our historical audited consolidated financial statements.

(3) LifeMap Solutions was transferred to BioTime on June 6, 2017 and ceased conducting its mobile health co-developed software application business; accordingly, no further general and administrative expenses are expected to be incurred.

General and administrative expenses for the nine months ended September 30, 2018 increased by $0.5 million to $3.7 million as compared to $3.2 million from the comparative prior period in 2017. This increase was primarily attributable to $0.9 million of financial reporting, compliance, legal and other expenses related to our preparation and filing of a registration statement on Form 10 to become a public company, and includes an increase of $0.2 million in stock-based compensation expenses. Since our Equity Incentive Plan was established in July 2017, we had an insiginifcant amount of stock based compensation expense during the comparative nine month period in 2017. These increases were partially offset by approximately $0.5 million of cost savings after June 6, 2017 resulting from LifeMap Sciences disposition of its ownership of LifeMap Solutions as noted in the table above.

Gain on sale of equity method investment in Ascendance

On March 23, 2018 Ascendance Biotechnology, our equity method investee, was acquired by a third party in a merger and we received $3.2 million in cash for our ownership stake in Ascendance common stock. We recognized a gain on sale for the same amount included in other income and expenses, net, during the nine months ended September 30, 2018.

Income taxes

Our provision for income taxes for interim periods is determined using an estimated annual effective tax rate using the separate return method for carve-out presentation purposes of our consolidated financial statements.

On March 23, 2018, Ascendance was acquired by a third party in a merger through which we received approximately $3.2 million in cash for our ownership stake in shares of Ascendance common stock. The sale was a taxable transaction to us generating a taxable gain of approximately $2.2 million. We have sufficient current year losses from operations to offset the entire gain resulting in no income taxes due.

Due to losses incurred for all periods presented, we did not record any provision or benefit for income taxes.

A valuation allowance is provided when it is more likely than not that some or all of the deferred tax assets will not be realized. We established a full valuation allowance for all periods presented due to the uncertainty of realizing future tax benefits from our net operating loss carryforwards and other deferred tax assets.

Comparison of Years Ended December 31, 2017 and 2016

Revenues and Cost of Sales

The following table shows our revenues by source and cost of sales for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 (amounts in thousands).

	Year Ended December 31,		$ Increase/	% Increase/
	2017	2016	(Decrease)	(Decrease)
Subscription and advertising revenues	$ 1,399	$ 980	$ 419	42.8%
Service and other revenues	5	686	(681)	-99.3%
Total revenues	1,404	1,666	(262)	-15.7%
Cost of sales	(168)	(304)	136	-44.7%
Gross profit	$ 1,236	$ 1,362	$ (126)	-9.3%

Our total revenues decreased by $0.3 million during the year ended December 31, 2017 as compared to 2016 as discussed below.

Our subscription and advertising revenues generated by LifeMap Sciences amounted to $1.4 million and $1.0 million for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. Those revenues were generated entirely from subscription and advertising through LifeMap Sciences' online database business primarily related to its *GeneCards*® database.

Service revenues were insignificant during 2017 principally as a result of the permanent reduction of operations at LifeMap Solutions in 2017 and the transfer of LifeMap Solutions to BioTime in June 2017 in connection with the settlement and cancellation of certain related party payables due to BioTime by LifeMap Sciences. LifeMap Solutions earned $0.7 million in service revenues in 2016 from mobile health software co-development performed for its customers.

Cost of sales for 2017 as compared to 2016 decreased in line with the decrease in royalty payments made by LifeMap Sciences for its subscriptions products due to a decrease in the royalty rate in 2017.

Operating Expenses

The following table shows our consolidated operating expenses for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 (in thousands).

	Year Ended December 31,		$ Increase/	% Increase/
	2017	2016	(Decrease)	Decrease
Research and development expenses	$ 5,784	$ 8,479	$ (2,695)	-31.8%
General and administrative expenses	3,869	5,622	(1,753)	-31.2%

Research and development expenses

Research and development expenses decreased by $2.7 million to $5.8 million in 2017 as compared to $8.5 million in 2016. The decrease was primarily attributable to the reduction of operations at LifeMap Solutions during 2017 which accounted for $3.3 million of the decrease in research and development expenses as shown in the table below. This reduction is offset by an increase of $0.6 million in AgeX related projects due to increased expenditures in programs utilizing *PureStem*® cell lines, iTR technology, and cGMP hES cell lines.

The following table shows the amounts and percentages of our total research and development expenses of $5.8 million and $8.5 million allocated to our primary research and development programs during the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively (amounts in thousands).

		Year Ended December 31,			
		Amount[1]		Percent of Total	
Company	Program	2017	2016	2017	2016
AgeX including ReCyte Therapeutics	*PureStem*® progenitor cell lines, brown adipose fat, iTR technology, and pre-clinical cardiovascular therapy research and development	$ 3,763	$ 3,130	65.0%	36.9%
LifeMap Sciences [2]	Biomedical, gene, and disease databases and tools	1,548	1,603	26.8%	18.9%
LifeMap Solutions [3]	Mobile health co-developed software application	473	3,746	8.2%	44.2%
Total research and development expenses		$ 5,784	$ 8,479	100.0%	100.0%

(1) Amount includes research and development expenses incurred both directly by us or the named subsidiary and indirect overhead costs allocated by BioTime that benefit or support our research and development programs. Direct research and development expenses attributable to us also include allocations for carve-out presentation purposes from certain former BioTime general research departments contributed to us primarily comprised of former BioTime personnel and related expenses, including stock-based compensation, transferred to us, and other outside expenses relevant to the nature of the research projects being conducted that were contributed to us pursuant to the Asset Contribution Agreement. Amount also includes indirect expenses allocated from BioTime for certain general research and development expenses, such as lab supplies, lab expenses, rent and insurance allocated to research and development expenses, incurred directly by BioTime on behalf of the subsidiary and allocated to the subsidiary. See Notes 2 and 4 to our consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement.

(2) LifeMap Sciences is a subsidiary of AgeX. See Notes 2 and 4 to our historical audited consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement.

(3) LifeMap Solutions was transferred to BioTime on June 6, 2017 and ceased conducting its mobile health co-developed software application business; accordingly, no further research and development expenses are expected to be incurred.

We expect to continue to incur a significant amount of research and development expenses. See "—Financial Operations Overview."

General and administrative expenses

The following table shows the amount and percentages of our total general and administrative expenses of $3.9 million and $5.6 million incurred during the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively (amounts in thousands).

	Year Ended December 31,			
	Amount[1]		Percent	
Company	**2017**	**2016**	**2017**	**2016**
AgeX including ReCyte Therapeutics	$ 2,819	$ 1,914	72.9%	34.0%
LifeMap Sciences [2]	569	1,940	14.7%	34.5%
LifeMap Solutions [3]	481	1,768	12.4%	31.5%
Total general and administrative expenses	$ 3,869	$ 5,622	100.0%	100.0%

(1) Amount includes both direct expenses incurred by us or the named subsidiary and indirect overhead costs allocated by BioTime that benefit or support our general and administrative functions. Direct general and administrative expenses attributable to us also include allocations from certain BioTime general and administrative expenses, including allocated stock-based compensation, for carve-out presentation purposes of our consolidated statements of operations. These allocations are principally based on the historical general and administrative functions and expenses relevant to BioTime and our subsidiaries that operated prior to and after our formation during the periods presented. Amount also includes indirect general and administrative expenses allocated by BioTime to us under the Shared Facilities Agreement. See Notes 2 and 4 to our consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement.

(2) LifeMap Sciences is a subsidiary of AgeX. See Notes 2 and 4 to our historical audited consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement.

(3) LifeMap Solutions was transferred to BioTime on June 6, 2017 and ceased conducting its mobile health co-developed software application business; accordingly, no further general and administrative expenses are expected to be incurred.

General and administrative expense for the year ended December 31, 2017 were $3.9 million compared to $5.6 million in 2016, a decrease of $1.7 million. This decrease is attributable to the reduction of expense for LifeMap Sciences during 2017 in the amount of $1.4 million primarily comprised of a decrease in personnel and related expenses of $0.6 million, reduced bad debt expenses of $0.5 million and $0.2 million in consulting related costs. The total decrease was also attributable to a $1.3 million decrease in expenses incurred by LifeMap Solutions during 2017 as it ceased conducting its mobile health co-developed software application business and was transferred to BioTime on June 6, 2017. These decreases were offset by an increase of $0.9 million in our general and administrative costs, including financial reporting, compliance, legal and other expenses related to our preparation and filing of a registration statement on Form 10 to become a public company.

Gain on sale of assets

Loss from operations for the year ended December 31, 2017 includes a $1.8 million gain we recognized on the sale of certain co-developed assets by LifeMap Solutions to its customer prior to the transfer of LifeMap Solutions to BioTime on June 6, 2017.

Losses and impairment in equity method investment in Ascendance

Ascendance was a former equity method investment of BioTime that was contributed to us on August 17, 2017 pursuant to the Asset Contribution Agreement discussed in Note 4 to our consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement. During 2016, we recognized $4.7 million as our share of Ascendance's net loss and from an impairment charge of the remaining carrying value in our Ascendance investment based on a determination that an impairment in the value of the shares had occurred. These charges are included in other income and expenses, net, for the year ended December 31, 2016.

Income taxes

For Federal and California income tax purposes, our activity for 2016 and 2017 was or will be included in BioTime's federal and California combined tax returns. The provision for income taxes has been presented as if we had filed a separate federal consolidated tax return and a California combined tax return using the separate return method.

As of December 31, 2017, we have net operating loss carryforwards of approximately $29.7 million for U.S. federal income tax purposes prepared using the separate return method. Of this amount, $7.7 million is attributable to LifeMap Sciences, which includes $1.5 million in NOLs generated while it was included in the consolidated BioTime tax group and would be available to offset our taxable income in the future. The remaining LifeMap Sciences' NOLs of $6.2 million are attributable to NOLs generated for the tax years during which LifeMap Sciences filed a separate federal income tax return and, accordingly, those NOLs are available only to LifeMap Sciences' taxable income in future years. In addition, $5.2 million of the net operating loss is attributable to losses incurred by certain former BioTime research and development departments prior to BioTime's contribution of those departments to us on August 17, 2017 and, accordingly, those NOLs cannot be used to offset any of our future taxable income. As a result, as of December 31, 2017, the NOLs available to the AgeX federal tax filing group is approximately $24.5 million, of which $6.2 million may solely be used by LifeMap Sciences, to the extent not utilized by BioTime while AgeX and LifeMap Sciences remain a part of BioTime's consolidated federal tax group, subject to the Tax Matters Agreement described under "—Critical Accounting Policies." See also Notes 7 and 9 to our consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement regarding BioTime's sale of a significant ownership stake in AgeX to Juvenescence on August 30, 2018, and the possible limitations on the use of our NOLs in the future.

On June 6, 2017, BioTime and LifeMap Sciences entered into a Debt Conversion Agreement whereby BioTime acquired additional stock in LifeMap Sciences and other assets, including intellectual property and direct ownership of LifeMap Solutions in exchange for settlement of related party indebtedness of approximately $8.8 million owed to BioTime. These transactions occurred between commonly controlled entities, including noncontrolling interests, and the financial reporting impact is discussed in Note 4 to our consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement.

For income tax purposes, the purchase by BioTime of LifeMap Sciences' intellectual property and other assets resulted in a taxable gain to LifeMap Sciences of $3.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2017. Although LifeMap Sciences had sufficient current year operating losses and regular net operating loss carryforwards to offset the entire gain, it incurred a federal alternative minimum tax payable ("AMT") of $22,000 as of December 31, 2017. As LifeMap Sciences will ultimately receive a full refund of the current AMT payable, fully offsetting the current provision, there is no tax provision or benefit recorded for the year ended December 31, 2017.

As of December 31, 2017, we have net operating losses of approximately $25.0 million for state purposes. As we and our subsidiaries have been included in the combined California tax return with BioTime, these state net operating losses, to the extent not utilized by BioTime, subject to the Tax Matters Agreement described under "—Critical Accounting Policies", will remain with us. The federal and state net operating losses expire in varying amounts between 2028 and 2037.

As of December 31, 2017, using the separate return method, we have research and development tax credit carryforwards for federal and state tax purposes of $853,000 and $805,000, respectively. However, of these amounts, $787,000 and $708,000 of federal and state tax credits, respectively are available to AgeX, of which $520,000 and $429,000, respectively, is attributable to LifeMap Sciences, Inc. The difference of $66,000 and $97,000 of federal and state tax credits, respectively, will remain with BioTime. Although this LifeMap Sciences, Inc. credit has been included as part of our credit carryforwards, LifeMap Sciences filed a separate federal income tax return for the periods presented and its respective research credit carryforwards may not be used to offset our federal taxable income. As we and our subsidiaries were included in the California combined return with BioTime, these credits noted above will remain with us to the extent not utilized by BioTime, subject to the Tax Matters Agreement described under "—Critical Accounting Policies." The federal tax credits expire between 2028 and 2037, while the state tax credits have no expiration date.

A valuation allowance is provided when it is more likely than not that some or all of the deferred tax assets will not be realized. We established a full valuation allowance for all periods presented due to the uncertainty of realizing future tax benefits from our net operating loss carryforwards and other deferred tax assets. Accordingly, due to losses incurred for all periods presented, we did not record any provision or benefit for income taxes.

Liquidity and Capital Resources

Since inception, we have financed our operations through contributions and advances from our former parent company, BioTime, and the sale of our common stock and warrants. BioTime has also provided us with the use of BioTime facilities and services under the Shared Facilities Agreement described in Note 4 to our consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement. Although BioTime may continue to provide administrative support to us on a reimbursable basis, we do not expect BioTime will provide us future financing. We have incurred operating losses and negative cash flows since inception and had an accumulated deficit of $70.9 million as of September 30, 2018. We expect to continue to incur operating losses and negative cash flows.

Cash flows

The following table provides information regarding our cash flows for the nine months ended September 30, 2018 and 2017, and the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, (in thousands):

	Nine Months Ended September 30, (unaudited)		$ Increase/ (Decrease)
	2018	2017	
Net cash used in operating activities	$ (5,949)	$ (4,171)	$ (1,778)
Net cash provided by investing activities	1,324	6	1,318
Net cash provided by financing activities	6,000	13,275	(7,275)

	Year Ended December 31,		$ Increase/ (Decrease)
	2017	2016	
Net cash used in operating activities	$ (6,285)	$ (8,427)	$ 2,142
Net cash provided by (used in) investing activities	5	(28)	33
Net cash provided by financing activities	13,275	7,254	6,021

Cash used in operating activities

For the nine months ended September 30, 2018, our total research and development expenses, including acquired in-process research and development expenses were $5.1 million and our general and administrative expenditures were $3.7 million. Net loss attributable to us for the nine months ended September 30, 2018 amounted to $4.3 million. Net cash used in operating activities during this period amounted to $5.9 million. The difference between the net loss attributable to us and net cash used in operating activities during the nine months ended September 30, 2018 was primarily attributable to the following noncash items: $3.2 million gain on the disposition of our ownership stake in Ascendance common stock offset to some extent by $0.8 million for acquired in-process research and development, $0.7 million in stock based compensation expense, $0.4 million in amortization of intangible assets and depreciation expense, and $0.1 million in net loss attributable to noncontrolling interest. Changes in working capital impacted our cash used in operations by $0.1 million as a net use of cash.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, our total research and development expenses were $5.8 million and our general and administrative expenditures were $3.9 million. Net loss attributable to us for the year ended December 31, 2017 amounted to $6.6 million and net cash used in operating activities was $6.3 million. The difference between the net loss attributable to us and net cash used in operating activities during the year ended December 31, 2017 was primarily attributable to the following noncash items: $1.8 million gain related to the sale of certain assets by LifeMap Solutions before the contribution of that entity to BioTime, stock-based compensation expense of $0.8 million, amortization and depreciation expenses of $0.7 million, and net loss attributable to noncontrolling interest of $0.1 million. Changes in working capital impacted our cash used in operations by $0.8 million as a net source of cash.

Cash provided by investing activities

During the nine months ended September 30, 2018, net cash provided by investing activities were $1.3 million. The primary components of this amount were $3.2 million in proceeds from the disposition of our ownership stake in Ascendance common stock offset by a $1.1 million payment to Escape Therapeutics and $0.8 million payment to Ascendance for the acquisition of in-process research and development assets.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, cash flows from investing activities were immaterial.

Cash provided by financing activities

During the nine months ended September 30, 2018, net cash provided by financing activities amounted to $6.0 million, including $5 million of proceeds from the issuance of common stock and $1 million of proceeds from the issuance of warrants to purchase our common stock.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, net cash provided by financing activities amounted to $13.3 million. The primary sources of cash provided by financing activities were $10.0 million in proceeds from the sale of our common stock to investors and $3.3 million in contributions and advances from BioTime.

Funding requirements

We expect our expenses to increase in connection with our ongoing activities, particularly as we continue our pre-clinical research and development activities and, if we initiate clinical trials and seek marketing approval for our product candidates. In addition, if we obtain marketing approval for any of our product candidates, we expect to incur significant commercialization expenses related to product sales, marketing, manufacturing and distribution to the extent that such sales, marketing and distribution are not the responsibility of potential collaborators. Furthermore, upon the consummation of the Distribution of our common stock by BioTime, we expect to incur additional costs associated with operating as a public company. Accordingly, we will need to obtain substantial additional funding in connection with our continuing operations. If we are unable to raise capital when needed or on attractive terms, we would be forced to delay, reduce or eliminate our research and development programs or future commercialization efforts.

We have evaluated our projected cash flows and believe that our cash and cash equivalents of $8.8 million as of September 30, 2018 provide sufficient cash, cash equivalents, and liquidity to carry out our current operations through at least twelve months from the issuance date of the historical unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement. Our future capital requirements will depend on many factors, including:

- the scope, progress, results and costs of product development, pre-clinical development, laboratory testing and clinical trials for our product candidates;
- the scope, prioritization and number of our research and development programs;
- the costs, timing and outcome of regulatory review of our product candidates;
- our ability to establish and maintain collaborations on favorable terms, if at all;
- the extent to which we are obligated to reimburse, or entitled to reimbursement of, clinical trial costs under future collaboration agreements, if any;
- the costs of preparing, filing and prosecuting patent applications, maintaining and enforcing our intellectual property rights and defending intellectual property-related claims;
- the extent to which we acquire or in-license other product candidates and technologies;

- the costs of entering into and maintaining our own leases for laboratory and administrative facilities and equipment;

- the costs of securing alternative manufacturing arrangements for clinical and commercial production; and

- the costs of establishing or contracting for sales and marketing capabilities if we obtain regulatory approvals to market our product candidates.

Identifying potential product candidates and conducting pre-clinical testing and clinical trials is a time-consuming, expensive and uncertain process that takes many years to complete, and we may never generate the necessary data or results required to commence clinical trials for any product candidate or obtain marketing approval and achieve product sales. In addition, our product candidates, if approved, may not achieve commercial success. Our commercial revenues, if any, will be derived from sales of products that we do not expect to be commercially available for many years, if at all. Accordingly, we will need to continue to rely on additional financing to achieve our business objectives. Adequate additional financing may not be available to us on acceptable terms, or at all.

Until such time, if ever, as we can generate substantial product revenues, we expect to finance our cash needs through a combination of equity offerings, debt financings, and the creation of new strategic partnerships and licensing arrangements. Although BioTime may continue to provide administrative support to us on a reimbursable basis, there is no assurance that BioTime will provide us future financing. We do not have any committed external source of funds. To the extent that we raise additional capital through the sale of equity or convertible debt securities, the ownership interest of our present stockholders will be diluted, and the terms of these securities may include liquidation or other preferences that adversely affect their rights as common stockholders. Debt financing, if available, may involve agreements that include covenants limiting or restricting our ability to take specific actions, such as incurring additional debt, making capital expenditures or declaring dividends.

If we raise funds through additional strategic partnerships or licensing arrangements with third parties, we may have to relinquish valuable rights to our technologies, future revenue streams, research programs or product candidates or to grant licenses on terms that may not be favorable to us. If we are unable to raise additional funds through equity or debt financings when needed, we may be required to delay, limit, reduce or terminate our product development or future commercialization efforts or grant rights to develop and market product candidates that we would otherwise prefer to develop and market ourselves.

The unavailability or inadequacy of financing to meet future capital needs could force us to modify, curtail, delay, or suspend some or all aspects of our planned operations. Our determination as to when we will seek new financing and the amount of financing that we will need will be based on the evaluation of the progress we make in our research and development programs, any changes to the scope and focus of those programs, and projection of future costs, revenues, and rates of expenditure. We cannot assure that adequate financing will be available on favorable terms, if at all.

Contractual obligations

We had no contractual obligations as of September 30, 2018, with the exception of the Shared Facilities Agreement, as amended. Under the terms of the Shared Facilities Agreement, BioTime will allow us to use its premises and equipment located at Alameda, California for the purpose of conducting our business. BioTime may also provide accounting, billing, bookkeeping, payroll, treasury, payment of accounts payable, and other similar administrative services. BioTime may also provide the services of attorneys, accountants, and other professionals who may also provide professional services to BioTime and its other subsidiaries. BioTime will also provide us with the services of its laboratory and research personnel, including BioTime employees and contractors, for the performance of our research and development work at the premises.

BioTime charges us a "Use Fee" for services received and usage of facilities, equipment, and supplies. For each billing period, BioTime prorates and allocates costs incurred, as applicable, to us, such costs include services of BioTime employees, equipment, insurance, lease, professional, software, supplies and utilities. Allocation depends on key cost drivers including actual documented use, square footage of facilities used, time spent, costs incurred by or for our benefit, or upon proportionate usage by BioTime and us, as reasonably estimated by BioTime (collectively "Use Fees"). BioTime, at its discretion, has the right to charge us a 5% markup on such allocated costs and BioTime has charged this markup since the inception of the Shared Facilities Agreement. The allocated cost of BioTime employees and contractors who provide services is based upon records maintained of the number of hours or percentage of time of such personnel devoted to the performance of services.

The Shared Facilities Agreement will remain in effect from year to year, unless (a) either party gives the other party written six months' notice to terminate, which BioTime may not give to AgeX prior to September 1, 2020, or (b) the agreement is otherwise terminated under another provision of the agreement. BioTime's lease expires on January 31, 2023.

The minimum fixed payments due under the Shared Facilities Agreement are approximately $138,000 per month.

Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements

We did not have, during the periods presented, and we do not currently have, any off-balance sheet arrangements.

Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk

Foreign Currency Exchange Risk

We are exposed to some foreign exchange currency risks because we have a subsidiary, LifeMap Sciences Ltd., located and conducting operations in Israel, and we may also contract with vendors that are located in Asia and Europe and may be subject to fluctuations in foreign currency rates at that time. We do not engage in foreign currency hedging activities. Because we translate foreign currencies into United States dollars for reporting purposes, currency fluctuations have an impact on our financial results. Transactions denominated in currencies other than the U.S. dollar also have an impact on our financial statements.

We believe that our exposure to currency exchange fluctuation risk is mitigated by the fact that LifeMap Sciences Ltd. pays its financial obligations almost exclusively in its functional currency, the Israeli New Shekel, and we do not enter into significant transactions that are denominated in foreign currencies. However, a weakening of the dollar against the Israeli New Shekel could increase our cost of providing additional financing to LifeMap Sciences Ltd. in the future. Conversely, a strengthening of the dollar would decrease our cost of making additional investments in that subsidiary. For the periods presented, currency exchange rates and foreign currency transactions did not have a material impact on our consolidated financial statements.

Credit Risk

We and our subsidiaries place some cash in checking accounts in U.S. banks and invest most of our cash in money market funds. Deposits with banks may temporarily exceed the amount of insurance provided on such deposits. We will monitor the cash balances in the accounts and adjust the cash balances as appropriate, but if the amount of a deposit at any time exceeds the federally insured amount at a bank, the uninsured portion of the deposit could be lost, in whole or in part, if the bank were to fail. Investments in money market funds are not insured or guaranteed by the United States government or any of its agencies.

Our foreign subsidiary deposits its cash in local banks, but if the amount of a deposit at any time exceeds the amount at a bank under the national banking insurance laws, the uninsured portion of the deposit could be lost, in whole or in part, if the bank were to fail.

Interest Rate Risk

We and our subsidiaries invest most of our cash in money market funds. The primary objective of our investments will be to preserve principal and liquidity while earning a return on our invested capital, without incurring significant risks. Our future investment income is not guaranteed and may fall short of expectations due to changes in prevailing interest rates, or we may suffer losses in principal if the net asset value of a money market fund falls below $1 per share.

Inflation generally affects us by increasing our cost of labor and other operating costs. We do not believe that inflation had a material effect on our business, financial condition or results of operations for the periods presented.

Emerging Growth Company Status

The JOBS Act permits an "emerging growth company" such as AgeX to take advantage of an extended transition period to comply with new or revised accounting standards applicable to public companies. However, we will comply with newly adopted or revised accounting standards when they become applicable to public companies because our financial statements will be consolidated with those of our parent company, BioTime, which is not an emerging growth company under the JOBS Act and is therefore not permitted to delay the adoption of new or revised accounting standards that become applicable to public companies. This election under the JOBS Act to not delay the adoption of new or revised accounting standards is irrevocable.

As an emerging growth company, we may take advantage of specified reduced disclosure and other requirements that are otherwise applicable, in general, to public companies that are not emerging growth companies. These provisions include:

- reduced disclosure about our executive compensation arrangements;
- no non-binding shareholder advisory votes on executive compensation or golden parachute arrangements; and
- exemption from the auditor attestation requirement in the assessment of our internal control over financial reporting.

We will remain an "emerging growth company" until the earliest of: (i) the last day of the fiscal year in which we have total annual gross revenues of $1.07 billion or more; (ii) the last day of our fiscal year following the fifth anniversary of the Distribution; (iii) the date on which we have issued more than $1.0 billion in nonconvertible debt securities during the previous three years; or (iv) the date on which we are deemed to be a "large accelerated filer" under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

BUSINESS

Overview

We are a biotechnology company focused on the development and commercialization of novel therapeutics targeting human aging. Our mission is to apply our comprehensive experience in fundamental biological processes of human aging to a broad range of associated medical conditions. We believe that demand for therapeutics addressing such conditions is on the rise, commensurate with the demographic shift of aging in the United States and many other industrialized countries. Our proprietary technology, based on telomerase-mediated cellular immortality and regenerative biology, allows us to utilize telomerase-expressing regenerative Pluripotent Stem Cells ("PSCs") for the manufacture of cell-based therapies to regenerate tissues afflicted with age-related chronic degenerative disease. Our products under development include two cell-based therapies derived from telomerase-positive PSCs and two product candidates derived from our proprietary induced Tissue Regeneration (iTR™) technology. We own or have licenses to a number of patents and patent applications used in the generation of these development-stage products, including intellectual property related to PSC-derived clonal embryonic progenitor cell lines (*PureStem*® technology) and *HyStem*® delivery matrices. We plan to initiate our first device application for *Renelon*™, a first-generation iTR product, in 2018 and subsequently initiate three clinical trials of cell- and drug-based therapies, each targeting large unmet needs in age-related medicine.

The products under development by the Company are in the discovery stage of development and none of the products are yet in formal preclinical studies that will be included in an IND application. Prior to initiation of clinical trials of AGEX-BAT1, AGEX-VASC1, and AGEX-ITR1547, the company will need to complete preclinical and even discovery-level research prior to the preclinical studies for the qualification of reagents used in the manufacture of the product, complete the standard operating procedures to be used (SOPs), complete the methods and documentation for characterization of the product, produce and test the genetic modifications in the master cell banks of the pluripotent stem cells under current Good Manufacturing Practices (cGMP) in order to produce product that will not illicit immune rejection following transplantation. In addition, the Company will be required to expand the numbers of the pluripotent stem cell master cell banks for future use, as well as produce working cell banks from which the product will be manufactured for clinical trials, produce the relevant product under cGMP conditions, expand the number of relevant cells and cryopreserve them under cGMP conditions. In addition, the Company will be required to design the pre-clinical studies including the study endpoints, perform biosafety testing and release the first clinical batch based on preliminary characterization results, complete full product characterization. Such biosafety testing will necessarily include pilot testing in animals such as (NOD/SCID) mice, dosing spiking studies at early and later endpoints, tumorgenicity and biodistribution studies to determine whether the cells form undesired tumors or migrate to inappropriate sites respectively in the animal. Lastly, the Company will need to define the clinical trial and regulatory strategy, and hold Pre-Pre-IND and Pre-IND meetings with the Food and Drug Administration (FDA), as well as successfully file an Investigational New Drug (IND) submission and receive clearance from the FDA to begin trials. Thereafter, the Company will need to demonstrate safety and efficacy of the product in human clinical trials in Phase I and II trials, and continued safety and efficacy for achieving the desired endpoint in Phase III trials, potentially then leading to product registration. See "Risk Factors— Risks Related to Our Business Operations" for discussion of risks relating to our preclinical development and clinical trials. These include, but are not limited to the failure of the Company to successfully complete the aforementioned studies due to the failure of the product, processes, or skills of the Company's employees, unforeseen delays in the development process, failure to raise requisite financing, or failure to receive permission from the FDA to advance the product development.

Our Opportunity in Age-Related Diseases

Aging is one of the most significant demographic trends of our time. As shown in Figure 3, the U.S. Census Bureau projects a sharp rise in the number of Americans over 80 years of age, with a marked inflection point occurring between the years 2020 and 2030.

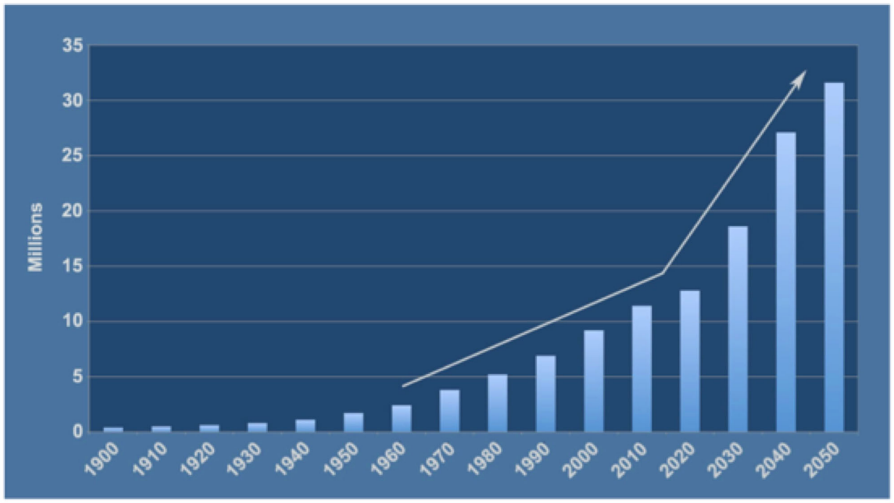

Figure 3. Projected increase in the numbers of the U.S. population over 80 years of age (U.S. Census Bureau)

This demographic shift associated with 76 million aging baby boomers poses a significant challenge to our economy. The unsolved problem relates to the fact that chronic conditions account for some 80% of total health care expenditures in the United States and the elderly have a higher prevalence of chronic degenerative disease than the young. Approximately 80% of older adults have one chronic disease, and 68% have two or more.

These technology platforms, invented by our founders, reflects over 25 years of research and development in cell immortality and regenerative medicine. It is designed to address some of the largest unmet needs of an aging population by translating state-of-the-art laboratory science relating to aging into therapeutic biologicals, drugs, and devices.

Our Pipeline

Our product pipeline includes two cell-based and two drug-based therapeutic products in development. It also includes currently-marketed online database products and research products outlined in Figure 4.

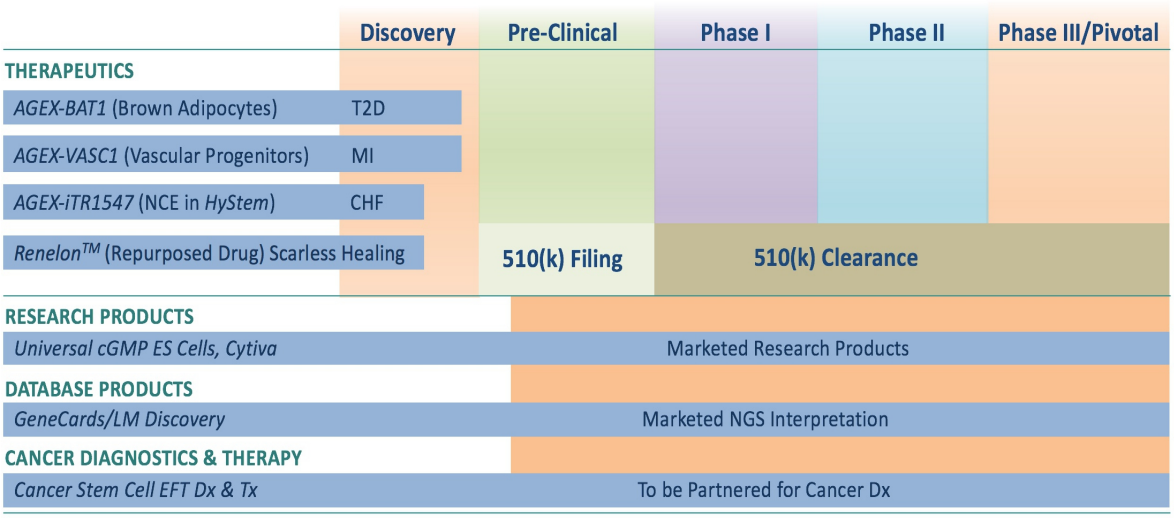

Figure 4. The AgeX product pipeline. T2D (Type II Diabetes), MI (Myocardial Infarction), CHF (Congestive Heart Failure), EFT (Embryonic-Fetal Transition), Dx (Diagnosis), Tx (Therapy).

Our lead cell-based therapeutic candidates in development are *AGEX-BAT1* and *AGEX-VASC1:*

- AGEX-BAT1 is our lead cell therapy product candidate in the discovery stage of development utilizing PSC-derived brown adipocytes for the treatment of certain age-related metabolic disorders such as Type II (adult-onset) diabetes.

- AGEX-VASC1 is a cell-based therapy in the discovery stage of development comprised of young regenerative vascular-forming cells formulated in our proprietary *HyStem*® matrix. *AGEX-VASC1* is designed to restore vascular support in aged ischemic tissues such as the aging heart.

Our lead drug-based therapeutic candidates in development are *AGEX-iTR1547* and *Renelon:*

- AGEX-iTR1547 is a drug-based formulation in the discovery stage of development intended to restore regenerative potential in a wide array of aged tissues afflicted with degenerative disease using our proprietary iTR technology.

- *Renelon*™ is a first-generation iTR product candidate designed to promote scarless tissue repair and is planned to be developed as a topically-administered device for commercial development.

Our currently marketed research and database products include Universal cGMP ES Cells PSC-derived cells for research, and GeneCards Database Suite:

- cGMP PSC lines and PSC-derived cells for research: Through our ESI BIO division, we market cGMP PSC lines as well as PSC-derived cells such as *Cytiva*®, comprised of PSC-derived heart muscle cells used in screening drugs for efficacy and safety, in collaboration with GE Healthcare.

- GeneCards Database Suite: Through our LifeMap subsidiary, we currently market genomic interpretation algorithms and analysis tools for use by researchers at pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies and other institutions through paid subscriptions or on a fee-per-use basis.

In addition, cancer diagnostic and therapeutic applications of iTR technology are planned for development through partnering with third parties.

Our Technology Platforms

The technology underlying our product development programs is based on telomerase-mediated cellular immortality and regenerative biology. By "telomerase-mediated cellular immortality" we refer to the fact that cells that express sufficient levels of a protein called telomerase are capable of replicating without limit. By "regenerative biology," we refer to novel methods to regenerate tissues afflicted with age-related chronic degenerative disease such as coronary disease, heart failure, and age-related metabolic disorders such as those associated with Type II diabetes, osteoarthritis, or Parkinson's disease, as well as others. We utilize telomerase-expressing regenerative Pluripotent Stem Cells, or PSCs, for the manufacture of cell-based therapies and induced Tissue Regeneration compositions for its drug-based modalities. We own or have licensed numerous patents and patent applications covering methods and compositions relating to this technology platform.

Background of Human Aging

Cell Immortality

There is a growing consensus in the scientific community that human aging is due in large part to the aging of individual cells in the various tissues of the body (somatic cells). In contrast, the reproductive lineage of cells (germ-line) perpetuate the human species from generation-to-generation without limit and continue to generate new people over the millennia.

In 1961, Dr. Leonard Hayflick first reported that normal human cells in the body (unlike the germ-line) can proliferate for only a finite number of times (typically fewer than 100 times). This phenomenon, known as the "Hayflick Limit", "cell mortality", or "cellular aging", is a normal property of somatic cells. In the 1990s, our CEO Dr. Michael D. West founded a biotechnology company called Geron Corporation (Nasdaq: GERN) where his team isolated for the first time the human gene called "Telomerase Reverse Transcriptase" or "telomerase." In 1998, Geron scientists in collaboration with scientists at the University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center at Dallas, published the result that telomerase could stop the aging of human cells, or could "immortalize" them.

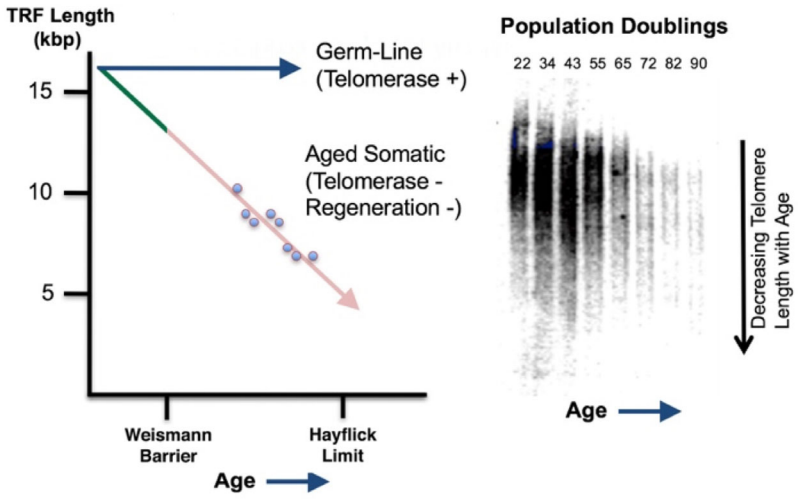

Figure 5. The Germ-line/soma dichotomy wherein germ-line cells express telomerase, maintain telomere length, and exhibit replicative immortality, while body (somatic) cells lack telomerase, showing progressive telomere shortening until they reach the Hayflick limit.

In 1994, Dr. West's group demonstrated through an essay for measuring telomerase activity that nearly 90% of cancer cell types cultured in the laboratory or tumors surgically removed from patients abnormally express telomerase. This broke the then dogma that there was no common mechanism at work in cancer. Scientists have concluded that cell mortality, while being detrimental in old age, benefits us early in life by helping to repress cancer cell growth. Figure 5 illustrates this dichotomy wherein immortal cells such as the germ-line cells that perpetuate the species are immortal through telomerase activity while body (somatic) cells lack telomerase expression, and as a result show progressive telomere shortening and a finite lifespan (are mortal).

The Weismann Barrier

Early in the evolution of life, primitive unicellular and even multicellular organisms may have lacked programmed aging as a result of the potential of their cells having the potential for both replicative immortality and regeneration. However, in more complex animals such as mammals, somatic cells lose not only replicative immortality, but after most organ systems are formed during embryonic development, they also lose full regenerative potential. This repression of both telomerase-mediated cell immortality and regeneration potential is called the "Weismann Barrier" (see Figure 6).

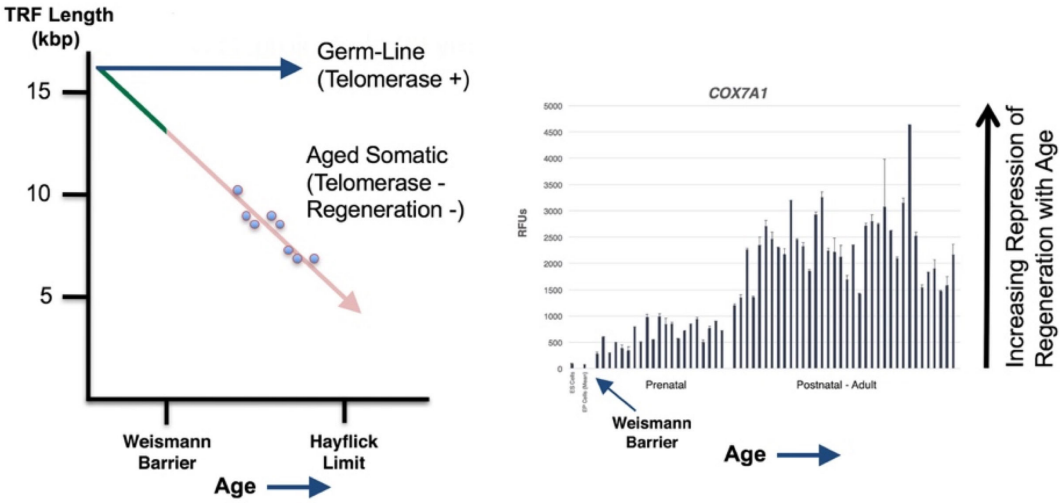

Figure 6. The Weismann Barrier coincides with the loss of both replicative immortality and regeneration. Levels of expression of the gene *COX7A1* provide a useful marker of the loss of regenerative potential.

PSCs represent the earliest stages of human development and are the first normal human cells cultured in the laboratory that display both telomerase-mediated replicative immortality and regenerative potential. Therefore, our scientists utilized these cells as well as the primitive regenerative cells derived from them called "PureStem" cell lines in research where they were compared to diverse adult cells on the mortal side of the Weismann barrier to uncover the mechanisms regulating the loss of regenerative potential. Artificial intelligence algorithms were used to parse millions of gene expression data points and the results were published in late 2017. Figure 6 shows the Weismann Barrier and the associated rise of a gene expression marker of the non-regenerative state designated *COX7A1*. This proprietary marker, along with other insights obtained from the research, provides us with a window into this biology and a means of screening for agents capable of restoring a regenerative state to old nonregenerative cells. It is anticipated that such agents may not only reset the pattern of gene expression in adult cells back to that their regenerative counterparts, but may also induce tissue regeneration when applied *in vivo* in the context of age-related degenerative disease. In addition, since the previously mentioned 2017 publication described the re-emergence of the regenerative phenotype in the majority of cancer cell lines, the discoveries may open the door to potentially important diagnostic and therapeutic implications as well.

Pluripotent Stem Cells (PSCs)

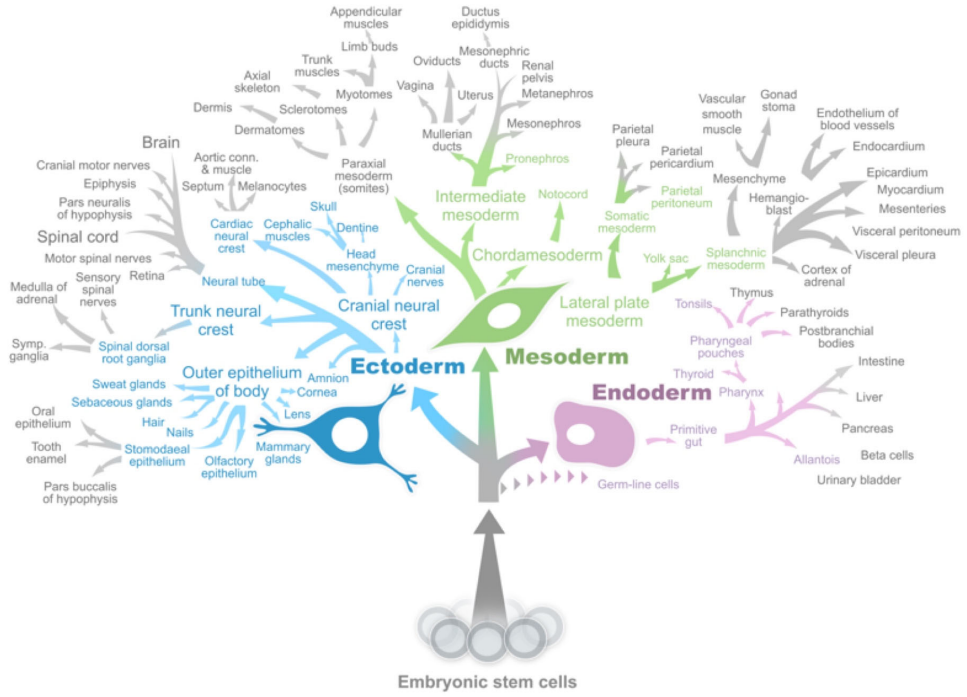

Figure 7. Pluripotent Stem Cells possess both telomerase-mediated replicative immortality and regenerative potential, capable of producing all human cell types.

In an effort to utilize telomerase-mediated immortality and regenerative biology in the development of novel therapeutics, in the mid-1990s, Dr. West, organized a collaboration with Drs. James Thomson, John Gearhart, and Roger Pedersen that led to the first isolation of PSCs. In contrast to other types of cells, PSCs are unique by at least two important criteria. The first criterion relates to the ability of pluripotent cells to proliferate, or make more copies of themselves, indefinitely, that is to say, they are "immortal". The second relates to the ability of PSCs to differentiate into any of the hundreds of specialized cell types in the body. This replicative immortality of PSCs facilitates the industrial scalability of product. We believe that many of these cell types have potential for regenerating function in tissues damaged by degenerative diseases when transplanted. A small sampling of these cell types is shown in Figure 7. Unlike PSCs, adult stem cells typically have severely-reduced scale-up potential (are mortal unlike immortal PSCs), and have passed the Weismann Barrier, and are therefore limited in their ability to regenerate normal tissue when transplanted *in vivo*. Therefore, we believe that PSC-based cellular therapeutics have significant competitive advantages over cell-based therapeutics being developed by many adult stem cell companies.

***PureStem*® Technology**

Regulatory approval of cell- and tissue-based products require high standards of quality control. In the case of stem cell-derived products, there is a high standard for insuring the known identity, purity, and reproducibility of the cells to be administered. PSCs such as Embryonic Stem, or ES, cells and induced Pluripotent Stem, or iPS, cells provide certain advantages over adult-derived cells when used in the manufacture of young cell-based therapeutics for the treatment of age-related disease. These advantages include:

- The replicative immortality of the PSCs which facilitates the indefinite scale-up of PSC master cell banks for the manufacture of uniform product, as well as an immortal substrate for targeted genetic modifications.

- Since most PSCs maintain long and stable telomere lengths, the replicative capacity of derived differentiated cell types is typically longer (younger) than adult or even fetal-derived cells.

- Using *PureStem*® technology, it is possible to clonally expand hundreds of purified, identified, and reproducibly scalable cell types that retain regenerative potential (have not passed the regeneration limit).

PureStem® technology is based on the observation that embryonic anlagen of many tissues in the human body are naturally comprised of highly proliferative cells with relatively long telomere length. Therefore, it is possible to generate clonal lineages of these cells *in vitro,* a process not easily achievable with cells derived from adult tissues which commonly senesce during clonal expansion. In addition, adult and event fetal tissues largely contain differentiated cells often with limited or no capacity of replication *in vitro*. As a result, the clonal expansion of human embryonic progenitor cell types allows not only a novel and more facile point of scalability but also generates populations of cells that are multipotent instead of pluripotent, and therefore markedly easier to define identity, purity, and potency.

We have studied the fate of over 200 diverse *PureStem* cell lines in thousands of differentiation conditions. This was accomplished by thawing individual cryopreserved *PureStem* cell lines, culturing them in the laboratory, and then exposing the cells to factors that differentiate cells such as protein growth and differentiation factors, hormones, and/or small molecules implicated in causing cells to change from one type of cell into another (differentiation). Using individual cells from the over 200 diverse *PureStem* cell lines previously isolated and cryopreserved, we treated the diverse cells with thousands of differentiation conditions, prepared RNA, and determined the gene expression pattern of the cells using gene expression microarrays. These experiments have shown that the *PureStem* cell lines display site-specific markers that identify not only the type of cells, but also where in the body the cells would normally reside. Therefore, in the example of cartilage cells, it was possible to produce diverse types of cartilage in this manner. Applications outside of orthopedics, medical aesthetics, and certain ophthalmological applications are licensed from BioTime to AgeX. AgeX has chosen two applications for its initial product development based on unmet medical need along with other factors. The first product is Brown Adipose Tissue (BAT) cells for the treatment of Type II diabetes and vascular endothelial progenitors for the treatment of age-related ischemic disease such as that leading to myocardial ischemia and infarction. These cells will be formulated in a delivery matrix designated *HyStem* to promote viability of the graft as well as to localize the cells to the intended site in the body. See "—Overview" and "—Our Target Market."

HyStem® Delivery Technology

HyStem® is a patented biomaterial that mimics the extracellular matrix, the structural network of macromolecules surrounding cells in the body. The extracellular matrix is essential for normal cellular function and survival of transplanted cells. Many tissue engineering and regenerative cell-based therapies are expected to benefit from the delivery of therapeutic cells in a matrix for precise localized delivery and survival. *HyStem* is a unique hydrogel that has been shown to support cellular attachment *in vivo.* Current research at leading medical institutions has shown that *HyStem* is compatible with a wide variety of cells and tissue types including those of the brain, bone, skin, cartilage, vascular system and heart. The technology underlying Age's *HyStem* hydrogels was developed at the University of Utah, and was been exclusively licensed to BioTime for human therapeutic applications and sublicensed to AgeX for certain fields as described herein. The *HyStem* technology is based on a unique thiol cross-linking chemistry to prepare hyaluronan-based matrices/hydrogels. Since the first published report in 2002, there have been numerous academic scientific publications supporting the biocompatibility of thiol cross-linked hyaluronan-based matrices and their applications as medical devices and in cell culture, tissue engineering, and animal models of cell-based therapies.

Figure 8. The Company plans to utilize the *HyStem* technology for the delivery of both cell-based therapeutics as well as factors capable of inducing iTR.

Due to the unique cross-linking chemistry, HyStem matrices have the ability to be safely combined with living cells and subsequently injected or applied locally as a hydrogel which allows the gel to conform to the three-dimensional contour of a tissue. This property of HyStem offers several distinct advantages over other matrices. For example, in addition to the potential to embed living cells in a cross-linked matrix, HyStem also can provide a slow-release matrix for the delivery of bioactive molecules. Building upon this platform, we plan to use HyStem for both cell-based therapy as well as for the delivery of iTR factors.

The building blocks for *HyStem* hydrogels may vary with the application but typically include combinations of hyaluronan, gelatin, or heparin, each of which has been thiol-modified. Hydrogels are formed by cross-linking mixtures of these thiolated macromolecules with polyethylene glycol diacrylate (PEGDA). The rate of gelation and the hydrogel stiffness can be controlled by varying the amount of cross-linker. An important attribute of *HyStem* hydrogels is their large water content, over 98%. As a result, these hydrogels have a high permeability for oxygen, nutrients, and other water-soluble metabolites.

Our Product Candidates

AGEX-BAT1 - Brown Adipose Tissue (BAT) Progenitors

Brown Adipose Tissue (BAT) is abundant early in life but lost precipitously with age. This tissue is believed to generate heat through expression of a gene called *UCP1*. In addition, the high levels of glucose and lipid uptake by the tissue is believed to balance metabolism in young people. In contrast, central obesity and Type II diabetes has been correlated with low levels of BAT.

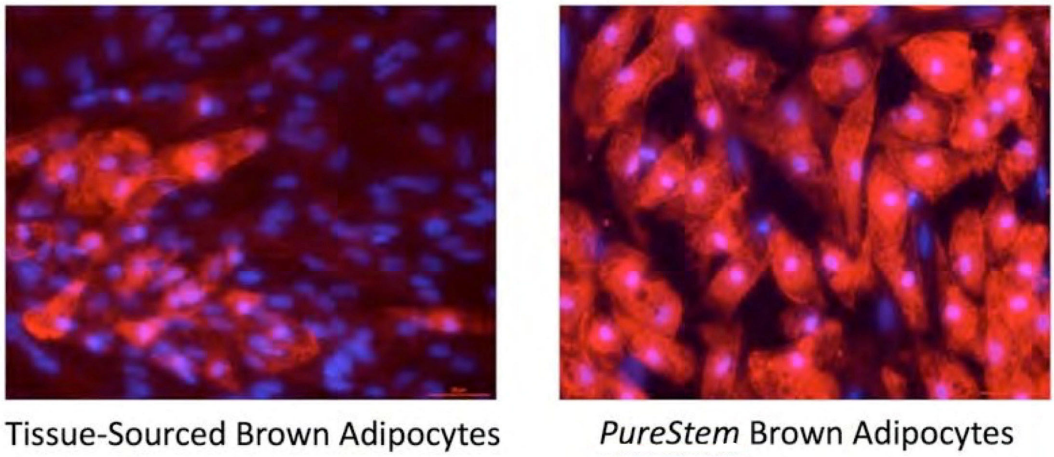

Figure 9. Human tissue-derived BAT cells (left) stained red for the presence of UCP1 show a minority of cells being true BAT cells. *PureStem*-derived AGEX-BAT1 cells are uniformly UCP1 positive.

The demonstration that the transplantation of BAT from young mice to obese diabetic mice resulted in weight loss and increased insulin sensitivity has led to a search for a source of industrially-scalable clinical grade BAT cells as well as an appropriate matrix for lipotransfer. There currently is no FDA-approved matrix for cell transplantation. However, BioTime has completed a pivotal clinical trial of *HyStem* being developed as a replacement for whole adipose tissue in cell-assisted lipotransfer procedures. Therefore, we believe *HyStem* can be used for the scalable production BAT cells using PureStem technology. As shown in Figure 9, the *AGEX-BAT1* progenitors strongly express the BAT marker *UCP1* when induced to differentiate and show a relatively high degree of purity compared to human tissue-derived BAT.

The Company is currently optimizing process development for the initiation of preclinical studies of the use of AGEX-BAT1 in models of Type II diabetes.

AGEX-VASC1 - Vascular Progenitors

PureStem technology can also yield highly purified embryonic vascular components. As shown below, select clonal lines express markers such as VE-Cadherin (CDH5) and PECAM1, as well as VWF and other markers of venous, arterial, and lymphatic endothelium. Flow cytometry shows purity indistinguishable from 100%.

In addition to vascular endothelial cells, vascular smooth muscle cell progenitors have been characterized by the Company. This makes it possible for AgeX to construct two of the key cellular components of arterial vessels, such as those compromised in coronary artery disease.

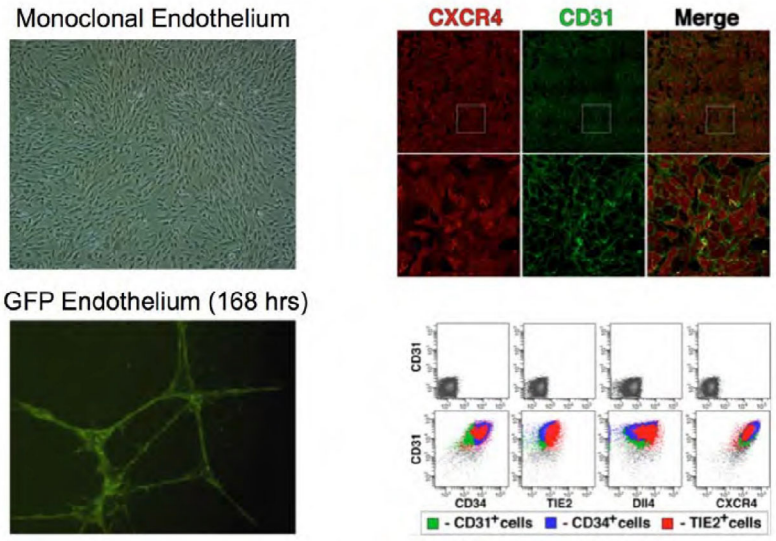

Figure 10. *PureStem*-derived vascular endothelial cell lines are capable of regenerating young vasculature (bottom left) and appear to have essentially 100% purity by FACs analysis.

HyStem hydrogels have been successfully used as a cell delivery matrix for endothelial progenitor cells to re-establish vasculature in hind limb ischemia models. Therefore, the Company is currently optimizing process development for planned animal preclinical testing of AgeX-VASC1 formulated in HyStem for delivery into ischemic heart tissue to regenerate collateral circulation.

Induced Tissue Regeneration (iTR^{TM})

Leveraging our assets in pluripotency and bioinformatics, we have performed research manipulating cellular immortality and regenerative biology in human cells. In 2010, BioTime demonstrated the reversal of the developmental aging of human cells using transcriptional reprogramming technology. In 2017, we published certain markers of the Weismann barrier, and the high prevalence of a reversion back before the Weismann barrier in diverse cancer cell types cultured *in vitro*.

We extended this research to determine whether reprogramming can be modified to only reverse the aging of cells back before the Weismann Barrier, not back to pluripotency or transforming the cells into malignant counterparts. We have utilized for example the gene *COX7A1* as a marker of cells that have lost regenerative potential (crossed the Weismann Barrier). As shown in Figure 11, our proprietary formulation AGEX-iTR1547 has demonstrated initial capability of reducing the expression of the marker gene *COX7A1* back to before the Weismann Barrier without reverting the cells to pluripotency.

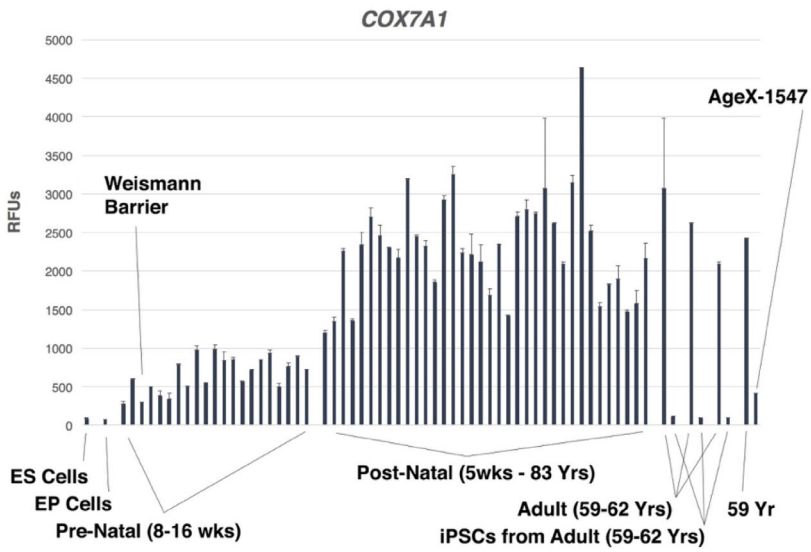

Figure 11. PSCs such as ES Cells and *PureStem* EP Cells display a regenerative capacity like cells that have not cross the Weismann Barrier. During pre- and post-natal development, skin cells become increasingly incapable of scarless regeneration as reflected in increasing *COX7A1* expression. iPS cell reprograming reverts cells back to pluripotency, while AgeX-iTR1547 reverts cells back only to a point prior to the Weismann Barrier (regenerative state).

When implemented *in vivo*, this partial reprogramming, or iTR, would be expected to induce tissue regeneration, and when combined with telomerase, could modulate both cellular immortality and regenerative biology for therapeutic effect.

The discovery of iTR has led to important new insights into cancer which can be thought of as regeneration out of control. Numerous sarcomas and carcinomas show an embryonic (pre-Weismann Barrier) pattern of *COX7A1* expression. We have filed patents on methods of not only inducing iTR in cells, but also maturing them as well. We believe some of these methods may provide novel diagnostic and therapeutic strategies for cancer.

We are performing research to optimize AGEX-iTR1547 in order to initiate preclinical studies of the agent on the scarless regeneration of the heart during congestive heart failure. In addition, *Renelon*^{TM}, a first generation product candidate, utilizes a repurposed drug formatted in *HyStem* and is planned for initial development as a device for topical application. We plan to file a device application for Renelon in 2018. While not capable of fully transporting cells back to a regenerative state, the anticipated ability of *Renelon* to impart scarless repair could provide significant benefits to patients.

Renelon is intended to provide a hydrogel wound dressing to reduce fibrosis being substantially equivalent to devices such as MEDIMAC Bandages (Enquay Pharmaceutical Associates, K930457) and Adhesive Bandage with Antibiotic (Johnson & Johnson, K943314). The device is comprised of a semi-occlusive and absorptive lyophilized sheet of previously crosslinked hyaluronic acid containing valproic acid. The device is intended for application in partial and full-thickness wounds, ulcers, and burns to reduce scarring and fibrosis. It is intended for prescription use only requiring physician diagnosis of the disease state and not over-the-counter (OTC) use.

We, as well as academic collaborators, have performed discovery experiments with adult-derived human skin fibroblast cells cultured in vitro as well as animal studies wherein hyaluronic acid crosslinked using the proprietary HyStem technology showed evidence of reducing molecular markers of fibrosis such as decreased collagen I expression and decreased fibrotic adhesions in animals models. Similarly, we have performed gene expression analysis of valproic acid on adult-derived human skin cells. These experiments together with substantial published reports in the scientific literature on the anti-fibrotic effects of valproic acid provide the scientific support of the use of lyophilized hyaluronic acid as a topical delivery device for valproic acid.

There is no certainty that the FDA will provide clearance for *Renelon* under a 510(k) application or that the product will prove safe and effective, or that we will be successful in marketing the product.

Online Database Products

We, through our subsidiaries LifeMap Sciences, Inc. and LifeMap Sciences LTD, or collectively referred to as LifeMap Sciences, conducts operations in the U.S. and Israel to commercialize the GeneCards Database Suite, which includes the relational databases *GeneCards*® and *MalaCards*™ licensed from the *Yeda* Research and Development Company Ltd., the technology transfer company of the *Weizmann* Institute of Science in Rehovot, Israel. The GeneCards Database Suite had approximately 3.5 million unique users in 2017 from diverse academic and commercial institutions. LifeMap Sciences obtains revenues from advertising as well as subscriptions from commercial entities. LifeMap Sciences also is building a product designated *TGex*™, which provides reports generated by the GeneCards knowledgebase intended for use by health care institutions and containing condensed information on particular genomic profiles of patients.

ESI BIO Research Products

We, through our ESI BIO research product division, market a number of products related to pluripotent stem cells including, research-grade as well as cGMP-grade human PSC lines. In regard to the cGMP-grade human PSC lines, we plan to contract with third parties where the third parties are allowed to utilize the cell lines in defined fields of application in exchange for certain compensation including royalties to be paid to AgeX. In addition, we, through our ESI BIO division, market PSC-derived cardiomyocytes *(Cytiva®)* to biopharmaceutical companies through agreements with GE Healthcare for drug and toxicity testing.

Transactions with Ascendance Biotechnology, Inc.

On March 21, 2018, we and Ascendance Biotechnology, Inc., our equity method investee and former equity method investee of BioTime, entered into an Asset Purchase Agreement (the "Asset Agreement") in which we purchased for $800,000 in cash certain assets consisting in value primarily of in-process research and development assets related to stem cell derived cardiomyocytes (heart muscle cells) to be developed by AgeX.

On March 23, 2018, Ascendance was acquired by a third party in a merger through which we received approximately $3.2 million in cash for our shares of Ascendance common stock and recognized a gain on sale in the same amount, included in other income and expenses, net, for the nine months ended September 30, 2018. At the close of the merger, $955,000 of cash that otherwise would have been payable to the Ascendance stockholders was deposited into an escrow account where it may be held for a term of up to fifteen months. Funds held in the escrow account may be paid to the acquirer to cover indemnity payments and other obligations that may arise after the merger. After the expiration of the term of the escrow, any funds remaining in the escrow account will be disbursed, on a pro-rata basis, to the former Ascendance stockholders. As of September 30, 2018, no amounts have been recorded in our consolidated financial statements for any funds held in the escrow account.

Manufacturing

Our success will depend in part on our ability to manufacture high quality cells, matrices, and small molecules. Unlike drug manufacturing, this quality needs to be performed at the beginning of the process of using PSCs, therefore, we have acquired from BioTime cGMP-compatible stem cell lines. However, we currently do not own or operate facilities for final product manufacturing or storage. We currently operate under a shared facilities agreement with BioTime, but we will require additional personnel and contracted services to comply with quality manufacturing processes and controls.

Facilities

We do not have our own, separate laboratory and office facilities and will not have such facilities of our own for the foreseeable future. BioTime has a lease of approximately 30,795 square feet of rentable space in two buildings located in an office park setting in Alameda, California. Under a Shared Facilities Agreement with BioTime, we have use of approximately 2,239 square feet of allocated laboratory and office space at BioTime's Alameda facility and use of approximately 18,000 square feet of common areas which we share with BioTime and its subsidiaries and affiliates in the same facility. We will also not have facilities for the manufacture of any products for clinical trials or on a commercial scale. Such facilities may be required in the near future for the manufacture of product lots under cGMP conditions and there can be no assurance that such facilities can be contracted on acceptable terms.

Commercialization Plan

With the exception of our research product sales which generate a trivial amount of revenues, we currently have no commercialized or marketed products such as FDA-approved drugs in our portfolio. As a result, we have not yet assembled an infrastructure for sales and marketing. At the point in time, if ever, that our products approach clearance or approval, we plan to develop a commercial plan that may initially include strategic marketing partnerships.

Intellectual Property

Patents and Trade Secrets

We rely primarily on patents and contractual obligations with employees and third parties to protect our proprietary rights. We have sought, and intend to continue to seek, appropriate patent protection for important and strategic components of our proprietary technologies by filing patent applications in the U.S. and certain foreign countries. There are no assurances that any of our intellectual property rights will guarantee protection or market exclusivity for our products and product candidates. We also use license agreements both to access technologies developed by other companies and universities and to convey certain intellectual property rights to others. Our financial success will be dependent, in part, on our ability to obtain commercially valuable patent claims, to protect and enforce our intellectual property rights, and to operate without infringing upon the proprietary rights of others if we are unable to obtain enabling licenses.

The patents for our core programs are summarized below.

AGEX-BAT1

Brown Adipose Tissue (BAT) Progenitor Cells: The pending patent applications related to BAT progenitor cells, which are owned by AgeX, include U.S. and international patent applications. The applications claim the differentiation of pluripotent stem cells (including hES cells) into progenitor cell types capable of making the cellular components of brown fat. The patents also claim culture and purification methods. The approximate expiration dates of the BAT patents, if issued, will range from 2034 to 2036. The AGEX-BAT1 product may also rely on the HyStem patents, which are described in detail below under the heading "HyStem® Technology".

AGEX-VASC1

Vascular Progenitors: The pending patent application pertaining to purified vascular progenitor cells and embryonic vascular components are owned by AgeX or a subsidiary thereof or licensed from BioTime. The patents include U.S. patent applications and claim methods to enhance vascular tube networks, compositions of pericyte progenitor cells, compositions of exosomes containing angiogenic molecules, compositions of vascular and lymphatic cells, and methods to culture and purify the cells or components thereof. The approximate expiration dates of the vascular progenitor patents, if issued, range from 2032 to 2038. The company plans to internationally file a pending US provisional application by the filing deadline, which could lead to a patent, if issued that expires in 2038. The AGEX-VASC1 product may also rely on the HyStem patents, which are described in detail below, under the heading "HyStem® Technology".

AGEX-iTR1547

Induced Tissue Regeneration (iTR™): The pending patent applications providing coverage to the iTR programs, which are owned by AgeX, include applications pending, for example, in the United States, Australia, Canada, China, Europe, Japan and a pending international patent application. These patent applications claim compositions and methods for healing damaged tissue using the iTR methods of treating. The patent applications also claim methods of treating by regenerating aging tissue by modulating genes involved in tissue regeneration, including reprogramming cells and tissues back to a regenerative state. The approximate expiration dates of the iTR patents, if issued, will range from 2034 to 2039.

Other AGEX Licensed and Sublicensed Patents

PureStem® Progenitor Cells: The patents and pending applications related to our PureStem® technology include patents and applications in the United States, Canada, Europe and Australia. These patents are directed to methods for generating cutaneous adipocytes, isolated progenitor cell lines which constitutively expresses OCT4 and combinations of other transcription factors, and methods and systems of identifying pluripotent stem cell lines suitable for clinical use. The pending applications are directed to clonally purified human embryonic progenitor cell lines and methods for reproducible, large scale production of clonally purified human embryonic progenitor cells, compositions and methods for generating cutaneous adipocytes, and assays useful in identifying human embryonic stem cell lines and pluripotent cells resulting from the transcriptional reprogramming of somatic cells that have embryonic telomere length. The PureStem® patent portfolio includes patents and pending applications licensed from Advanced Cell Technology, Inc., which later became Ocata Therapeutics, Inc. ("Ocata"). The Ocata issued patents cover methods for reprogramming animal differentiated somatic cells to undifferentiated cells and methods for producing differentiated progenitor cells using morula-derived or inner cell mass cells from a blastocyst and expire from approximately 2020 to 2026. The Ocata pending applications relate to methods for the derivation of cells that have a reduced differentiation potential using pluripotent stem cells, methods for reprogramming animal differentiated somatic cells to undifferentiated cells and methods for producing differentiated progenitor cells using morula-derived or inner cell mass cells from a blastocyst and will expire, if issued, between 2020 and 2026. The approximate expiration date of the PureStem® issued patents is 2031 and the approximate date of expiration of the pending patent applications, if issued, range from 2029 to 2032.

HyStem® Technology: AgeX has a sublicense to the HyStem technology from BioTime and the technology was originally developed by the University of Utah Research Foundation with patents issued in the United States, Canada, Switzerland, Germany, Spain, France, UK, Ireland, Italy, Luxembourg, Monaco, Japan, Australia, and South Africa. The patents have claims covering compositions, pharmaceutical compositions with living cells methods of crosslinking,

methods of making, methods of administering the compositions, and the use of the synthetic extracellular matrix in both research and clinical applications. The expiration dates of the HyStem® patents range from 2023 to 2027.

ESI Human Embryonic Stem Cell (*hESC*) Lines: AgeX licenses rights to the ES Cell International Pte. Ltd. patent portfolio with patents issued in the United States, Australia, Israel, UK, Singapore, Japan, and applications pending in the US and Europe. The patents are directed to methods for the differentiation of or enhancing the differentiation of stem cells into cardiomyocytes, neural cells, and pancreatic endoderm cells, compositions of pancreatic progenitor cells, methods of promoting the attachment, survival and/or proliferation of substantially undifferentiated stem cells in culture, methods for identifying and selecting cardiomyocytes, methods of freezing stem cells or progenitor cells, methods for identifying cardiogenic factors, compositions and methods for modulating spontaneous differentiation of a stem cell, methods of modulating the differentiation of undifferentiated, pluripotent human embryonic stem cells in culture, isolated endodermal progenitor cells, methods for transducing human embryonic stem cells, cell culture systems. The pending applications are directed to methods for the differentiation of hESCs cells into the three cell lineages, including for example cardiomyocytes, skeletal muscle cells, vascular endothelial cells, and pancreatic endoderm cells, as well as, various culture and purification methods and compositions and methods of treatment. The ESI issued patents will expire from 2019 to 2027, and the approximate date of expiration of the pending patent applications, if issued, range from 2022 to 2029.

UniverCyte (HLA-G) Technology: In August 2018, we acquired from Escape Therapeutics patents and patent applications related to HLA-G-modified cells and methods of generating allogeneic cells with reduced risk of being rejected by patients regardless of the HLA class I haplotype. The patents and pending application related to our HLA-G modified cells technology include patents issued in the United States and Japan and applications are pending in the United States, Australia, Canada, China, Europe, Japan, Korea, and Singapore. The patents are directed to cells which are genetically modified to express a Human Leukocyte Antigen-G (HLA-G) and have reduced immunogenicity and improved immunosuppression, and nucleic acid compositions useful for generating the genetically modified cells. The pending applications are directed to compositions and methods for generating cells which are genetically modified to express HLA-G having reduced immunogenicity and improved immunosuppression, nucleic acid compositions useful for generating the genetically modified cells, and methods of producing artificial tissues using the genetically modified cells. The approximate expiration date of the UniverCyte™ (HLA-G) issued patents is 2033 and the approximate date of expiration of the pending patent applications, if issued, is also 2033. As an initial focus, we intend to use the UniverCyte™ technology in the development of our two lead products, AGEX-BAT1 and AGEX-VASC1 for the treatment of Type II diabetes and cardiovascular aging, respectively.

General Risks Related to Obtaining and Enforcing Patent Protection

There is a risk that any patent applications that we file and any patents that we hold or later obtain could be challenged by third parties and be declared invalid or infringing on third party claims. Litigation, interferences, oppositions, inter partes reviews or other proceedings are, have been and may in the future be necessary in some instances to determine the validity and scope of certain of our proprietary rights, and in other instances to determine the validity, scope or non-infringement of certain patent rights claimed by third parties to be pertinent to the manufacture, use or sale of our products. We may also face challenges to our patent and regulatory protections covering our products by third parties, including manufacturers of generics and biosimilars that may choose to launch or attempt to launch their products before the expiration of our patent or regulatory exclusivity. Litigation, interference, oppositions, inter partes reviews, administrative challenges or other similar types of proceedings are unpredictable and may be protracted, expensive and distracting to management. The outcome of such proceedings could adversely affect the validity and scope of our patent or other proprietary rights, hinder our ability to manufacture and market our products, require us to seek a license for the infringed product or technology or result in the assessment of significant monetary damages against us that may exceed any amounts that we may accrue on our financial statements as a reserve for contingent liabilities. An adverse determination in a judicial or administrative proceeding or a failure to obtain necessary licenses could prevent us from manufacturing or selling our products. Furthermore, payments under any licenses that we are able to obtain would reduce our profits derived from the covered products and services.

The enforcement of patent rights often requires litigation against third-party infringers, and such litigation can be costly to pursue. Even if we succeed in having new patents issued or in defending any challenge to issued patents, there is no assurance that our patents will be comprehensive enough to provide us with meaningful patent protection against our competitors.

In addition to relying on patents, we rely on trade secrets, know-how, and continuing technological advancement to maintain our competitive position. We have entered into intellectual property, invention, and non-disclosure agreements with our employees, and it is our practice to enter into confidentiality agreements with our consultants. There can be no assurance, however, that these measures will prevent the unauthorized disclosure or use of our trade secrets and know-how, or that others may not independently develop similar trade secrets and know-how or obtain access to our trade secrets, know-how, or proprietary technology.

Our Licensing Arrangements

License Agreement With BioTime: iTR, PureStem® and Telomere Length

Concurrently with the contribution of assets to us under the Asset Contribution Agreement, we entered into a License Agreement with BioTime pursuant to which BioTime has licensed to us, with rights to sublicense, certain intellectual property, including patents and patent applications and know-how for use in the development, manufacture and commercialization of products or services for the prevention, treatment, amelioration, diagnosis or monitoring of all human and non-human animal diseases and conditions except for the field of medical products, devices and services for the reserved BioTime fields of orthopedic, ophthalmic, and medical aesthetic uses (the "BioTime Exclusive Field"). In addition, BioTime retains an option right, on terms to be negotiated, to license iTR patents in research, development, manufacturing and commercialization of treatments based on iTR in the BioTime Exclusive Field. The licensed patents and know-how relate generally to (a) BioTime's *PureStem®* human embryonic progenitor cell lines, and (b) telomere length and DNA quality control analysis in pluripotent stem cells.

The BioTime patent rights licensed to us are exclusive and worldwide except for existing third party licenses, and for medical products, devices, and services related to tendon. We additionally received an option to license certain BioTime retained rights outside of orthopedic indications unless a license grant would compete with a BioTime program or products in the BioTime Exclusive Field.

The License Agreement contains customary provisions pertaining to patent maintenance, enforcement, and defense and related cost allocations, insurance, indemnification, and termination of the license in the event of a breach or default by a party, or the bankruptcy or other insolvency event with respect to a party.

The foregoing description of the License Agreement is qualified in its entirety by reference to the License Agreement, a copy of which is filed as an Exhibit to our Registration Statement on Form 10 and is incorporated herein by reference.

Additional License and Sublicense Agreements

BioTime and certain BioTime subsidiaries also entered into agreements pursuant to which they have licensed or sublicense to us, on a non-exclusive, world-wide, royalty bearing basis, certain additional patents and patent rights and know-how relating to BioTime *HyStem*® hydrogel technology, human embryonic progenitor cell technology, and human pluripotent stem cell lines and technology for use outside the BioTime Exclusive Fields, or in the case of certain sublicense rights, fields previously licensed to third parties.

Hydrogel Patent License and Sublicense

BioTime has granted to us a sublicense of certain patents licensed to BioTime by the University of Utah Research Foundation (the "Utah Sublicense"), and has granted to us a direct license of certain patents held by BioTime (the "HyStem License"), related to *HyStem*® hydrogel technology for use outside of the BioTime Exclusive Field for products that include cells and that are covered by certain other patents contributed, licensed, or sublicensed to us by BioTime. We may only develop, sell, and otherwise commercialize a product under the Utah Sublicense and HyStem License if we spend at least a low seven figure amount on research with respect to the product. BioTime will agree to provide us with a reasonable amount of the hydrogel product for the purpose of our research for we will pay BioTime's cost of manufacturing and supplying the hydrogel.

The Utah Sublicense and the HyStem License will not permit sublicensing and will be non-exclusive for medical products, devices, and services related to human tendon, and will be exclusive for all other licensed fields. The Utah Sublicense and HyStem License will expire upon the latest expiration date of a sublicensed or licensed patent, unless terminated earlier pursuant to the respective agreements. We will pay BioTime a royalty, in an amount not exceeding 10 percent, on "net sales" as defined in the Utah Sublicense and HyStem License. Commencing June 30, 2019, and for each 12-month period thereafter, we will pay BioTime a minimum royalty in the low five figures regardless of the actual amount of net sales for the applicable period.

The foregoing description of the HyStem License and the Utah Sublicense is qualified in its entirety by reference to the HyStem License Agreement and the Utah Sublicense Agreement, copies of which are filed as Exhibits to our Registration Statement on Form 10 and are incorporated herein by reference.

Sublicense of Certain Progenitor Patents

BioTime has granted to us a sublicense of certain patents licensed to BioTime that pertain to the derivation of human embryonic progenitor cell lines. The sublicense will permit us to use the sublicensed patents for the treatment, palliation, diagnosis, or prevention of any disease, disorder or health condition outside of the BioTime Exclusive Field. The sublicense expires the later of July 10, 2028 or the latest expiration date of a sublicensed patent, unless terminated earlier pursuant to the terms of the sublicense.

We will pay BioTime a royalty on "net sales," as defined in the sublicense agreement, until the royalty payments to BioTime's licensor by BioTime total $1,200,000, and thereafter will pay to BioTime a low single digit royalty on its own net sales and a low double digit royalty on sublicensing consideration.

If we grant a sublicense to use the patents, we will pay BioTime a portion of any consideration received for a sublicense, including but not limited to, upfront payments and milestones, and non-cash exchanges or considerations, but not payments for developing a product, service or process. If we become obligated to pay royalties to one or more affiliates of BioTime for the use of patent rights related to this sublicense and as a result, the royalties payable to BioTime with respect to royalties under the sublicense plus the royalties payable to the affiliates would exceed a designated amount of net sales, the royalties due to BioTime may be reduced but not less than the designated amount. In addition, we will pay to BioTime a royalty on "net sales," as defined in the sublicense agreement, by the sublicensee. If we become obligated to pay royalties to one or more affiliates of BioTime for the use of patent rights related to this sublicense and as a result, the royalties payable to BioTime with respect to sales by a sublicensee plus the royalties payable to the affiliates would exceed a designated amount of net sales, the royalty due on net sales by the sublicensee may be reduced but not less than the designated amount.

The sublicense agreement includes reciprocal cross-licenses between BioTime and us with respect to any new patents that may be issued based on the use of the sublicensed patents. Any such license to BioTime will be exclusive in the BioTime Exclusive Field and nonexclusive in all other licensed fields. Any such license from BioTime to us will be for use outside the BioTime Exclusive Field and for medical products or services involving tendon. Each license will be for a term of 10 years.

The foregoing description of the sublicense agreement is qualified in its entirety by reference to the sublicense agreement, a copy of which is filed as an exhibit to our Registration Statement on Form 10 and is incorporated herein by reference.

ESI License

BioTime's subsidiary ES Cell International Pte, or ESI, has granted to us non-exclusive rights to certain ESI patents and human pluripotent stem cell lines, or ESI Cell Lines, for use outside of the BioTime Exclusive Field and outside certain other fields for which ESI has previously granted licenses. We will pay ESI a royalty, in an amount not exceeding 10 percent, on "net sales," as defined in the license agreement. If we become obligated to pay royalties to one or more third party or to BioTime for the use of patent rights related to this license and as a result the royalties payable to ESI with respect to this license agreement plus the royalties payable to such third party or BioTime would exceed a designated amount of net sales, the royalty due on net sales by the sublicensee may be reduced. The patent license expires upon the latest expiration date of a licensed patent, unless terminated earlier pursuant to the terms of the license. All other rights under the license are terminable by either party under the conditions specified in the license.

If we grant rights to any third party to use ESI Cell Lines derived under cGMP, we will pay ESI a share of all consideration that we receive as consideration for the grant of those rights, including all cash and non-cash consideration but not royalties. We are not permitted to grant sublicenses to the licensed ESI patents but may sublicense the use of ESI Cell Lines.

The foregoing description of the ESI License Agreement is qualified in its entirety by reference to the ESI License Agreement, a copy of which is filed as an exhibit to our Registration Statement on Form 10 and is incorporated herein by reference.

Competition

The biotechnology industry is highly competitive and characterized by rapid change (even disruptive advances) that challenge the ability of any one company to maintain leadership. Therefore, we face competition on multiple fronts, including from other biotechnology companies, large pharmaceutical companies, academic institutions and government research entities. We believe the competitive advantages of our technology platform and resulting product candidates arise from the large market opportunities addressed by our products, their anticipated safety profile, the expected cost of manufacture of off-the-shelf products, our intellectual property, as well the fundamental and widespread role of cell aging and regeneration in human age-related degenerative disease.

There are numerous biotechnology companies developing therapeutics for human aging, with each company often focusing on a specific molecular pathway within cells. For example, ResTORbio, Inc. is developing modulators of the mechanistic target of rapamycin (mTOR) pathway to treat immunological and cardiovascular disorders. Calico Life Sciences LLC is a Google-founded research and development company aimed at identifying molecular pathways that control animal lifespan and translating these insights into novel therapeutics designed to increase human healthspan. Calico has not disclosed its lead product development plans. Unity Biotechnology, Inc. focuses on cellular senescence, in particular, the use of agents that can target senescent cells for selective ablation (senolysis). Unity's stated targeted age-related diseases include osteoarthritis as well as other ophthalmological and pulmonary diseases.

Our therapeutic products in development are likely to face competition from a large number of companies and technological strategies including therapeutics intended to address our lead indications, including:

- Type II diabetes: current standard of care treatments (though not necessarily focused on the root cause of the disease) include dieting and exercise programs to reduce weight, or pharmacological interventions with a wide array of medications, including: Metformin (Glucophage, Glumetza, or others); (DiaBeta, Glynase), glipizide (Glucotrol) and glimepiride (Amaryl); Meglitinides (repaglinide (Prandin) and nateglinide (Starlix)); Thiazolidinediones (rosiglitazone (Avandia) and pioglitazone (Actos)); DPP-4 (sitagliptin (Januvia), saxagliptin (Onglyza) and linagliptin (Tradjenta)); GLP-1 receptor agonists (exenatide (Byetta) and liraglutide (Victoza)); SGLT2 inhibitors (canagliflozin (Invokana) and dapagliflozin (Farxiga)); and insulin therapy (Insulin glulisine (Apidra), Insulin lispro (Humalog), Insulin aspart (Novolog), Insulin glargine (Lantus), Insulin detemir (Levemir), Insulin isophane (Humulin N, Novolin N)).

- Vascular ischemiam, including myocardial ischemia: current standard of care treatments including dieting, lowered intake of cholesterol, daily aspirin as a blood thinner; pharmacological agents including but not limited to nitrates as vasodilators (nitroglycerin sublingual tablet (Nitrostat), nitroglycerin transdermal ointment (Nitro-Bid), and isosorbide mononitrate and dinitrate (Isordil, Isordil Titradose, Dilatrate-SR)); beta blockers (atenolol (Tenormin), metoprolol (Lopressor, Toprol XL), and nadolol (Corgard)); calcium channel blockers (amlodipine (Norvasc), amlodipine and atorvastatin (Caduet), amlodipine and benazepril (Lotrel), diltiazem (Cardizem), felodipine (Cardene, Cardene SR), and verapamil (Calan); cholesterol-lowering medications such as statins atorvastatin (Lipitor), rosuvastatin (Crestor), and simvastatin (Zocor); Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors (Ranolazine (Ranexa), benazepril (Lotensin), and lisinopril (Prinivil, Zestril, Qbrelis); and surgical procedures to increase circulation including but not limited to angioplasty and stenting, coronary artery bypass surgery, and enhanced external counterpulsation.

- Scarless tissue regeneration, including scarless dermal wound repair: current standard of care including but not limited to sterile dressings, over-the-counter agents such as Astragaloside IV and curcumin; biomaterials including hyaluronic acid (Seprafilm, Durolane, Euflexxa, Gel-One, GelSyn-3, GenVisc 850, Hyalgan, Hyalgan L/L, Hymovis, Monovisc, Orthovisc, Supartz FX, and Visco-3); and bioengineered skin substitutes such as Apligraf.

Many of our competitors have greater financial, collaborative, technical, regulatory, and human resources as well as products more advanced in development than our product pipeline, including products already marketed for our target indications. As a result, these competitors may have great success in obtaining regulatory approvals, reimbursement, or market acceptance. Our competitors, may have greater success in attracting qualified personnel, recruiting clinical trial sites, or in establishing strategic partnerships with larger pharmaceutical companies to fund large late-stage clinical trials or product marketing. In addition, our future business could be limited should our competitors commercialize products demonstrated to be more effective, safer, or less expensive than our comparable products.

Government Regulation and Product Approval

Government authorities at the federal, state, and local level, and in other countries, extensively regulate among other things, the development, testing, manufacture, quality, approval, safety, efficacy, distribution, labeling, packaging, storage, record keeping, marketing, import/export, and promotion of drugs, biologics, and medical devices. Authorities also heavily regulate many of these activities for human cells, tissues, and cellular and tissue-based products ("HCT/Ps").

FDA and Foreign Regulation of Therapeutic Products

The FDA and foreign regulatory authorities will regulate our proposed products as drugs, biologicals, or medical devices, depending upon such factors as: the use to which the product will be put, the chemical composition of the product, and the interaction of the product with the human body. In the United States, the FDA regulates drugs and biologicals under the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act ("FDCA"), the Public Health Service Act ("PHSA"), and implementing regulations. In addition, establishments that manufacture human cells, tissues, and cellular and tissue-based products are subject to additional registration and listing requirements, including current good tissue practice regulations. To the extent AgeX develops cellular and tissue-based products or therapies, its products will be subject to review by the FDA staff in its Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research ("CBER") Office of Cellular, Tissue, and Gene Therapies. In some instances, AgeX's clinical study protocol for a cell therapy product must be reviewed by the National Institute of Health through its Recombinant DNA Advisory Committee.

Any human drug and biological products that we may develop for testing, marketing, or use in the United States will be subject to rigorous FDA review and approval procedures. After testing in animals to evaluate the potential efficacy and safety of the product candidate, an investigational new drug ("IND") submission must be made to the FDA to obtain authorization for human testing. Extensive clinical testing, which is generally done in three phases, must then be undertaken at a hospital or medical center to demonstrate optimal use, safety, and efficacy of each product in humans. Each clinical study is conducted under the auspices of an independent Institutional Review Board ("IRB"). The IRB will consider, among other things, ethical factors, the safety of human subjects, and the possible liability of the institution.

Clinical trials are generally conducted in three "phases." Phase I clinical trials are conducted in a small number of healthy volunteers or volunteers with the target disease or condition to assess safety. Phase II clinical trials are conducted with groups of patients afflicted with the target disease or condition in order to determine preliminary efficacy, optimal dosages and expanded evidence of safety. In some cases, an initial trial is conducted in diseased patients to assess both preliminary efficacy and preliminary safety, in which case it is referred to as a Phase I/II trial. Phase III trials are large-scale, multi-center, comparative trials and are conducted with patients afflicted with the target disease or condition in order to provide enough data to demonstrate the efficacy and safety required by the FDA. The FDA closely monitors the progress of each of the three phases of clinical testing and may, at its discretion, re-evaluate, alter, suspend, or terminate the clinical trial based upon the data which have been accumulated to that point and its assessment of the risk/benefit ratio to the intended patient population. All adverse events must be reported to the FDA. Monitoring of all aspects of the study to minimize risks is a continuing process. The time and expense required to perform this clinical testing can far exceed the time and expense of the research and development initially required to create the product.

No action can be taken to market any therapeutic product in the U.S. until an appropriate New Drug Application ("NDA") or Biologics License Application ("BLA") has been approved by the FDA. Submission of the application is no guarantee that the FDA will find it complete and accept it for filing. If an application is accepted for filing, following the FDA's review, the FDA may grant marketing approval, request additional information, or deny the application if it determines that the application does not provide an adequate basis for approval. FDA regulations also restrict the export of therapeutic products for clinical use prior to FDA approval. To date, the FDA has not granted marketing approval to any pluripotent stem-based therapeutic products and it is possible that the FDA or foreign regulatory agencies may subject our product candidates to additional or more stringent review than drugs or biologicals derived from other technologies.

The FDA offers several programs to expedite development of products that treat serious or life-threatening illnesses and that provide meaningful therapeutic benefits to patients over existing treatments. A product may be eligible for breakthrough therapy designation if it treats a serious or life-threatening disease or condition and preliminary clinical evidence indicates it may demonstrate substantial improvement over existing therapies on one or more clinically significant endpoints. In 2017, FDA established a new regenerative medicine advanced therapy ("RMAT") designation as part of its implementation of the 21st Century Cures Act. An RMAT is defined as a cell therapy, therapeutic tissue engineering product, human cell and tissue product, or any combination product using such therapies or products, with limited exceptions that is intended to treat, modify, reverse, or cure a serious or life-threatening disease or condition; and preliminary clinical evidence indicates that it has the potential to address unmet medical needs for such a disease or condition. RMAT designation provides potential benefits that include more frequent meetings with FDA to discuss the development plan for the product candidate and eligibility for rolling review and priority review. Products granted RMAT designation may also be eligible for accelerated approval on the basis of a surrogate or intermediate endpoint reasonably likely to predict long-term clinical benefit, or reliance upon data obtained from a meaningful number of sites, including through expansion to additional sites. Once approved, when appropriate, the FDA can permit fulfillment of post-approval requirements under accelerated approval through the submission of clinical evidence, clinical studies, patient registries, or other sources of real world evidence such as electronic health records; through the collection of larger confirmatory datasets; or through post-approval monitoring of all patients treated with the therapy prior to approval.

Some of our future products may be eligible for RMAT designation. There is no assurance that the FDA will grant breakthrough therapy, accelerated approval or RMAT status to any of our product candidates.

In addition to regulations in the United States, we are subject to a variety of foreign regulations governing clinical trials and commercial sales and distribution of our products. Whether or not we obtain FDA approval for a drug candidate, we must obtain approval by the comparable regulatory authorities of foreign countries or economic areas, such as the European Union, before we can commence clinical trials or market products in those countries or areas. The approval process and requirements governing the conduct of clinical trials, product licensing, pricing and reimbursement vary greatly from place to place, and the time may be longer or shorter than that required for FDA approval.

Combination Products

If we develop any products that are used with medical devices, they may be considered combination products, which are defined by the FDA to include products comprised of two or more regulated components or parts such as a biologic and a device. For example, we may use *HyStem*® hydrogels to administer one or more pluripotent stem cell-based therapy products. When regulated independently, biologics and devices each have their own regulatory requirements. However, regulatory requirements for a combination product comprised of a biologic administered with a delivery device can be more complex, because in addition to the individual regulatory requirements for each component, additional combination product regulatory requirements may apply.

510(k) Medical Devices

510(k) Notification

Product marketing in the U.S. for most Class II and limited Class I devices typically follows a 510(k) pathway. To obtain 510(k) clearance, a manufacturer must submit a premarket notification demonstrating that the proposed device is substantially equivalent to a legally marketed device, referred to as the predicate device. A predicate device may be a previously 510(k) cleared device or a device that was in commercial distribution before May 28, 1976 for which the FDA has not yet called for submission of PMA applications, or a product classification created by FDA when it granted de novo authorization. The manufacturer must show that the proposed device has the same intended use as the predicate device, and it either has the same technological characteristics, or it is shown to be equally safe and effective and does not raise different questions of safety and effectiveness as compared to the predicate device.

There are three types of 510(k)s: traditional; special, for devices that are modified and the modification needs a new 510(k) but the modification does not affect the intended use or alter the fundamental scientific technology of the device; and abbreviated, for devices that conform to a recognized standard. The special and abbreviated 510(k)s are intended to streamline review. The FDA intends to process special 510(k)s within 30 days of receipt, and abbreviated 510 (k)s within 90 days of receipt. Though statutorily required to clear a traditional 510(k) within 90 days of receipt, the clearance pathway for traditional 510(k)s can take substantially longer.

After a device receives 510(k) clearance, any modification that could significantly affect its safety or effectiveness, or that would constitute a major change in its intended use, requires a new 510(k) clearance or could require a PMA approval. The FDA requires each manufacturer to make this determination in the first instance, but the FDA can review any such decision. If the FDA disagrees with a manufacturer's decision not to seek a new 510(k) clearance, the agency may retroactively require the manufacturer to seek 510(k) clearance or PMA approval. The FDA also can require the manufacturer to cease marketing and/or recall the modified device until 510(k) clearance or PMA approval is obtained.

Post-Approval Matters

Even after initial FDA approval has been obtained, further studies may be required to provide additional data on safety or to gain approval for the use of a product as a treatment for clinical indications other than those initially targeted. Data resulting from these clinical trials may result in expansions or restrictions to the labeled indications for which a product has already been approved.

FDA Regulation of Manufacturing

The FDA regulates the manufacturing process of pharmaceutical products, human tissue and cell products, and medical devices, requiring that they be produced in compliance with cGMP. The FDA regulates and inspects equipment, facilities, laboratories, and processes used in the manufacturing and testing of products prior to providing approval to market products. If after receiving approval from the FDA, a material change is made to manufacturing equipment or to the location or manufacturing process, additional regulatory review may be required. The FDA also conducts regular, periodic visits to re-inspect the equipment, facilities, laboratories and processes of manufacturers following an initial approval. If, as a result of those inspections, the FDA determines that that equipment, facilities, laboratories or processes do not comply with applicable FDA regulations and conditions of product approval, the FDA may seek civil, criminal or administrative sanctions and/or remedies against the manufacturer, including suspension of manufacturing operations. Issues pertaining to manufacturing equipment, facilities or processes may also delay the approval of new products undergoing FDA review.

Federal Funding of Research

Effective July 7, 2009, the NIH has adopted guidelines on the use of hES cells in federally funded research, consistent with President Obama's Executive Order which rescinded President Bush's Executive Orders that permitted federal funding of research on hES cells using only the limited number of hES cell lines. The central focus of the guidelines is to assure that hES cells used in federally funded research are derived from human embryos that were created for reproductive purposes, are no longer needed for this purpose, and are voluntarily donated for research purposes with the informed written consent of the donors. Those hES cells that were derived from embryos created for research purposes rather than reproductive purposes, and other hES cells that were not derived in compliance with the guidelines, are not eligible for use in federally funded research.

California State Regulations

The state of California has adopted legislation and regulations that require institutions that conduct stem cell research to notify, and in certain cases obtain approval from, a Stem Cell Research Oversight Committee ("SCRO Committee") before conducting the research. Under certain California regulations, all hES cell lines that will be used in our research must be acceptably derived. California regulations further require certain records to be maintained with respect to stem cell research and the materials used. AgeX programs that involve the use of stem cells will be reviewed by a SCRO Committee to confirm compliance with federal and state guidelines. The hES cell lines that we use are all on the National Institutes of Health ("NIH") registry of lines that have been reviewed and meet standards for federal funding grants.

Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act

Under the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act ("HIPAA"), the Department of Health and Human Services ("HHS") has issued regulations to protect the privacy and security of protected health information used or disclosed by health care providers. HIPAA also regulates standardization of data content, codes, and formats used in health care transactions and standardization of identifiers for health plans and providers. Penalties for violations of HIPAA regulations include civil and criminal penalties.

The requirements under these regulations may periodically change and could have an effect on our business operations if compliance becomes substantially more costly than under current requirements. New laws governing privacy may also be adopted in the future. We can provide no assurance that we will remain in compliance with diverse privacy requirements in all of the jurisdictions in which we do business. Failure to comply with privacy requirements could result in civil or criminal penalties, which could have a materially adverse effect on our business.

Federal and State Fraud and Abuse Laws

We are also subject to various laws pertaining to healthcare "fraud and abuse," including anti-kickback laws and false claims laws. Anti-kickback laws make it illegal to solicit, offer, receive or pay any remuneration in exchange for or to induce the referral of business, including the purchase or prescription of a particular drug that is reimbursed by a state or federal program. False claims laws prohibit knowingly and willingly presenting, or causing to be presented for payment to third-party payers (including Medicare and Medicaid) any claims for reimbursed drugs or services that are false or fraudulent, claims for items or services not provided as claimed or claims for medically unnecessary items or services. Violations of fraud and abuse laws may be punishable by criminal and/or civil sanctions, including fines and civil monetary penalties, as well as by the possibility of exclusion from federal healthcare programs (including Medicare and Medicaid). Liability under the false claims laws may also arise when a violation of certain laws or regulations related to the underlying products (e.g., violations regarding improper promotional activity or unlawful payments) contributes to the submission of a false claim.

Additionally, the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act ("FCPA") prohibits U.S. corporations and their representatives from offering, promising, authorizing or making payments to any foreign government official, government staff member, political party or political candidate in an attempt to obtain or retain business abroad. The scope of the FCPA includes interactions with certain healthcare professionals in many countries. Other countries have enacted similar anti-corruption laws and/or regulations.

Healthcare Reform

In the United States and foreign jurisdictions, there have been a number of legislative and regulatory changes to the healthcare system that could affect our future results of operations. There have been and continue to be a number of initiatives at the United States federal and state levels that seek to reduce healthcare costs.

In particular, the ACA has had, and is expected to continue to have, a significant impact on the healthcare industry. The ACA was designed to expand coverage for the uninsured while at the same time containing overall healthcare costs. Substantial new provisions affecting compliance have also been enacted, which may require us to modify our business practices with healthcare providers and entities, and a significant number of provisions are not yet, or have only recently become, effective.

Since its enactment, there have been judicial and Congressional challenges to certain aspects of the ACA, as well as efforts by the current administration to repeal or replace certain aspects of the ACA. For example, since January 2017, the President has signed two Executive Orders and other directives designed to delay, circumvent, or loosen certain requirements mandated by the ACA. Concurrently, Congress has considered legislation that would repeal or repeal and replace all or part of the ACA. While Congress has not passed comprehensive repeal legislation, two bills affecting the implementation of certain taxes under the ACA were signed into law. The Tax Cuts and Jobs Act of 2017, or the Tax Act, includes a provision repealing, effective January 1, 2019, the tax-based shared responsibility payment imposed by the ACA on certain individuals who fail to maintain qualifying health coverage for all or part of a year that is commonly referred to as the "individual mandate." Additionally, on January 22, 2018, the President signed a continuing resolution on appropriations for fiscal year 2018 that delayed the implementation of certain ACA-mandated fees, including the so-called "Cadillac" tax on certain high cost employer-sponsored insurance plans, the annual fee imposed on certain health insurance providers based on market share, and the medical device excise tax on non-exempt medical devices. Further, the Bipartisan Budget Act of 2018, or the BBA, among other things, amends the ACA, effective January 1, 2019, to close the coverage gap in most Medicare drug plans, commonly referred to as the "donut hole," and increase from 50% to 70% the point-of-sale discount that is owed by pharmaceutical manufacturers who participate in the Medicare Part D program. There may be additional challenges and amendments to the ACA in the future. The ACA is likely to continue the downward pressure on pharmaceutical pricing and may also increase our regulatory burdens and operating costs.

Further, there has been heightened government scrutiny over the manner in which manufacturers set prices for their marketed pharmaceutical products. Such scrutiny has resulted in several recent Congressional inquiries and proposed and enacted federal and state legislation designed to, among other things, bring more transparency to pharmaceutical product pricing, review the relationship between pricing and manufacturer patient programs, and reform government program reimbursement methodologies for products. At the federal level, the current administration's budget proposal for fiscal year 2019 contains further drug price control measures that could be enacted during the 2019 budget process or in other future legislation, including, for example, measures to permit Medicare Part D plans to negotiate the price of certain drugs under Medicare Part B, to allow some states to negotiate drug prices under Medicaid, and to eliminate cost sharing for generic drugs for low-income patients. Additionally, on May 11, 2018, President Trump laid out his administration's "Blueprint to Lower Drug Prices and Reduce Out-of-Pocket Costs" to reduce the cost of prescription drugs while preserving innovation and cures. The Department of Health and Human Services has already started the process of soliciting feedback on some of these measures and, at the same, is immediately implementing others under its existing authority. Although some of these and other proposals will require authorization through additional legislation to become effective, Congress and the Trump administration have each indicated that it will continue to seek new legislative and/or administrative measures to control drug costs. At the state level, legislatures have become increasingly aggressive in passing legislation and implementing regulations designed to control pharmaceutical and biological product pricing, including price or patient reimbursement constraints, discounts, restrictions on certain product access and marketing cost disclosure and transparency measures, and, in some cases, designed to encourage importation from other countries and bulk purchasing.

It is uncertain whether and how future legislation, whether domestic or foreign, could affect prospects for our product candidates or what actions foreign, federal, state, or private payors for health care treatment and services may take in response to any such health care reform proposals or legislation. Adoption of price controls and other cost-containment measures, and adoption of more restrictive policies in jurisdictions with existing controls and measures reforms may prevent or limit our ability to generate revenue, attain profitability or commercialize our product candidates.

Moreover, the Drug Supply Chain Security Act imposes new obligations on manufacturers of pharmaceutical products, among others, related to product tracking and tracing, which is being phased in over several years beginning in 2015. Among the requirements of this new legislation, manufacturers will be required to provide certain information regarding the drug product to individuals and entities to which product ownership is transferred, label drug product with a product identifier, and keep certain records regarding the drug product. The transfer of information to subsequent product owners by manufacturers will eventually be required to be done electronically. Manufacturers will also be required to verify that purchasers of the manufacturers' products are appropriately licensed. Further, under this new legislation, manufacturers will have drug product investigation, quarantine, disposition, and notification responsibilities related to counterfeit, diverted, stolen, and intentionally adulterated products, as well as products that are the subject of fraudulent transactions or which are otherwise unfit for distribution such that they would be reasonably likely to result in serious health consequences or death.

Reimbursement

Medicare, Medicaid, and Third-Party Reimbursement Programs

Sales of the therapeutic products and medical devices that we and our subsidiaries may develop will depend, in part, on the extent to which the costs of those products will be covered by third-party payors, such as government health programs, commercial insurance, and managed healthcare organizations.

The containment of healthcare costs has become a priority of federal and state governments and the prices of drugs have been a focus in this effort. In the United States, the federal and many state governments have adopted or proposed initiatives relating to Medicaid and other health programs that may limit reimbursement or increase rebates that providers are required to pay to the state. In addition to government regulation, managed care organizations in the United States, which include medical insurance companies, medical plan administrators, health-maintenance organizations, hospital and physician alliances and pharmacy benefit managers, continue to put pressure on the price and usage of healthcare products. Managed care organizations and third-party payers seek to contain healthcare expenditures, and their purchasing strength has been increasing due to their consolidation into fewer, larger organizations and a growing number of enrolled patients. Adoption of price controls, cost-containment measures, and more restrictive policies in jurisdictions with existing controls and measures, could further limit our net revenue and results. If third-party payors do not consider the products we develop to be cost-effective compared to other therapies, they may not cover our products as a benefit under their plans or, if they do, the level of payment may not be sufficient to allow us to sell our products on a profitable basis.

Efforts by government agencies and state legislatures in the United States could affect us and our industry. The ACA increased many of the mandatory discounts and rebates and imposed a new Branded Prescription Pharmaceutical Manufacturers and Importers fee payable by manufacturers. The new U.S. presidential administration has identified repealing and replacing the ACA as a priority. The timing and method of the full or partial repeal or amendment of the ACA or the adoption of new healthcare legislation remains uncertain, but impending changes will likely impact the number of patient lives covered, the quality of the insurance, Medicaid eligibility and the level of patient protections provided.

Other legislative and regulatory actions that would have a significant impact include: changes to how the Medicare program covers and reimburses current and future drugs, changes in the Federal payment rate or new rebate requirements for covered drugs and policies for payment in Medicare or Medicaid; and changes to coverage and payment for biosimilars, including the current Medicare biosimilar coverage and payment policies intended to encourage biosimilar adoption, or other policies that provide easier substitution or reimbursement advantages.

We face similar issues outside of the United States. In some non-U.S. jurisdictions, the proposed pricing for a drug must be approved before it may be lawfully marketed. The requirements governing drug pricing vary widely from country to country. For example, the EU provides options for its member states to restrict the range of medicinal products for which their national health insurance systems provide reimbursement and to control the prices of medicinal products for human use. A member state may approve a specific price for the medicinal product or it may instead adopt a system of direct or indirect controls on the profitability of the company placing the medicinal product on the market. There can be no assurance that any country that has price controls or reimbursement limitations for pharmaceutical products will allow favorable reimbursement and pricing arrangements for any of our products. Historically, products launched in the EU do not follow price structures of the United States and generally tend to be significantly lower.

Research and Development

Our research and development expenses totaled $5.8 million and $8.5 million for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

Employees

As of September 30, 2018, we employed 17 persons on a full-time basis, out of which seven employees hold Ph.D.’s in one or more fields of science.

Legal Proceedings

From time to time, we may be involved in routine litigation incidental to the conduct of our business. We are not presently a party to any legal proceedings.

MANAGEMENT

Directors and Executive Officers

The following table sets forth the names, ages and positions of our expected directors and executive officers following the Distribution and the Juvenescence Transaction.

Name	Age	Position
Michael D. West, Ph.D.	65	Director and Chief Executive Officer
Russell L. Skibsted	59	Chief Financial Officer
Gregory H. Bailey, M.D.	62	Chairman of the Board of Directors
Michael H. Mulroy	52	Director
John F. Mauldin	68	Director
Annalisa Jenkins, M.B.B.C., F.R.C.P.	52	Director
Hal Sternberg, Ph.D.	64	Vice President, Research

Unless otherwise indicated, the current business address for our directors, executive officers and key employees is 1010 Atlantic Avenue, Suite 102, Alameda, California 94501.

Non-Executive Directors

Michael H. Mulroy, 52, joined our Board of Directors during January 2017. Mr. Mulroy has been Chief Executive Officer and a member of the Board of Directors of Asterias Biotherapeutics, Inc. since June 2017 and a member of the board of directors of BioTime since October 2014. Before joining Asterias, Mr. Mulroy was a business consultant and served as a Senior Advisor to CamberView Partners, LLC, which assists companies in connection with investor engagement and complex corporate governance issues. Mr. Mulroy served until September 2014 as Executive Vice President – Strategic Affairs and General Counsel of the Autoimmune and Rare Diseases Business Unit of Mallinckrodt plc following its acquisition of Questcor Pharmaceuticals, Inc. in August 2014. Mr. Mulroy was appointed Executive Vice President, Strategic Affairs and General Counsel and Corporate Secretary of Questcor during February 2014, having previously served as Chief Financial Officer, General Counsel and Corporate Secretary since January 2011. From 2003 to 2011, Mr. Mulroy was employed by the law firm of Stradling Yocca Carlson & Rauth, where he served as a partner from 2004, and represented Questcor and other publicly-traded companies. From 1997 to 2003, Mr. Mulroy was an investment banker at Citigroup and Merrill Lynch. From July 2011 to August 2014, Mr. Mulroy served as a member of the Board of Directors of Comarco, Inc., which developed and designed innovative technologies and intellectual property used in power adapters. Mr. Mulroy has also served as a director of BioTime since 2014. Mr. Mulroy earned his J.D. from the University of California, Los Angeles, and his B.A. in Economics from the University of Chicago.

John F. Mauldin, 68, joined our Board of Directors in May 2018. Mr. Mauldin currently serves as the President of Millennium Wave Advisors, which he joined in 2004, and is a member of the Board of Directors of Ashford Inc. Since November 2014. Mr. Mauldin has also served as Chairman of Mauldin Economics, an investment newsletter and information publishing firm, since 2012. Mr. Mauldin previously served as a member of the Board of Directors of Galectin Therapeutics, Inc. from May 2011 to December 2017. Mr. Mauldin is a regular contributor to publications including *The Financial Times* and *The Daily Reckoning*, as well as a frequent guest on CNBC, Yahoo Tech Ticker, and Bloomberg TV. Mr. Mauldin earned his Master of Divinity from Southwestern Baptist Theological Seminary and his B.A. from Rice University.

Gregory H. Bailey, M.D., 62, joined our Board of Directors in August 2018 and became the Chairman of our Board of Directors in October 2018. Dr. Bailey is currently the Chief Executive Officer of Juvenescence Limited, a privately held company focused on the development of therapies for ageing and age-related diseases. Dr. Bailey has served as a director of Biohaven Pharmaceutical Holding Company Ltd. since January 2014. Dr. Bailey is a co-founder and has served as managing partner of MediqVentures since January 2014, the chairman and director of Portage Biotech, Inc. since June 2013 and a director of Portage Pharmaceuticals Limited since June 2013. Dr. Bailey was a founder of SalvaRx Group Plc and has served on its board of directors since May 2015. Dr. Bailey was also the co-founder of Ascent Healthcare Solutions, VirnetX Inc., Portage Biotech Inc. and DuraMedic Inc. He was the initial financier and an independent director of Medivation, Inc., from 2005 to December 2012. He was also previously a managing partner of Palantir Group, Inc., a merchant bank involved in a number of biotech company startups and financings. Dr. Bailey

practiced emergency medicine for ten years before entering finance. Dr. Bailey received his M.D. from the University of Western Ontario.

Annalisa Jenkins, M.B.B.C., F.R.C.P., 52, has served as a member of our board of directors since October 2018. Dr. Jenkins has served as the chief executive officer of PlaqueTec Ltd. since November 2017 and was previously the chief executive officer and a member of the board of directors of Dimension Therapeutics, Inc., from September 2014 until its sale to Ultragnyx Pharmaceutical in November 2017. From October 2013 to March 2014, Dr. Jenkins served as executive vice president, head of global research and development for Merck Serono Pharmaceuticals, a biopharmaceutical company. Previously, from September 2011 to October 2013, she served as Merck Serono's executive vice president, global development and medical, and was a member of Merck Serono's executive committee. Prior to that, Dr. Jenkins pursued a 15-year career at Bristol-Myers Squibb Company, a biopharmaceutical company, where, from July 2009 to June 2011, she was a senior vice president and head of global medical affairs. Dr. Jenkins is currently a committee member of the science board to the FDA, which advises FDA leadership on complex scientific and technical issues. Dr. Jenkins serves on the board of directors of AVROBIO, Inc., Ardelyx, Inc., Sensyne Health plc, Oncimmune and a number of privately held biotech and life science companies. Dr. Jenkins graduated with a degree in medicine from St. Bartholomew's Hospital in the University of London and subsequently trained in cardiovascular medicine in the UK National Health Service. Earlier in her career, Dr. Jenkins served as a medical officer in the British Royal Navy.

Executive Officers and Executive Directors

Michael D. West, Ph.D., 65, joined the Board of Directors during January 2017 and currently serves as our Chief Executive Officer. Dr. West was appointed Chief Executive Officer of BioTime during October 2007 and became Co-Chief Executive Officer during October 2015, a role in which he currently serves. Dr. West also served as interim President and Chief Executive Officer of Asterias Biotherapeutics, Inc. from April 2014 to June 2014, and as Vice President of Technology Integration of Asterias until December 2015. Dr. West serves as a director of BioTime and Asterias and served as a director of OncoCyte Corporation from 2013 to 2016. Prior to becoming Chief Executive Officer of BioTime, Dr. West served as Chief Executive Officer, President, and Chief Scientific Officer of Ocata Therapeutics, Inc., a company engaged in developing human stem cell technology for use in regenerative medicine. Dr. West also founded Geron Corporation of Menlo Park, California, and from 1990 to 1998, he was a Director and Vice-President, where he initiated and managed programs in telomerase diagnostics, oligonucleotide-based telomerase inhibition as anti-tumor therapy, and the cloning and use of telomerase in telomerase-mediated therapy wherein telomerase is utilized to immortalize human cells. From 1995 to 1998 he organized and managed the research between Geron and its academic collaborators, James Thomson and John Gearhart, which led to the first isolation of human embryonic stem and human embryonic germ cells. Dr. West received a B.S. from Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute in 1976, an M.S. in Biology from Andrews University in 1982, and a Ph.D. from Baylor College of Medicine in 1989 concentrating on the biology of cellular aging.

Russell L. Skibsted, 59, was appointed as our Chief Financial Officer during January 2017. Mr. Skibsted has served a BioTime's Chief Financial Officer since November 2015 and also served as Chief Financial Officer of OncoCyte Corporation from November 2015 until November 2017, and as Chief Financial Officer of Asterias Biotherapeutics, Inc. from March 2016 until November 2016. Mr. Skibsted came to BioTime from Proove Biosciences, Inc. where he served as Chief Financial Officer from 2013 to November 2014. From 2013 to 2014 Mr. Skibsted was Managing Director and Chief Financial Officer of RSL Ventures, where he provided financial consulting services to public and private companies in the life sciences sector. Mr. Skibsted served as Senior Vice President, Chief Financial Officer and Secretary of Aeolus Pharmaceuticals, a publicly traded biopharma company, from 2010 to 2013, and was Senior Vice President and Chief Business Officer of Spectrum Pharmaceuticals, a publicly traded, biopharmaceutical company, from 2006 to 2009. Previously, from 2004 to 2006, Mr. Skibsted served as Chief Financial Officer of Hana Biosciences, and from 2000 to 2004 he served as Chief Financial Officer and Portfolio Management Partner of Asset Management Company, a venture capital firm. Mr. Skibsted holds a B.A. in Economics from Claremont McKenna College and an MBA from the Stanford Graduate School of Business.

Hal Sternberg, Ph.D., 64, was appointed Vice President of Research in August 2017. Prior to serving in that role, Dr. Sternberg was BioTime's Vice President of Research for over 25 years and was one of BioTime's co-founders. Prior to co-founding and joining BioTime, Dr. Sternberg held various positions at the University of California at Berkeley from 1982 to 1988, where he supervised a team of researchers studying Alzheimer's Disease. Dr. Sternberg holds a M.S. in chemistry and Ph.D. in Biochemistry from the University of Maryland.

Board Composition

Our Board of Directors currently consists of five members, each of whom serves as director pursuant to the board composition provisions of our articles of incorporation and bylaws and the Shareholders Agreement described below. The primary responsibilities of our Board of Directors are to provide oversight, strategic guidance, counseling and direction to our management. Our Board of Directors will meet on a regular basis and additionally as required.

Pursuant to the Shareholders Agreement, BioTime and Juvenescence (together, the "Majority Holders") have the right to designate two and three members of our Board from time to time, respectively, so long as each of the Majority Holders beneficially owns at least 15% of our outstanding common stock, and each Majority Holder has agreed to vote its shares in favor of the others' Board designees. Under the Shareholders Agreement, the remaining members of the Board will be independent of the Majority Holders and mutually agreed to and designated by the Majority Holders so long as each Majority Holder continues to beneficially own at least 15% of our outstanding common stock. Following the Distribution, we expect that BioTime will beneficially own less than 15% of our outstanding common stock, and as a result the Shareholders Agreement will terminate and neither Juvenescence nor BioTime will have the contractual right to designate any members of our Board.

Board Diversity

Upon consummation of the Distribution, our nominating and corporate governance committee will be responsible for reviewing with the Board of Directors on an annual basis the appropriate characteristics skills and experience required for the Board of Directors as a whole and its individual members. In evaluating the suitability of individual candidates, both new candidates and current members, the nominating and corporate governance committee, in recommending candidates for election, and the Board of Directors, in approving and in the case of vacancies appointing such candidates, may take into account many factors, including, but not limited to, the following:

- personal and professional integrity;
- ethics and values;
- experience in corporate management, such as serving as an officer or former officer of a publicly held company;

- experience in the industries in which we compete;
- experience as a board member or executive officer of another publicly held company;
- diversity of expertise and experience in substantive matters pertaining to our business relative to other board members;
- conflicts of interest; and
- practical and mature business judgment.

Currently, our Board of Directors evaluates and, following the Distribution will evaluate, each individual in the context of the Board of Directors as a whole with the objective of assembling a group that can best maximize the success of the business and represent stockholder interests through the exercise of sound judgment using its diversity of experience in these various areas.

Director Independence

Our Board of Directors has determined that each of Michael H. Mulroy, John Mauldin and Annalisa Jenkins qualifies as "independent" in accordance with Section 803(A) of the NYSE American Company Guide. The current members of our Audit Committee also meet the independence standards under Section 803(B)(2) of the NYSE American Company Guide and Section 10A-3 under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, prior to the effectiveness of the registration statement on Form 10 of which this information statement forms a part. In determining the independence of directors, our Board of Directors considered relationships and transactions during 2017 and during the past three fiscal years between each director or any member of the director's immediate family, on the one hand, and our company and our affiliates, including BioTime and Juvenescence, on the other hand. The purpose of this review was to determine whether any such relationships or transactions were inconsistent with a determination that the director is independent. The only compensation or remuneration that we provide to our independent directors is compensation as non-employee directors. None of these directors, nor any of the members of their families, have participated in any transactions with us that would disqualify them as "independent" directors under the standard described above.

Michael D. West and Greg Bailey do not qualify as "independent." Dr. West is our Chief Executive Officer, and Dr. Bailey is affiliated with Juvenescence.

Committees of the Board of Directors

Prior to the consummation of the Distribution and the listing of our common stock on the NYSE American, our Board of Directors will establish an audit committee, compensation committee and a nominating and corporate governance committee, each of which will operate pursuant to a committee charter. Our Board of Directors may establish other committees to facilitate the management of our business. The expected composition and functions of each committee are described below. A copy of each committee's charter will be posted on our website, www.agexinc.com.

Audit Committee

We have established an Audit Committee of the Board of Directors. The members of the Audit Committee are initially Michael Mulroy, Annalisa Jenkins and John Mauldin, each of whom qualifies as being "independent" under Section 8.03(A) and 8.03(B) of the NYSE American Company Guide and under Rule 10A-3 of the Exchange Act. Mr. Mulroy is the Chairman of the Audit Committee. The purpose of the Audit Committee is to recommend the engagement of our independent registered public accountants, to review their performance and the plan, scope, and results of the audit, and to review and approve the fees we pay to our independent registered public accountants. The Audit Committee also will review our accounting and financial reporting procedures and controls, and all transactions between us and our executive officers, directors, and shareholders who beneficially own 5% or more of any class of our voting securities. We have adopted a written charter for our Audit Committee and plan to post the charter on our website prior to the listing of our common stock on the NYSE American. The Board of Directors has also determined that Mr. Mulroy is "financially sophisticated" within the meaning of the rules and regulations of the NYSE American and that Mr. Mulroy qualifies as an "audit committee financial expert" as defined under applicable rules and regulations of the SEC and the NYSE American.

Compensation Committee

We have established a Compensation Committee of the Board of Directors. The members of the Compensation Committee are initially Gregory Bailey, Annalisa Jenkins and John Mauldin, each of whom qualify as "independent" in accordance with Section 803(A) and Section 805(c) of the NYSE American Company Guide except Mr. Bailey. Ms. Jenkins is the Chairwoman of the Audit Committee. The Compensation Committee will determine or recommend to the Board of Directors the terms and amount of executive compensation and grants of options and other awards to key employees, consultants, and independent contractors under the Plan. The Chief Executive Officer may make recommendations to the Compensation Committee concerning executive compensation and performance, but the Compensation Committee makes its own determination or recommendation to the Board of Directors with respect to the amount and components of compensation, including salary, bonus and equity awards to executive officers, generally taking into account factors such as company performance, individual performance, and compensation paid by peer group companies. We have adopted a written charter for our Compensation Committee and plan to post the charter on our website prior to the listing of our common stock on the NYSE American.

Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee

We have established a Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee of the Board of Directors. The members of the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee are initially Gregory Bailey, John Mauldin and Michael Mulroy, each of whom qualify as "independent" in accordance with Section 803(A) of the NYSE American Company Guide except Mr. Bailey. Mr. Mauldin is the Chairman of the Audit Committee. The purpose of the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee is to recommend to the Board of Directors individuals qualified to serve as directors and on committees of the Board, and to make recommendations to the Board on issues and proposals regarding corporate governance matters. The Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee also overseas compliance with, and all requests for waivers of, our Code of Business Conduct and Ethics. We have adopted a written charter for our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee and plan to post the charter on our website prior to the listing of our common stock on the NYSE American.

Code of Business Conduct and Ethics

We have adopted a Code of Business Conduct and Ethics, or the Code of Ethics, that applies to our principal executive officers, our principal financial officer and accounting officer, our other executive officers, and our directors. The purpose of the Code of Ethics is to promote (i) honest and ethical conduct, including the ethical handling of actual or apparent conflicts of interest between personal and professional relationships; (ii) full, fair, accurate, timely, and understandable disclosure in reports and documents that we file with or submit to the SEC and in our other public communications; (iii) compliance with applicable governmental rules and regulations; (iv) prompt internal reporting of violations of the Code of Ethics to an appropriate person or persons identified in the Code of Ethics; and (v) accountability for adherence to the Code of Ethics. A copy of our Code of Ethics has been posted on our internet website and can be found at www.agex.com. We intend to disclose any future amendments to certain provisions of our Code of Ethics, and any waivers of those provisions granted to our principal executive officers, principal financial officer, principal accounting officer or controller or persons performing similar functions, by posting the information on our website within four business days following the date of the amendment or waiver.

Compensation Committee Interlocks and Insider Participation in Compensation Decisions

We did not have a Compensation Committee prior to October 18, 2018. The members of our newly organized Compensation Committee are Gregory Bailey, Annalisa Jenkins and John Mauldin, who each qualify as "independent" in accordance with Section 803(A) and Section 805(c) of the NYSE American Company Guide except for Mr. Bailey.

None of the members of the Compensation Committee is a current or former officer or employee of AgeX or BioTime or any of BioTime's other subsidiaries, nor did either of them have any relationship with AgeX, BioTime or any of BioTime's other subsidiaries requiring disclosure in this information statement under Items 404 or 407(e)(4) of SEC Regulation S-K. However, Mr. Bailey is the Chief Executive Officer of Juvenescence.

Prior to the formation of our Compensation Committee, executive compensation was determined by our Board of Directors, subject to approval by the Board of Directors or Compensation Committee of BioTime in the case of any AgeX officer or director who was also an officer or director of BioTime.

During 2017, none of our executive officers served as (a) a member of the compensation committee (or other board committee performing equivalent functions or, in the absence of any such committee, the entire board of directors) of another entity, one of whose executive officers serves on our Compensation Committee, (b) a director of another entity, one of whose executive officers serves on our Compensation Committee, or (c) a member of the compensation committee (or other board committee performing equivalent functions or, in the absence of any such committee, the entire board of directors) of another entity, one of whose executive officers served on our Board of Directors, except that Michael D. West and Alfred D. Kingsley, our former Executive Chairman, served on the board of directors of BioTime, Dr. West served as an executive officer of BioTime and Dr. West and Mr. Kingsley served as directors and executive officers of one or more of BioTime's other subsidiaries, and in their capacity as directors of AgeX and other BioTime subsidiaries, they determined the compensation of other executive officers of AgeX and those BioTime subsidiaries, though neither of them voted on matters pertaining to his own personal compensation.

Limitation on Liability and Indemnification of Directors and Executive Officers

Our articles of incorporation limit our directors' liability to the fullest extent permitted under Delaware corporate law. Delaware corporate law provides that directors of a corporation will not be personally liable for monetary damages for breach of their fiduciary duties as directors, except for liability:

- for any breach of a director's duty of loyalty to the Company and its stockholders;
- for any act or omission not in good faith or that involves intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of law;
- under Section 174 of the Delaware General Corporation Law (unlawful payment of dividends or redemption of shares); or
- for any breach of a director's duty of loyalty to the Company or its stockholders.

If the Delaware General Corporation Law is amended to authorize corporate action further eliminating or limiting the personal liability of directors, then the liability of our directors shall be eliminated or limited to the fullest extent permitted by the Delaware General Corporation Law, as so amended.

Delaware law and our bylaws provide that we will, in certain situations, indemnify our directors and officers and may indemnify other employees and other agents, to the fullest extent permitted by law. Any indemnified person is also entitled, subject to certain limitations, to payment or reimbursement of reasonable expenses in advance of the final disposition of the proceeding.

We intend to maintain a directors' and officers' insurance policy pursuant to which our directors and officers are insured against liability for certain actions taken in their capacities as directors and officers. We believe that these provisions in our articles of incorporation and bylaws and any such insurance policy are necessary to attract and retain qualified persons as directors and officers.

Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act, may be permitted to directors, officers or control persons, in the opinion of the SEC, such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is therefore unenforceable.

EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION

The following table shows certain information relating to the compensation awarded to, earned by, or paid to our principal executive officer and our next two most highly compensated executive officers in respect of their service to the Company, for our fiscal year ended December 31, 2017. We refer to these individuals as our "Named Executive Officers." Our Named Executive Officers are:

- Michael D. West, Chief Executive Officer;
- Alfred D. Kingsley, former Executive Chairman; and
- Hal Sternberg, Vice President, Research.

2017 Summary Compensation Table

The following table sets forth the compensation awarded to, earned by, or paid to our Named Executive Officers in respect of their service to the Company for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017.

Name and principal position	Year	Salary[1]	Bonus[2]	Option Awards[3]	All Other Compensation[4]	Total
Michael D. West Chief Executive Officer	2017	$ 272,126	$ —	$ 865,720	$ —	$1,137,846
Alfred D. Kingsley[5] Former Executive Chairman	2017	110,769	—	433,017	3,529	547,315
Hal Sternberg Vice President, Research	2017	116,906	15,000	46,546	5,619	184,071

(1) Pursuant to the Shared Facilities Agreement, Dr. West's salary in 2017 for his services as Chief Executive Officer of the Company was paid by BioTime, with 80% of such amount allocated to the Company beginning in July 2017 and reimbursed to BioTime. Mr. Kingsley's annual salary was set by our Board of Directors following recommendation by BioTime's compensation committee to its board of directors.

(2) Amounts represent the discretionary annual cash bonus paid to Dr. Sternberg for 2017.

(3) Amounts shown in this column do not reflect dollar amounts actually received by our Named Executive Officers. Instead, these amounts reflect the aggregate grant date fair value of each stock option granted in 2017, computed in accordance with the provisions of FASB ASC Topic 718. Assumptions used in the calculation of these amounts are included in Note 6 to our consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement. Stock Based Compensation to our consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement. Our Named Executive Officers will only realize compensation upon exercise of the stock options and to the extent the trading price of our common stock is greater than the exercise price of such stock options.

For the options held by Dr. West, one third of such options will vest upon completion of 12 full months of continuous employment measured from the date of grant, and the balance of the options vest in 24 equal monthly installments commencing on the first anniversary of the date of grant, based on the completion of each month of continuous service from Dr. West as an employee or director of the Company or BioTime. For the options held by Dr. Sternberg, one fourth of such options will vest upon completion of 12 full months of continuous employment measured from the date of grant, and the balance of the options vest in 36 equal monthly installments commencing on the first anniversary of the date of grant, based on the completion of each month of continuous service of Dr. Sternberg as an employee or director of the Company or BioTime. All of the options held by Mr. Kingsley vested and became exercisable until October 16, 2023 upon Mr. Kingsley's resignation effective October 15, 2018, resulting in an expected noncash stock based compensation expense of approximately $578,000 in accordance with ASC 718.

(4) Amounts represent 401(k) matching contributions by us for 2017.

(5) Mr. Kingsley resigned from all positions at AgeX effective October 15, 2018.

Emerging Growth Company

We are an "emerging growth company" as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012. As an emerging growth company, we may take advantage of specified reduced disclosure and other requirements that are otherwise applicable, in general, to public companies that are not emerging growth companies. Accordingly, our registration statement on Form 10, of which this information statement forms a part, includes reduced disclosure about our executive compensation arrangements.

Pension Benefits

Our Named Executive Officers did not participate in, or otherwise receive any benefits under, any pension or retirement plan sponsored by us during 2017.

Nonqualified Deferred Compensation

Our Named Executive Officers did not participate in, or otherwise receive any benefits under, any nonqualified deferred compensation plan sponsored by us during 2017.

Employment Agreements and Change of Control Provisions

Michael D. West

We have entered into an employment agreement with our Chief Executive Officer Michael D. West, effective October 18, 2018 (the "West Employment Agreement"). Pursuant to the West Employment Agreement, Dr. West's annual base salary will be $525,000. For the year ended December 31, 2017, Dr. West's base salary was paid by BioTime, with $272,126 representing 80% of Dr. West's BioTime salary for the period commencing July 1, 2017 allocated to us by BioTime as an allocated cost under the Shared Facilities Agreement. BioTime continued to allocate 80% of Dr. West's salary to us under the Shared Facilities Agreement until Dr. West resigned as an officer of BioTime and entered into the West Employment Agreement in October 2018, following which time we began paying all of Dr. West's compensation. Under the West Employment Agreement, Dr. West is eligible to earn an annual incentive cash bonus with a target of no less than 50% of annual base salary. Actual bonus amounts will be based on Dr. West's attainment of individual performance goals at target levels set by the Board of Directors for the applicable calendar year. If such performance goals for the applicable year are fully achieved, the Board of Directors may approve a bonus amount exceeding the target bonus level.

Under the West Employment Agreement, Dr. West has been granted options to purchase 500,000 shares of our common stock with an exercise price of $3.00 per share, with one fourth of the options vesting following 12 full months of continuous service as an employee of the Company, measured from the date of grant, and the balance vesting in 36 equal monthly installments commencing on the first anniversary of the date of grant, based upon the completion of each month of continuous service as an employee of the Company. Such options expire on the earliest of (1) 10 years from the date of grant, (2) three months after Dr. West ceases to provide continuous service to us (other than due to death or disability) or (3) one year after Dr. West ceases to provide continuous service to us due to death or disability. On October 10, 2017, we granted options to purchase 660,000 shares of our common stock to Dr. West, with an exercise price of $2.00 per share, with one third of the options vesting following 12 full months of continuous service as an employee or director of the Company or BioTime, measured from the time of grant, and the balance vesting in 24 equal monthly installments commencing on the first anniversary of the date of grant, based upon the completion of each month of continuous service as an employee or director of the Company or BioTime. Such options expire on October 9, 2027.

Under the West Employment Agreement, Dr. West has agreed to certain covenants regarding confidential information and assignment of inventions, as well as a covenant not to solicit our employees during Dr. West's employment with us and for one year thereafter. The West Employment Agreement also includes a covenant not to compete with us during his employment. In the event of Dr. West's resignation or termination from the Company for any reason, Dr. West has agreed to promptly resign from the Board of Directors of the Company or any of its subsidiaries as well.

Hal Sternberg

We have entered into an employment agreement with our Vice President of Research Hal Sternberg (the "Sternberg Employment Agreement"). Dr. Sternberg's annual base salary as of December 31, 2017 was $235,000. Any bonus will be granted at the discretion of our Board of Directors based on Dr. Sternberg's performance and achievement of goals or milestone set by the Board of Directors from time to time. The Board of Directors may also follow the recommendations of its compensation committee in determining whether to award bonuses or to establish performance goals or milestones. On November 15, 2017, we granted options to purchase 35,000 shares of our common stock to Dr. Sternberg with an exercise price of $2.00 per share, with one fourth of the options vesting following 12 full months of continuous service as an employee of the Company or BioTime, measured from the date of grant, and the balance vesting in 36 equal monthly installments commencing on the first anniversary of the date of grant, based upon the completion of each month of continuous service as an employee of the Company or BioTime. Dr. Sternberg's options expire on November 14, 2027. Under the Sternberg Employment Agreement, Dr. Sternberg has agreed to certain covenants regarding confidential information.

Alfred D. Kingsley

Effective October 15, 2018, Mr. Kingsley resigned from all of his positions with AgeX, including as our Executive Chairman. In connection with Mr. Kingsley's resignation, we entered into a separation agreement under which Mr. Kingsley agreed to a general release of claims. We paid Mr. Kingsley his accrued but unpaid base salary up to October 15, 2018 and other accrued compensation. Mr. Kingsley's annual salary was previously set by our Board of Directors following recommendation by BioTime's compensation committee to its board of directors. In exchange for this release and Mr. Kingsley's other obligations under the agreement, all options issued by AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. and held by Mr. Kingsley as of October 15, 2018, representing the right to purchase 330,000 shares of our common stock at an exercise price of $2.00 per share, vested as of October 15, 2018 and will remain exercisable until October 16, 2023, notwithstanding any provision to the contrary in our 2017 Equity Incentive Plan. Mr. Kingsley's entitlement to the consideration under the separation agreement is subject to his continuing compliance with the terms of the agreement, which includes covenants relating to non-solicitation of employees for one year following the separation date, non-disparagement, confidentiality and cooperation with transition and succession matters.

Severance and Change of Control Arrangements for Dr. West and Dr. Sternberg

Pursuant to the West Employment Agreement and Sternberg Employment Agreement, each officer is entitled to severance benefits under certain circumstances.

If we terminate Dr. West's employment without "cause" or he resigns for "good reason" at any time, he will be entitled to (1) 12 months base salary, (2) all accrued but unpaid salary earned prior to or as of the date of termination or resignation, (3) full payment of Dr. West's target bonus due for such year and (4) for a period of six months, all benefits under any health insurance plan of the Company. In addition, if we terminate Dr. West's employment without "cause" or he resigns for "good reason," (1) all of Dr. West's outstanding equity awards that would otherwise have vested during the 12 months following termination or resignation will become fully vested and exercisable immediately and (2) with respect to any outstanding vested but unexercised options, the exercise period following termination or resignation will be extended to the earlier of the (A) 12 months after termination or (B) the natural expiration date of the applicable option. If we terminate Dr. West's employment without "cause," or he resigns for "good reason," following a "Change of Control," (1) Dr. West will be entitled to all of the benefits and payments that he would have been entitled to if his employment had been otherwise terminated without "cause" or if he resigned for "good reason," as set forth above, and (2) all of Dr. West's unvested options and restricted stock units, if any, will become fully vested and exercisable immediately. The severance compensation may be paid in a lump sum or, at our election, in installments consistent with the payment of Dr. West's salary while employed by us. In order to receive the severance benefits, Dr. West must execute a general release of all claims against us.

If we terminate Dr. Sternberg's employment without "cause" within 12 months of employment, he will be entitled to three months base salary. If we terminate Dr. Sternberg's employment without "cause" after 12 months of employment, he will be entitled to six months base salary. If we terminate Dr. Sternberg's employment following a "Change of Control" within 12 months of employment, he will be entitled to three months based salary and accelerated vesting of 50% of any then unvested stock options granted. If we terminate Dr. Sternberg's employment following a "Change in Control" after 12 months of employment, he will receive six months base salary and vesting of 100% of any then unvested stock options granted. If Dr. Sternberg's employment is terminated for "cause," due to death or disability or from Dr. Sternberg's resignation, Dr. Sternberg will be entitled to all accrued but unpaid salary earned prior to or as of the date of termination or resignation. The severance compensation may be paid in a lump sum or, at our election, in installments consistent with the payment of Dr. Sternberg's salary while employed by us. In order to receive the severance benefits, Dr. Sternberg must execute a general release of all claims against us and must return all our property in his possession.

"Change of Control," as defined in each of the West Employment Agreement and Sternberg Employment Agreement, means any one of the following:

- the acquisition of our voting securities by a person or an Affiliated Group entitling the holder to elect a majority of our directors, except that an increase in the amount of voting securities held by a person or Affiliated Group who on the date of the Employment Agreement beneficially owned more than 10% of our voting securities will not be a Change of Control. In addition, an acquisition of voting securities by one or more persons acting as an underwriter in connection with a sale or distribution of voting securities will not constitute a Change of Control;

- the sale of all or substantially all of our assets; or

- a merger or consolidation in which we merge or consolidate into another corporation or entity in which our shareholders immediately before the merger or consolidation do not own, in the aggregate, voting securities of the surviving corporation or entity entitling them, in the aggregate (and without regard to whether they constitute an Affiliated Group) to elect a majority of the directors or persons holding similar powers of the surviving corporation or entity.

A Change of Control will not occur if all of the persons acquiring our voting securities or assets, or merging or consolidating with us, are one or more of our direct or indirect subsidiaries or parent corporations. "Affiliated Group" means (A) a person and one or more other persons in control of, controlled by, or under common control with, such person; and (B) two or more persons who, by written agreement among them, act in concert to acquire voting securities entitling them to elect a majority of our directors.

Equity Incentive Plan

We have adopted the 2017 Equity Incentive Plan, or the Plan, that permits us to grant awards, or Awards, consisting of stock options, the grant or sale of restricted stock, or Restricted Stock, the grant of stock appreciation rights, or SARs, and the grant of hypothetical units issued with reference to our common stock, or Restricted Stock Units, for up to 4,000,000 shares of our common stock. Awards may be granted under the Plan to employees, directors, and consultants of AgeX and our subsidiaries, including also subsidiaries that we may form or acquire in the future. The Plan will be administered by our Board of Directors, or the AgeX Board, or by a committee authorized by our Board, or the Committee, who will make all determinations with regard to the grant and terms of Awards, subject to the terms of the Plan.

Awards may vest and thereby become exercisable or have restrictions on forfeiture lapse on the date of grant or in periodic installments or upon the attainment of performance goals, or upon the occurrence of specified events as determined by the AgeX Board or the Committee. The AgeX Board or Committee, in its discretion, may accelerate the vesting of an Award after the date of grant.

No person shall be granted, during any one year period, options to purchase, or SARs with respect to, more than 1,000,000 shares in the aggregate, or any Awards of Restricted Stock or Restricted Stock Units with respect to more than 500,000 shares in the aggregate. If an Award is to be settled in cash, the number of shares on which the Award is based shall not count toward the individual share limit.

No Awards may be granted under the Plan more than ten years after the date upon which the Plan was adopted by the AgeX Board, and no options or SARS granted under the Plan may be exercised after the expiration of ten years from the date of grant.

Stock Options

Options granted under the Plan may be either "incentive stock options" within the meaning of Section 422(b) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, or the Code, or "non-qualified" stock options that do not qualify incentive stock options. Incentive stock options may be granted only to employees of AgeX and its subsidiaries. The exercise price of stock options granted under the Plan must be equal to the fair market of our common stock on the date the option is granted. In the case of an optionee who, at the time of grant, owns more than 10% of the combined voting power of all classes of our stock, the exercise price of any incentive stock option must be at least 110% of the fair market value of our common stock on the grant date, and the term of the option may be no longer than five years. The aggregate fair market value of common stock (determined as of the grant date of the option) with respect to which incentive stock options become exercisable for the first time by an optionee in any calendar year may not exceed $100,000.

The exercise price of an option may be payable in cash or in shares of our common stock having a fair market value equal to the exercise price, or in a combination of cash and common stock, or other legal consideration for the issuance of stock as the AgeX Board or Committee may approve.

Generally, options will be exercisable only while the optionee remains an employee, director or consultant, or during a specific period thereafter as approved by the AgeX Board or Committee, which will generally be three months, but in the case of the termination of an employee, director, or consultant's services due to death or disability, the period for exercising a vested option shall be extended to the earlier of 12 months after termination or the expiration date of the option.

The number of shares covered by the Plan, and the number of shares and the exercise price per share of each outstanding option, shall be proportionately adjusted for any increase or decrease in the number of issued and outstanding shares of common stock resulting from a subdivision or consolidation of shares or the payment of a stock dividend, or any other increase or decrease in the number of issued and outstanding shares of common stock effected without receipt of consideration by us.

Restricted Stock and Restricted Stock Units

In lieu of granting options, we may enter into purchase agreements with employees under which they may purchase or otherwise acquire Restricted Stock or Restricted Stock Units subject to such vesting, transfer, and repurchase terms and restrictions as the AgeX Board or Committee may determine. We may permit employees or consultants who purchase Restricted Stock to pay for their shares by delivering a promissory note or an installment payment agreement that may be secured by a pledge of their Restricted Stock. We may also issue Restricted Stock for services actually performed by the recipient prior to the issuance of the Restricted Stock.

The AgeX Board or Committee may require that Restricted Stock shall be held by us or in escrow pending the expiration or release of the applicable restrictions. Unvested Restricted Stock for which we have not received payment may be forfeited to us, or we may have the right to repurchase unvested shares upon the occurrence of specified events, such as termination of employment.

Subject to the restrictions set by the AgeX Board or Committee, a recipient of Restricted Stock generally shall have the rights and privileges of a shareholder, including the right to vote the Restricted Stock and the right to receive dividends; provided that, any cash dividends and stock dividends with respect to the Restricted Stock shall be withheld by us for the recipient's account, and interest may be credited on the amount of the cash dividends withheld at a rate and subject to such terms as determined by the AgeX Board or Committee. The cash dividends or stock dividends so withheld and attributable to any particular share of Restricted Stock (and earnings thereon, if applicable) shall be distributed to the recipient in cash or, at the discretion of the AgeX Board or Committee, in common stock having a fair market value equal to the amount of such dividends, if applicable, upon the release of restrictions on the Restricted Stock and, if the Restricted Stock is forfeited, the recipient shall have no right to the dividends.

The terms and conditions of a grant of Restricted Stock Units shall be determined by the AgeX Board or Committee. No common stock shall be issued at the time a Restricted Stock Unit is granted, and we will not be required to set aside a fund for the payment of any such award. A recipient of Restricted Stock Units shall have no voting rights with respect to the Restricted Stock Units. Upon the expiration of the restrictions applicable to a Restricted Stock Unit, we will either issue to the recipient, without charge, one share of common stock per Restricted Stock Unit or cash in an amount equal to the fair market value of one share of common stock.

At the discretion of the AgeX Board or Committee, each Restricted Stock Unit (representing one share of common stock) may be credited with cash and stock dividends paid in respect of one share ("Dividend Equivalents"). Dividend Equivalents shall be withheld by us for the recipient's account, and interest may be credited on the amount of cash Dividend Equivalents withheld at a rate and subject to such terms as determined by the AgeX Board or Committee. Dividend Equivalents credited to a recipient's account and attributable to any particular Restricted Stock Unit (and earnings thereon, if applicable) shall be distributed in cash or, at the discretion of the AgeX Board or Committee, in common stock having a fair market value equal to the amount of the Dividend Equivalents and earnings, if applicable, upon settlement of the Restricted Stock Unit. If a Restricted Stock Unit is forfeited, the recipient shall have no right to the related Dividend Equivalents.

SARs

An SAR is the right to receive, upon exercise, an amount payable in cash or shares or a combination of shares and cash, as determined by the AgeX Board or Committee, equal to the number of shares subject to the SAR that is being exercised, multiplied by the excess of (a) the fair market value of a share of common stock on the date the SAR is exercised, over (b) the exercise price specified in the SAR Award agreement. SARs may be granted either as free standing SARs or in tandem with options, and with such terms and conditions as the AgeX Board or Committee may determine. No SAR may be exercised later than 10 years after the date of grant.

The exercise price of an SAR will be determined by the AgeX Board or Committee, but shall not be less than 100% of the fair market value of one share of common stock on the date of grant. An SAR granted in conjunction with an option shall have the same exercise price as the related option, shall be transferable only upon the same terms and conditions as the related option, and shall be exercisable only to the same extent as the related option; provided, however, that the SAR by its terms shall be exercisable only when the fair market value per share exceeds the exercise price per share of the SAR or related option. Upon any exercise of an SAR granted in tandem with an option, the number of shares for which the related option shall be exercisable shall be reduced by the number of shares for which the SAR has been exercised. The number of shares for which an SAR issued in tandem with an option shall be exercisable shall be reduced by the number of shares for which the related option has been exercised.

Withholding

To the extent provided by the terms of an Award Agreement or as may be approved by the AgeX Board or Committee, an optionee or recipient of a Restricted Stock or Restricted Stock Unit Award or SAR may satisfy any federal, state or local tax withholding obligation relating to the Award by any of the following means (in addition to our right to withhold from any compensation paid to the Award recipient) or by a combination of such means: (a) tendering a cash payment; (b) authorizing us to withhold shares of common stock from the shares otherwise issuable to the recipient as a result of the exercise or acquisition of shares under the Award, provided, however, that no shares are withheld with a value exceeding the minimum amount of tax required to be withheld by law; or (c) delivering to us previously owned and unencumbered shares of our common stock.

Changes in Shares Under the Incentive Plan

In the event of changes in the outstanding common stock or in our capital structure by reason of any stock or extraordinary cash dividend, stock split, reverse stock split, an extraordinary corporate transaction such as any recapitalization, reorganization, merger, consolidation, combination, exchange, or other relevant change in capitalization, the terms of Awards granted under the Plan, and the maximum number of shares subject to all Awards under the Plan or with respect to which any one person may be granted Awards during any one year period, will be equitably adjusted or substituted, as to the number, price or kind of shares or other consideration subject to the Awards to the extent necessary to preserve the economic intent of the Awards. In making such adjustments, the AgeX Board or Committee shall generally ensure that the adjustments will not constitute a modification, extension or renewal of an incentive stock option within the meaning of Section 424(h)(3) of the Code, and in the case of non-qualified options, ensure that any adjustments will not constitute a modification of such non-qualified options within the meaning of Section 409A of the Code, and that adjustments or substitutions of Awards intended to qualify as "performance-based compensation" under Section 162(m) of the Code will not cause us to be denied a tax deduction on account of Section 162(m) of the Code.

Restrictions on Transfers of Options

Under the Plan, stock options may be transferred to a limited class of defined "Permitted Transferees," such as the option holder's immediate family members, family trusts and family controlled companies. In addition, options may be transferred to a securities broker/dealer to exercise the options on the option holder's behalf as a means of the option holder obtaining the funds needed to exercise the option, provided that the fair market value of the shares being acquired exceeded the exercise price of the option at the close of the market on the trading day preceding the exercise date.

Repricing Prohibition

The Plan prohibits any modification of the purchase price or exercise price of an outstanding option or other Award if the change would effect a "repricing' without shareholder approval. As defined in the Plan, "repricing" means a reduction in the exercise price of an outstanding option or SAR or cancellation of an "underwater" or "out-of-the-money" Award in exchange for other Awards or cash. An "underwater" or "out-of-the-money" Award is defined to mean an Award for which the exercise price is less than the "fair market value" of our common stock. The fair market value will generally be determined by the AgeX Board, but if our common stock becomes publicly traded, the fair market value will be the closing price of the common stock on a national securities exchange or inter-dealer quotation system on which the common stock is traded.

Limitation on Share Recycling

Shares subject to an Award shall not again be made available for issuance or delivery under the Plan if those shares are (a) shares tendered in payment of an option, (b) shares delivered or withheld by us to satisfy any tax withholding obligation, (c) shares covered by a stock-settled SAR or other Award that were not issued upon the settlement of the Award, or (d) shares repurchased by us using the proceeds from option exercises. Only shares subject to an Award that is cancelled or forfeited or expires prior to exercise or realization may be regranted under the Plan.

The foregoing description of the Plan is qualified in its entirety by reference to the Plan, a copy of which is filed as an Exhibit to our Registration Statement on Form 10 and is incorporated herein by reference.

Equity Awards Outstanding at December 31, 2017

The following table summarizes certain information concerning outstanding stock options granted by us under the Plan and held by our Named Executive Officers as of December 31, 2017.

		Option Awards			
Name	Stock Option Plan Name	Number of Securities Underlying Unexercised Options Exercisable	Number of Securities Underlying Unexercised Options Unexercisable	Option Exercise Price	Option Expiration Date
Michael D. West	AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. 2017 Equity Incentive Plan	—	660,000(1)	$ 2.00	October 9, 2027
	LifeMap Sciences, Inc. 2011 Stock Option Plan	99,140	—	$ 1.75	September 30, 2020
	LifeMap Sciences, Inc. 2011 Stock Option Plan	44,642	—	$ 0.50	March 28, 2018
	ReCyte Therapeutics, Inc. 2011 Stock Option Plan	500,000	—	$ 2.05	December 28, 2020
Alfred D. Kingsley(2)	AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. 2017 Equity Incentive Plan	—	330,000(2)	$ 2.00	October 16, 2023
	LifeMap Sciences, Inc. 2011 Stock Option Plan	99,750(2)	—	$ 1.75	September 30, 2020
	LifeMap Sciences, Inc. 2011 Stock Option Plan	22,321	—	$ 0.50	March 28, 2018
	ReCyte Therapeutics, Inc. 2011 Stock Option Plan	250,000(2)	—	$ 2.05	December 28, 2020
Hal Sternberg	AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. 2017 Equity Incentive Plan	—	35,000(3)	$ 2.00	November 14, 2027

(1) One third of the options will vest upon completion of 12 full months of continuous service as an employee or director of AgeX or BioTime, measured from the date of grant, October 10, 2017, and the balance of the options vest in 24 equal monthly installments commencing on the first anniversary of the date of grant, based upon the completion of each month of continuous service as an employee or director of AgeX or BioTime.

(2) Mr. Kingsley resigned from all positions at AgeX effective October 15, 2018. Under the terms of his separation agreement with us, Mr. Kingsley's options to purchase 330,000 shares of our common stock vested as of October 15, 2018 and are exercisable until October 16, 2023. Mr. Kingsley's outstanding options issued by our subsidiaries remain exercisable pursuant to their terms following Mr. Kingsley's resignation.

(3) One fourth of the options will vest upon completion of 12 full months of continuous service as an employee of AgeX or BioTime, measured from the date of grant, November 15, 2017, and the balance of the options vest in 36 equal monthly installments commencing on the first anniversary of the date of grant, based upon the completion of each month of continuous service as an employee or director of AgeX or BioTime.

Compensation of Directors

Directors and members of committees of the Board of Directors who are our employees are entitled to receive compensation as employees but are not compensated for serving as directors or attending meetings of the Board of

Directors or committees of the Board. All directors are entitled to reimbursements for their out-of-pocket expenses incurred in attending meetings of the Board of Directors or committees of the Board of Directors.

Non-employee directors will receive as an annual fee options to purchase 35,000 shares of common stock under the Plan. The stock options granted will vest and become exercisable, in four equal quarterly installments, provided that the non-employee director remains a director on the last day of the applicable quarter. The options will expire if not exercised ten years from the date of grant; provided that in the event of termination of the director's continued service to the Company for any reason other than death or disability, the options will expire three months following the termination of continued service to the Company, and may be exercisable only up to the amount vested on the date of termination; and provided, that in the event of the director's death or disability, the options will expire if not exercised within the first year following cessation of continued service to the Company due to death or disability, and may be exercisable only up to the amount vested on the date of death or disability. Continued service shall mean providing service to the Company as an officer, employee, or director.

The following table summarizes certain information concerning the compensation paid during 2017 to Michael H. Mulroy, who is the only person who served as a director during the year ended December 31, 2017 who was not our employee on the date the compensation was earned.

Name	Fees Earned Or Paid in Cash	Option Awards [1]	All Other Compensation	Total
Michael H. Mulroy	$ —	$ 44,647[2]	$ —	$ 44,647

(1) Options granted vest and become exercisable in equal quarterly installments over a one-year period, provided that the director is an active member of the Board of Directors on the last day of any quarter end date, unless waived by the Board of Directors. Values are computed in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 718 and exclude the effect of estimated forfeitures. We used the Black-Sholes-Merton Pricing Model to compute option fair values based on applicable exercise and stock prices, an expected option term, volatility assumptions, and risk-free interest rates. See Note 6. Stock-Based Compensation to our historical audited consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement.

(2) Mr. Mulroy received options to purchase 35,000 shares of common stock on November 15, 2017 upon his appointment as a member of our Board of Directors. As of December 31, 2017, Mr. Mulroy had options to purchase 35,000 shares of our common stock and was our sole non-employee director.

Other Compensation Plans

We do not have any pension plans, defined benefit plans, or non-qualified deferred compensation plans. Our employees may hold 401(k) plan accounts through BioTime's accounts, though we make contributions to any such 401(k) plan accounts for participating executive officers and other employees.

SECURITY OWNERSHIP OF CERTAIN BENEFICIAL OWNERS AND MANAGEMENT

Following the consummation of the Juvenescence Transaction, BioTime owns 40.2% of our outstanding common stock and Juvenescence owns 45.8% of our outstanding common stock.

The following table sets forth information concerning beneficial ownership of our common stock, as of November 16, 2018 and following the Distribution, by:

- each of our stockholders who we believe (based on the assumptions described below) will beneficially own more than 5% of our outstanding common stock;
- each of our directors;
- each of the individuals to be our named executive officers; and
- all of our directors and executive officers as a group.

To the extent our directors and executive officers owned BioTime common shares at the Record Date, they will participate in the Distribution on the same terms as other holders of BioTime common shares. Except as otherwise noted in the notes to the table below, each person or entity identified in the table below has sole voting and investment power with respect to the securities owned by such person or entity. Beneficial ownership is determined in accordance with the rules of the SEC. Unless otherwise indicated, the address of each named person is c/o AgeX Therapeutics, Inc., 1010 Atlantic Avenue, Suite 102, Alameda, California 94501.

Immediately following the Distribution, we expect that 35,830,000 shares of our common stock will be issued and outstanding (excluding outstanding options to purchase common stock and warrants), based on the number of our common shares outstanding as of November 16, 2018, or the Record Date.

Name and Address of Beneficial Owner	Number of Shares Before Distribution	Percent of Total	Number of Shares After Distribution[1]	Percent of Total
Greater than 5% Stockholders:				
BioTime, Inc.	14,416,000	40.2%	1,728,268	4.8%
Juvenescence Ltd.	16,400,000	45.8%	16,400,000	45.8%
Directors and Named Executive Officers:				
Michael D. West [2]	275,000	*%	364,547	1.0%
Michael H. Mulroy [3]	35,000	*%	38,255	*%
John Mauldin [4]	151,250	*%	151,250	*%
Hal Sternberg [5]	10,208	*%	10,341	*%
Greg Bailey [6]	—	*%	—	*%
Annalisa Jenkins [7]	—	*%	—	*%
Directors and Executive Officers as a Group (6 persons) [8]	471,458	1.3%	564,393	1.6%

* Less than 1%

(1) Includes shares beneficially owned as of the Record Date and shares of our common stock that the executive officer or director is expected to receive in the Distribution on account of the BioTime common shares that they own as of the Record Date. The actual number of shares that the executive officer or director will receive in the Distribution on account of the BioTime common shares that they own will be determined on the Record Date.

(2) Includes 275,000 shares that may be acquired upon the exercise of certain stock options that are presently exercisable or that will become exercisable within 60 days of the Record Date. Excludes 885,000 shares that may be acquired upon the exercise of certain stock options that are not presently exercisable and that will not become exercisable within 60 days of the Record Date.

(3) Consists of shares of common stock that may be acquired upon the exercise of certain stock options that are presently exercisable or that will become exercisable within 60 days of the Record Date.

(4) Includes 26,250 shares that may be acquired upon the exercise of certain stock options that are presently exercisable or that will become exercisable within 60 days of the Record Date. Excludes 58,750 shares that may be acquired upon the exercise of certain stock options and warrants that are not presently exercisable and that will not become exercisable within 60 days of the Record Date.

(5) Includes 10,208 shares that may be acquired upon the exercise of certain stock options that are presently exercisable or that will become exercisable within 60 days of the Record Date. Excludes 39,792 shares that may be acquired upon the exercise of certain stock options that are not presently exercisable and that will not become exercisable within 60 days of the Record Date.

(6) Dr. Bailey was appointed as a member of our Board of Directors immediately upon the consummation of the Juvenescence Transaction and did not beneficially own any shares of our common stock as of the Record Date.

(7) Dr. Jenkins was appointed as a member of our Board of Directors in October and does not beneficially own any shares of our common stock as of the Record Date.

(8) Includes 346,458 shares that may be acquired upon the exercise of certain stock options that are presently exercisable or that will become exercisable within 60 days of the Record Date. Excludes 983,542 shares that may be acquired upon the exercise of certain stock options and warrants that are not presently exercisable and that will not become exercisable within 60 days of the Record Date. Also excludes 330,000 shares that may be acquired upon the exercise of certain stock options that are presently exercisable as of the Record Date held by Mr. Kingsley. Mr. Kingsley resigned from all positions at AgeX effective October 15, 2018.

CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS

Agreements with BioTime and its Subsidiaries

This section of the information statement summarizes material agreements between us and BioTime that will govern the ongoing relationships between us and BioTime after the Distribution and are intended to provide for an orderly transition to our status as an independent, publicly traded company. Additional or modified agreements, arrangements and transactions, which would be negotiated at arm's length, may be entered into between us and BioTime after the Distribution. These summaries are qualified in their entirety by reference to the full text of the applicable agreements, which are incorporated by reference into this information statement.

Asset Contribution Agreement

On August 17, 2017, we entered into the Asset Contribution Agreement which is described under "The Distribution—Background." BioTime contributed certain assets and cash to us in exchange for 28,800,000 shares of our common stock pursuant to the Asset Contribution Agreement. Concurrently with the acquisition of assets from BioTime under the Asset Contribution Agreement, we sold 4,950,000 shares of common stock for $10.0 million in cash primarily to investors other than BioTime, which included $1.2 million from the Chairman of BioTime's Board of Directors and $32,000 from BioTime. At the close of the financing, BioTime owned 85.4% of our issued and outstanding shares of common stock. The Asset Contribution Agreement and other transactions with BioTime were completed between entities under common control. Accordingly, the contributed assets and liabilities are recorded at historical carrying values. See Note 4. Related Party Transactions to our historical audited consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement.

Certain License and Sublicense Agreements

Concurrently with the contribution of assets to us under the Asset Contribution Agreement, we entered into certain license and sublicense agreements with BioTime or certain of its subsidiaries the terms of which are described under "Business—License Agreement With BioTime: iTR, PureStem® and Telomere Length" and "Business—Additional License and Sublicense Agreements."

Shared Facilities Agreement and Relationship with BioTime

On August 17, 2017, AgeX and BioTime executed a Shared Facilities Agreement, or the Shared Facilities Agreement. Under the terms of the Shared Facilities Agreement, BioTime will allow AgeX to use its premises and equipment located at Alameda, California for the sole purpose of conducting business. BioTime will also provide accounting, billing, bookkeeping, payroll, treasury, payment of accounts payable, and other similar administrative services to AgeX. BioTime may also provide the services of attorneys, accountants, and other professionals who may also provide professional services to BioTime and its other subsidiaries. BioTime will also provide AgeX with the services of its laboratory and research personnel, including BioTime employees and contractors, for the performance of research and development work for AgeX at the premises.

BioTime charges AgeX a Use Fee for services received and usage of facilities, equipment, and supplies. For each billing period, BioTime prorates and allocates costs incurred, as applicable, to AgeX, such costs include services of BioTime employees, equipment, insurance, lease, professional, software, supplies and utilities. Allocation depends on key cost drivers including actual documented use, square footage of facilities used, time spent, costs incurred by or for AgeX, or upon proportionate usage by BioTime and AgeX, as reasonably estimated by BioTime, collectively referred to as Use Fees. BioTime, at its discretion, has the right to charge AgeX a 5% markup on such allocated costs and BioTime has charged this markup since the inception of the Shared Facilities Agreement. The allocated cost of BioTime employees and contractors who provide services is based upon records maintained of the number of hours or percentage of time of such personnel devoted to the performance of services.

The Use Fee is determined and invoiced to AgeX on a monthly basis for each calendar month of each calendar year. If the Shared Facilities Agreement terminates prior to the last day of a billing period, the Use Fee will be determined for the number of days in the billing period elapsed prior to the termination of the Shared Facilities Agreement. Each invoice will be payable in full by AgeX within 30 days after receipt. Any invoice, or portion thereof, not paid in full when due will bear interest at the rate of 15% per annum until paid, unless the failure to make a payment is due to any inaction or delay in making a payment by BioTime employees from AgeX funds available for such purpose, rather than from the unavailability of sufficient funds legally available for payment or from an act, omission, or delay by any employee or agent of AgeX. To date, BioTime has not charged AgeX any interest.

In addition to the Use Fees, AgeX will reimburse BioTime for any out of pocket costs incurred by BioTime for the purchase of office supplies, laboratory supplies, and other goods and materials and services for the account or use of AgeX, provided that invoices documenting such costs are delivered to AgeX with each invoice for the Use Fee. Furthermore, BioTime will have no obligation to purchase or acquire any office supplies or other goods and materials or any services for AgeX, and if any such supplies, goods, materials or services are obtained for AgeX, BioTime may arrange for the suppliers thereof to invoice AgeX directly.

The Shared Facilities Agreement, as amended, will remain in effect from year to year, unless (a) either party gives the other party written six months' notice to terminate, which BioTime may not give to AgeX prior to September 1, 2020, or (b) the agreement is otherwise terminated under another provision of the agreement.

In aggregate, BioTime charged such Use Fees to AgeX and subsidiaries as follows (in thousands):

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2017	**2016**
Research and development	$ 1,065	$ 453
General and administrative	615	800
Total Use Fees	$ 1,680	$ 1,253

As of December 31, 2017, and 2016, AgeX had $0.2 million and $23.2 million outstanding and related party payables due to BioTime included in current liabilities on the consolidated balance sheets. See Note 4. Related Party Transactions to our historical audited consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement.

The foregoing description of the Shared Facilities Agreement is qualified in its entirety by reference to the Shared Facilities Agreement, a copy of which is filed as an exhibit to our Registration Statement on Form 10 and is incorporated herein by reference.

Employee Matters Agreement

We entered into an Employee Matters Agreement with BioTime that governs the respective rights, responsibilities and obligations of BioTime and us after the Distribution with respect to transferred employees, defined contribution plans, employee health and welfare benefit plans, incentive plans, and other employment, compensation and benefits-related matters. The Employee Matters Agreement provides for, among other things, the allocation and treatment of assets and liabilities arising out of incentive plans, retirement plans and employee health and welfare benefit plans in which certain of our employees participated prior to the Distribution.

Tax Matters Agreement

We entered into a Tax Matters Agreement with BioTime that governs the parties' respective rights, responsibilities and obligations with respect to tax liabilities and benefits, tax attributes, the preparation and filing of tax returns, allocation of tax refunds, the control of audits and other tax proceedings and other matters regarding taxes while we were part of a consolidated group with BioTime for income tax purposes, and after our deconsolidation from BioTime's consolidated tax group, for any tax period ending on or before the Distribution Date, as well as tax periods beginning before and ending after the Distribution Date.

In general, the Tax Matters Agreement allocates taxes between BioTime and the subsidiary companies that comprise its consolidated group or the "BioTime Group" on the one hand and AgeX and our subsidiaries or the "AgeX Group" on the other hand. BioTime will be responsible for any U.S. federal, state and local taxes (and any related interest, penalties or audit adjustments) for the BioTime Group, and we will be responsible for any U.S. federal, state and local taxes (and any related interest, penalties or audit adjustments) for the AgeX Group for any periods or portions thereof beginning on or after August 31, 2018 based on certain assumptions, including that the AgeX Group is not included in the BioTime consolidated tax returns. BioTime will also determine the extent to which certain tax attributes attributable to the BioTime Group resulted in tax savings to the AgeX Group and we will pay the amount of that tax savings to BioTime, or if tax attributes attributable to the AgeX Group resulted in tax savings to the BioTime Group, BioTime will pay the amount of that tax savings to us. The Tax Matters Agreement also may provide special rules for allocating tax liabilities resulting from the Distribution.

Related Party Payables

Since inception, ReCyte Therapeutics, LifeMap Sciences and LifeMap Solutions, former subsidiaries of BioTime, had accumulated related party payables due to BioTime, mainly comprised of working capital advances and shared services provided under the Shared Facilities Agreement that BioTime had performed for the benefit of, and charged to these subsidiaries. Shared services under the Shared Facilities Agreement included both services and facilities provided by BioTime, as applicable, including space for research, laboratory and administrative offices, administrative and financial services such as human resources, general bookkeeping, payroll and financial reporting. As of December 31, 2016, the aggregate related party payables due to BioTime for these working capital advances and Shared Services amounted to $23.2 million included in current liabilities on the consolidated balance sheets.

On June 6, 2017, in contemplation of capitalizing the Company, BioTime agreed to settle or cancel these related party payable balances with these subsidiaries as follows:

- For settlement and cancellation of related party payables owed by LifeMap Sciences, (i) BioTime increased its ownership in LifeMap Sciences from 78% to 82% for additional shares of common stock issued to BioTime, (ii) LifeMap Sciences canceled or terminated certain license agreements with BioTime and transferred other intangible assets to BioTime, and (iii) BioTime obtained a direct 100% ownership interest in LifeMap Solutions, of which 78% was previously indirectly owned by BioTime through LifeMap Sciences (the "LifeMap Sciences Settlement"). Accordingly, as a result of the LifeMap Sciences Settlement, AgeX recorded $13.4 million as additional paid-in capital from BioTime, which was primarily comprised of (i) settlement of the $8.8 million related party payable by LifeMap Sciences, (ii) a $4.4 million net gain on the transfer of LifeMap Solutions to BioTime on June 6, 2017, principally related to the transfer of a related party payable by LifeMap Solutions to BioTime as of that date, and (iii) a $0.2 million proportional equity transfer, at carrying value, from noncontrolling interest to the equity of AgeX, included in the historical audited consolidated statements of shareholders' equity for the year ended December 31, 2017.

- BioTime agreed to cancel approximately $11.2 million of related party payable by ReCyte Therapeutics due to BioTime, resulting in the reclassification of the related party payable to additional paid-in capital from BioTime included in the consolidated statements of shareholders' equity for the year ended December 31, 2017. Since there was no change in ownership percentage in ReCyte Therapeutics held by BioTime, there was no impact to noncontrolling interest for this transaction.

See Note 4. Related Party Transactions to our historical audited consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this information statement.

Registration Rights Agreement

We have agreed to register for sale under the Securities Act certain shares of common stock, including all shares held by Juvenescence as well as shares of common stock that may be purchased upon the exercise of certain warrants that we sold to certain investors without registration under the Securities Act. We have agreed to file a registration statement, including on Form S-3 once we are eligible to use such form for offerings on a delayed or continuous basis, covering those shares following a written request for registration from any holder or group of holders of not less than 50% of the shares covered by the Registration Rights Agreement, but not earlier than one year after we complete the Distribution. We are obligated to pay the fees and expenses of each registered offering under such registration rights agreement except for underwriting discounts and commissions.

Sales of Warrants

On July 10, 2018, we sold warrants to purchase 526,400 shares of common stock for $0.50 per warrant for aggregate net cash proceeds of $263,200. On February 28, 2018, we sold warrants to purchase 1,473,600 shares of common stock for $0.50 per warrant for aggregate net cash proceeds of $736,800. As part of the February 28, 2018 offering, Alfred D. Kingsley, our former Executive Chairman, purchased warrants entitling him to purchase 248,600 shares of AgeX common stock at an exercise price of 2.50 per share. We received $124,300, or $0.50 per warrant, from Mr. Kingsley. See Note 9. Subsequent Events to our historical audited consolidated financial statements for more information.

Approval by the Board of Directors

All of the transactions described above were reviewed directly by the Board of Directors, and the Board of Directors determined whether to approve or withhold approval of each transaction. The Board of Directors applied such criteria as it determined to be appropriate in connection with its evaluation of each proposed transaction on a transaction by transaction basis, and did not have any written guidelines governing the Board of Directors' exercise of its discretion. The directors considered such factors as they deemed relevant to the particular transaction.

Related Person Transaction Policy

We have adopted a Related Person Transaction Policy that applies to transactions exceeding $120,000 in which any of our officers, directors, beneficial owners of more than 5% of our common shares, or any member of their immediate family, has a direct or indirect material interest, determined in accordance with the policy, each of which we refer to as Related Person Transaction. A Related Person Transaction must be reported to our outside legal counsel and our Chief Financial Officer, and will be subject to review and approval by our Audit Committee prior to effectiveness or consummation, to the extent practical. In addition, any Related Person Transaction that is ongoing in nature will be reviewed by the Audit Committee annually to ensure that the transaction has been conducted in accordance with any previous approval and that all required disclosures regarding the transaction are made.

The Audit Committee will review all relevant information available to it about a Related Person Transaction. The Audit Committee may approve or ratify the Related Person Transaction only if the Audit Committee determines that, under all of the circumstances, the transaction is in, or is not in conflict with, our best interests. The Audit Committee may, in its sole discretion, impose such conditions as it deems appropriate on us or the Related Person in connection with approval of the Related Person Transaction.

As appropriate for the circumstances, the Audit Committee will review and consider:

- the interest of the officer, director, beneficial owner of more than 5% of our common shares, or any member of their immediate family, each of which we refer to as a Related Person, in the Related Person Transaction;
- the approximate dollar value of the amount involved in the Related Person Transaction;
- the approximate dollar value of the amount of the Related Person's interest in the transaction without regard to the amount of any profit or loss;
- whether the transaction was undertaken in the ordinary course of our business;
- whether the transaction with the Related Person is proposed to be, or was, entered into on terms no less favorable to us than terms that could have been reached with an unrelated third party;
- the purpose of, and the potential benefits to the transaction to us; and
- any other information regarding the Related Person Transaction or the Related Person in the context of the proposed transaction that would be material to investors in light of the circumstances of the particular transaction.

A copy of our Related Person Transaction Policy will be posted on our website at *www.AgeX.com* concurrently with the Distribution.

CERTAIN FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSIDERATIONS

Material U.S. Federal Income Tax Consequences of the Distribution

The following is a summary of the material U.S. federal income tax consequences to U.S. Holders (as defined below) of shares of BioTime common stock in connection with the Distribution and certain related transactions. This summary is based on the Code, the Treasury Regulations promulgated thereunder and judicial and administrative interpretations thereof, in each case as in effect and available as of the date of this information statement, and all of which are subject to change at any time, possibly with retroactive effect. Any such change could affect the tax consequences described below.

This summary is limited to holders of BioTime common stock that are "U.S. Holders" (as defined below) who hold their shares of BioTime common stock as capital assets. A U.S. Holder is a beneficial owner of BioTime common stock that is, for U.S. federal income tax purposes:

- an individual who is a citizen or a resident of the United States;
- a corporation, or other entity taxable as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes, created or organized under the laws of the United States or any state thereof or the District of Columbia;
- an estate, the income of which is subject to U.S. federal income taxation regardless of its source; or
- a trust, if (i) a court within the United States is able to exercise primary jurisdiction over its administration and one or more United States persons have the authority to control all of its substantial decisions, or (ii) that has a valid election is in place under applicable Treasury Regulations to be treated as a United States person.

This summary does not discuss all tax considerations that may be relevant to U.S. Holders in light of their particular circumstances, nor does it address the consequences to shareholders subject to special treatment under the U.S. federal income tax laws, such as:

- dealers or traders in securities or currencies;
- broker-dealers;
- persons acting as nominees or otherwise not as beneficial owners;
- regulated investment companies;

- real estate investment trusts;
- banks, financial institutions or insurance companies;
- persons who acquired BioTime common stock pursuant to the exercise of employee stock options or otherwise as compensation;
- tax-exempt entities;
- shareholders who own, or are deemed to own, at least 10% or more, by voting power or value, of BioTime equity;
- holders owning BioTime common stock as part of a position in a straddle or as part of a hedging, conversion or other risk reduction transaction for U.S. federal income tax purposes;
- certain former citizens or long-term residents of the United States;
- holders who are subject to the alternative minimum tax;
- pass-through entities (such as entities treated as partnerships for U.S. federal income tax purposes), or persons that own BioTime common stock through partnerships or other pass-through entities, including any persons subject to Section 1061 of the Code.

This summary does not address any state, local or foreign tax consequences, or any estate, gift or other non-income tax consequences. If a partnership (or any other entity treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes) holds BioTime common stock, the tax treatment of a partner in that partnership will generally depend on the status of the partner and the activities of the partnership. Such a partner or partnership should consult its own tax advisor as to its tax consequences.

The following discussion does not purport to address the U.S. federal income tax position of any individual taxpayer, and does not include any matters of state or local tax laws or regulations, or any matters of any tax laws or regulations of any country other than the United States of America. The following discussion is not and should not be construed to be tax advice to any BioTime shareholder or any recipient of any AgeX common stock.

All BioTime shareholders should consult their own tax advisors concerning the specific tax consequences of the Distribution to them in light of their particular circumstances. This summary is not intended to be, nor should it be construed to be, legal or tax advice to any BioTime shareholder or recipient of AgeX common stock

A U.S. Holder receiving AgeX common stock in the Distribution will be treated as receiving a distribution to the extent of the fair market value of the AgeX common stock received on the Distribution Date. That distribution will be treated as taxable dividend income to the extent of such U.S. Holder's ratable share of BioTime's current and accumulated earnings and profits, if any (including any additional earnings and profits recognized by BioTime as a result of the Distribution). Any amount that exceeds BioTime's earnings and profits will be treated first as a tax-free return of capital to the extent of the U.S. Holder's adjusted tax basis in its shares of BioTime common stock (thus reducing such adjusted tax basis) with any remaining amounts being treated as capital gain. Such capital gain will be long term capital gain if the holder's holding period for the shares of BioTime common stock exceeded one year at the Distribution Date. Any such taxable dividend income and capital gain should be included in the U.S. Holder's income in the taxable year in which the distribution is received.

A U.S. Holder's tax basis in shares of AgeX common stock received in the Distribution generally will equal the fair market value of such shares on the Distribution Date, and the holding period for such shares will begin the day after the Distribution Date. The holding period for the U.S. Holder's shares of BioTime common stock will not be affected by the fact that the Distribution was taxable, and the adjusted tax basis in such shares will be affected to the extent described in the preceding paragraph. Corporate U.S. Holders may be entitled to a dividends-received deduction with respect to the distribution for U.S. federal income tax purposes, subject to limitations and requirements. Corporate U.S. Holders should be aware that under certain circumstances, a corporation that receives an "extraordinary dividend" (as defined in Section 1059 of the Code) is required to (i) reduce its tax basis (but not below zero) by the portion of such dividend that is not taxed because of the dividends received deduction and (ii) treat the non-taxed portion of such dividend as gain from the sale or exchange of BioTime common stock for the taxable year in which such dividend is received (to the extent that the non-taxed portion of such dividend exceeds such holder's tax basis).

Individual and certain other non-corporate U.S. Holders may qualify for preferential rates of taxation with respect to their taxable dividend income, provided that a minimum holding period and other requirements are satisfied. Such U.S. Holders who receive an "extraordinary dividend" will be required to treat any losses on the sale of BioTime common stock as long-term capital losses to the extent such taxable dividend income received by them qualifies for preferential rates of taxation.

U.S. Holders should consult their tax advisors with respect to the potential application of the extraordinary dividend rules to the distribution of shares of AgeX common stock.

Tax Matters Agreement

BioTime and AgeX have entered into a Tax Matters Agreement that governs the parties' respective rights, responsibilities and obligations with respect to tax liabilities and benefits, tax attributes, the preparation and filing of tax returns, allocation of tax refunds, the control of audits and other tax proceedings and other matters regarding taxes. The Tax Matters Agreement also will provide special rules for allocating tax liabilities resulting from the Distribution. For a more detailed discussion, see "Certain Relationships and Related Person Transactions—Agreements with BioTime and its Subsidiaries—Tax Matters Agreement." Our indemnification obligations to BioTime and its subsidiaries, officers and directors are not limited in amount or subject to any cap. If we are required to indemnify BioTime and its subsidiaries and their respective officers and directors under the circumstances set forth in the tax matters agreement, we may be subject to substantial liabilities.

Backup Withholding and Information Reporting

In general, information reporting requirements will apply to payments of dividends on BioTime common stock held by U.S. Holders, unless the shareholder provides proof of an applicable exemption or an exception applies. Such payments that are subject to information reporting may also be subject to backup withholding (currently at a rate of 24 percent), unless the U.S. Holder (1) is an exempt recipient or (2) provides a certificate (generally on an IRS Form W-9) containing the holder's name, address, correct federal taxpayer identification number and statement that the holder is a U.S. person and is not subject to backup withholding. Some U.S. Holders, including corporations, may be exempt from backup withholding and information reporting. Any backup withholding tax with respect to the Distribution must be remitted in cash to the IRS. A U.S. Holder's broker or other applicable withholding agent may obtain the funds necessary to remit such withholding tax by selling (on the U.S. Holder's behalf) shares of AgeX common stock that such U.S. Holder would otherwise receive in the Distribution. Such holder may bear brokerage or other costs for this withholding procedure. Backup withholding does not constitute an additional tax, but merely an advance payment, which may be refunded or credited against a shareholder's U.S. federal income tax liability, provided the required information is timely supplied to the IRS.

The preceding is a summary of the anticipated U.S. federal income tax consequences of the Distribution. BioTime's shareholders should consult their own tax advisors as to the specific tax consequences of the spin-off to them, including the application and effect of state, local or non-U.S. tax laws and of changes in applicable tax laws.

DESCRIPTION OF SECURITIES

The following description of certain terms of our common stock and preferred stock as it will be in effect upon completion of the Distribution is a summary and is qualified in its entirety by reference to our articles of incorporation and bylaws, which are filed as exhibits to the Registration Statement on Form 10 of which this information statement forms a part, and by the Delaware General Corporation Law. See "Where You Can Find More Information."

Under "Description of Securities," "we," "us," "our" and the "Company" refer to AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. and not to any of its subsidiaries.

Common Stock

Our Articles of Incorporation currently authorize the issuance of up to 100,000,000 shares of common stock, par value $0.0001 per share, of which 35,830,000 shares were outstanding at November 16, 2018. As of November 16, 2018, there were 10 holders of record of our common stock, but following the completion of the Distribution we expect that there will be approximately 274 holders of record of our common stock based on the share position listings of BioTime as of November 16, 2018 and the expected distribution ratio. Each holder of record of common stock is entitled to one vote for each outstanding share owned, on every matter properly submitted to the stockholders for their vote, including election or removal of directors elected by our stockholders generally. The holders of our common stock do not have cumulative voting rights in the election of directors.

Subject to the dividend rights of holders of any of the preferred stock that may be issued from time to time, holders of common stock are entitled to any dividend declared by the Board of Directors out of funds legally available for that purpose. We have not paid any cash dividends on our common stock, and it is unlikely that any cash dividends will be declared or paid on our common stock in the foreseeable future. Instead, we plan to retain our cash for use in financing our future operations and growth.

Subject to the prior payment of the liquidation preference to holders of any preferred stock that may be issued, holders of common stock are entitled to receive on a pro rata basis all of our remaining assets available for distribution to the holders of common stock in the event of the liquidation, dissolution, or winding up of our operations Holders of our common stock do not have preemptive, subscription, redemption or conversion rights. There will be no redemption or sinking fund provisions applicable to the common stock. The rights, powers, preferences and privileges of holders of our common stock will be subject to those of the holders of any shares of our preferred stock we may authorize and issue in the future.

Transfer Agent

The transfer agent and registrar for our common stock is American Stock Transfer and Trust Company, LLC, 6201 15th Avenue, Brooklyn, New York 11219.

Preferred Stock

Our Articles of Incorporation currently authorize the issuance of up to 5,000,000 shares of preferred stock, par value $0.0001 per share. We may issue preferred stock in one or more series, at any time, with such rights, preferences, privileges and restrictions as the Board of Directors may determine, all without further action of our shareholders. Any series of preferred stock which may be authorized by the Board of Directors in the future may be senior to and have greater rights and preferences than the common stock. There are no shares of preferred stock presently outstanding and we have no present plan, arrangement, or commitment to issue any preferred stock.

Transfer Agent and Registrar

The transfer agent and registrar for our common stock is American Stock Transfer & Trust Company. The transfer agent's address is 6201 15th Avenue, Brooklyn, NY 11219.

Listing

We have applied for listing of our common stock on the NYSE American under the ticker symbol "AGE" in connection with the Distribution.

WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

We have filed a Registration Statement on Form 10 with the SEC with respect to the shares of common stock that BioTime shareholders will receive in the distribution. This information statement does not contain all of the information contained in the Registration Statement on Form 10 and the exhibits and schedules to the Registration Statement on Form 10. Some items are omitted in accordance with the rules and regulations of the SEC. For additional information relating to us and the Distribution, reference is made to the Registration Statement on Form 10 and the exhibits to the Registration Statement on Form 10, which are on file at the offices of the SEC. Statements contained in this information statement as to the contents of any contract or other document referred to are not necessarily complete and in each instance, if the contract or document is filed as an exhibit, reference is made to the copy of the contract or other documents filed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement on Form 10. Each statement is qualified in all respects by the relevant reference.

You may inspect and copy the Registration Statement on Form 10 and the exhibits to the Registration Statement on Form 10 that we have filed with the SEC at the SEC's Public Reference Room at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549. Please call the SEC at (800) SEC-0330 for further information on the Public Reference Room. In addition, the SEC maintains an Internet site at www.sec.gov, from which you can electronically access the Registration Statement on Form 10, including the exhibits and schedules to the Registration Statement on Form 10.

Our Internet site and the information contained on that site, or accessible through that site, are not incorporated into the information statement or the Registration Statement on Form 10.

As a result of the Distribution, we will be required to comply with the full informational requirements of the Exchange Act. We will fulfill our obligations with respect to these requirements by filing periodic reports and other information with the SEC.

We plan to make available, free of charge, on our Internet site our Annual Reports on Form 10-K, Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q, Current Reports on Form 8-K, reports filed pursuant to Section 16 of the Exchange Act and amendments to those reports as soon as reasonably practicable after we electronically file or furnish such materials to the SEC.

You should rely only on the information contained in this information statement or to which we have referred you. We have not authorized any person to provide you with different information or to make any representation not contained in this information statement.

AGEX THERAPEUTICS, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES
INDEX TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

AUDITED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS:	
Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm	F-2
Consolidated Balance Sheets	F-3
Consolidated Statements of Operations	F-4
Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Loss	F-5
Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity (Deficit)	F-6
Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows	F-7
Notes to the Consolidated Financial Statements	F-8 - F-38
UNAUDITED CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED INTERIM FINANCIAL STATEMENTS:	
Condensed Consolidated Balance Sheets	F-39
Condensed Consolidated Statements of Operations	F-40
Condensed Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Loss	F-41
Condensed Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity	F-42
Condensed Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows	F-43
Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements	F-44 - F-56

REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

Stockholders and Board of Directors
AgeX Therapeutics, Inc.
Alameda, California

Opinion on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. (the "Company") as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, the related consolidated statements of operations, comprehensive loss, stockholders' equity (deficit), and cash flows for each of the two years in the period ended December 31, 2017, and the related notes (collectively referred to as the "consolidated financial statements"). In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company at December 31, 2017 and 2016, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for each of the two years in the period ended December 31, 2017**,** in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Basis for Opinion

These consolidated financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's consolidated financial statements based on our audits. We are a public accounting firm registered with the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) ("PCAOB") and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the consolidated financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. The Company is not required to have, nor were we engaged to perform, an audit of its internal control over financial reporting. As part of our audits we are required to obtain an understanding of internal control over financial reporting but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion.

Our audits included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the consolidated financial statements. Our audits also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the consolidated financial statements. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

/s/ OUM & CO. LLP

San Francisco, California
June 8, 2018
We have served as the Company's auditor since 2017.

AGEX THERAPEUTICS, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES
CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS
(IN THOUSANDS, EXCEPT PAR VALUE AMOUNTS)

	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016
ASSETS		
CURRENT ASSETS		
Cash and cash equivalents	$ 7,375	$ 259
Accounts receivable, net	107	308
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	111	121
Total current assets	7,593	688
Equipment and furniture, net	129	195
Deposits and other long-term assets	35	39
Intangible assets, net	1,874	2,301
TOTAL ASSETS	$ 9,631	$ 3,223
LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY (DEFICIT)		
CURRENT LIABILITIES		
Accounts payable and accrued liabilities	$ 768	$ 2,087
Related party payables to BioTime	210	23,166
Deferred revenues	180	264
Other current liabilities	154	81
TOTAL LIABILITIES	1,312	25,598
Commitments and contingencies (Note 8)		
SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY (DEFICIT)		
Preferred shares, $0.0001 par value, authorized 5,000 shares; none issued and outstanding as of December 31, 2017 and 2016	-	-
Common shares, $0.0001 par value, 100,000 shares authorized; 33,750 and 28,800 shares issued and outstanding as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively (Notes 2 and 5)	3	3
Additional paid-in capital	73,761	36,492
Accumulated other comprehensive income	68	58
Accumulated deficit	(66,552)	(59,972)
AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. shareholders' equity (deficit)	7,280	(23,419)
Noncontrolling interest	1,039	1,044
Total shareholders' equity (deficit)	8,319	(22,375)
TOTAL LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY (DEFICIT)	$ 9,631	$ 3,223

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.

AGEX THERAPEUTICS, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS
(IN THOUSANDS, EXCEPT PER SHARE DATA)

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2017	**2016**
REVENUES:		
Subscription and advertisement revenues	$ 1,399	$ 980
Service and other revenues	5	686
Total revenues	1,404	1,666
Cost of sales	(168)	(304)
Gross profit	1,236	1,362
OPERATING EXPENSES:		
Research and development	(5,784)	(8,479)
General and administrative	(3,869)	(5,622)
Total operating expenses	(9,653)	(14,101)
Gain on sale of assets	1,754	-
Loss from operations	(6,663)	(12,739)
OTHER INCOME/(EXPENSE):		
Interest expense, net	(12)	(25)
AgeX's share of losses and impairment in equity method investment in Ascendance	-	(4,671)
Other income, net	38	80
Total other income (expense), net	26	(4,616)
NET LOSS	(6,637)	(17,355)
Net loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	57	1,863
NET LOSS ATTRIBUTABLE TO AGEX THERAPEUTICS, INC.	$ (6,580)	$ (15,492)
NET LOSS PER COMMON SHARE: BASIC AND DILUTED	$ (0.21)	$ (0.54)
WEIGHTED AVERAGE NUMBER OF SHARES OF COMMON STOCK OUTSTANDING: BASIC AND DILUTED	30,644	28,800

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.

AGEX THERAPEUTICS, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE LOSS
(IN THOUSANDS)

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2017	**2016**
NET LOSS	$ (6,637)	$ (17,355)
Other comprehensive income, net of tax:		
Foreign currency translation gain	10	66
COMPREHENSIVE LOSS	(6,627)	(17,289)
Less: Comprehensive loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	57	1,863
COMPREHENSIVE LOSS ATTRIBUTABLE TO AGEX THERAPEUTICS, INC.	$ (6,570)	$ (15,426)

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.

AGEX THERAPEUTICS, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY (DEFICIT)
(IN THOUSANDS)

	Common Shares		Additional Paid-In	Accumulated	Noncontrolling	Accumulated Other Comprehensive	
	Shares	Par Value	Capital	Deficit	Interest	Income/(Loss)	Total
BALANCE AT DECEMBER 31, 2015	28,800[1]	$ 3[1]	$ 33,059	$ (44,480)	$ 1,913	$ (8)	$ (9,513)
Contributions from BioTime	-	-	2,798	-	-	-	2,798
Stock-based compensation allocated from BioTime	-	-	649	-	-	-	649
Transactions with noncontrolling interests	-	-	(14)	-	14	-	-
Stock-based compensation in subsidiaries	-	-	-	-	980	-	980
Foreign currency translation gain	-	-	-	-	-	66	66
Net loss	-	-		(15,492)	(1,863)	-	(17,355)
BALANCE AT DECEMBER 31, 2016	28,800	$ 3	$ 36,492	$ (59,972)	$ 1,044	$ 58	$(22,375)
Cancellation of related party payable to BioTime by ReCyte Therapeutics	-	-	11,177	-	-	-	11,177
Issuance of AgeX option for BioTime common stock	-	-	100	-	-	-	100
Issuance of common stock to investors other than BioTime	4,934	-	9,868	-	-	-	9,868
Issuance of common stock to BioTime	16	-	32	-	-	-	32
Settlement of related party payables to BioTime by LifeMap Sciences and LifeMap Solutions for common stock and certain assets, including $4.4 million gain on transfer of LifeMap Solutions to BioTime and proportional equity transfer from noncontrolling interest	-	-	13,398	-	(175)	-	13,223
Contributions from BioTime	-	-	2,169	-	-	-	2,169
	-	-	411	-	-	-	411

Stock-based compensation allocated from BioTime							
Stock-based compensation	-	-	114	-	-	-	114
Stock-based compensation in subsidiaries	-	-	-	-	227	-	227
Foreign currency translation gain	-	-	-	-	-	10	10
Net loss	-	-	-	(6,580)	(57)	-	(6,637)
BALANCE AT DECEMBER 31, 2017	33,750	$ 3	$ 73,761	$ (66,552)	$ 1,039	$ 68	$ 8,319

(1) For carve-out presentation and financial reporting purposes, the 28.8 million shares of AgeX common stock issued to BioTime and the related par value are assumed to be issued and outstanding from the beginning of the earliest period presented (see Notes 2 and 5).

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.

AGEX THERAPEUTICS, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS
(IN THOUSANDS)

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2017	**2016**
CASH FLOWS FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES:		
Net loss attributable to AgeX Therapeutics, Inc.	$ (6,580)	$ (15,492)
Net loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	(57)	(1,863)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss attributable to AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. to net cash used in operating activities:		
AgeX's share of losses and impairment of equity method investment in Ascendance	-	4,671
Gain on sale of assets	(1,754)	-
Depreciation expense	165	238
Amortization of intangible assets	517	607
Amortization of deferred license fees	17	25
Stock-based compensation of AgeX share-based plans	114	-
Stock-based compensation allocated from BioTime	411	649
Stock-based compensation in subsidiaries	227	980
Bad debt expense	(121)	442
Other	-	9
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:		
Accounts receivable and other receivables	322	(57)
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	10	27
Accounts payable and accrued liabilities	267	1,240
Deferred revenues	(84)	132
Other	261	(35)
Net cash used in operating activities	(6,285)	(8,427)
CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES:		
Purchase of equipment	(1)	(23)
Disposition of LifeMap Solutions cash and cash equivalents	(3)	-
Security deposit received (paid)	9	(5)
Net cash provided by (used in) investing activities	5	(28)
CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES:		
Contributions from BioTime	1,971	2,447
Advances from BioTime	1,304	4,807
Proceeds from issuance of common shares and option	10,000	-
Net cash provided by financing activities	13,275	7,254
Effect of exchange rate changes on cash and cash equivalents	121	(36)
NET INCREASE (DECREASE) IN CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS	7,116	(1,237)
CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS:		
At beginning of year:	259	1,496
At end of year:	$ 7,375	$ 259
SUPPLEMENTAL DISCLOSURE OF CASH FLOW INFORMATION:		
Cash paid during year for interest	$ 9	$ 6
SUPPLEMENTAL SCHEDULE OF NONCASH FINANCING AND INVESTING ACTIVITIES:		
	13,223	-

Settlement of related party payable due to BioTime by LifeMap Sciences and LifeMap Solutions in exchange for common stock, certain assets, and transfer of LifeMap Solutions to BioTime, including proportional equity transfer from noncontrolling interest (see Notes 1 and 4)		
Cancellation of related party payable due to BioTime by ReCyte Therapeutics (see Note 4)	11,177	-
Settlement of related party payable due to BioTime with marketable securities held by LifeMap Sciences, Ltd.	-	748

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.

1. Organization, Basis of Presentation and Liquidity

AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. ("AgeX") was incorporated in January 2017 in the state of Delaware as a subsidiary of BioTime, Inc. ("BioTime"), a publicly traded, clinical-stage biotechnology company targeting degenerative diseases. BioTime common stock trades on the NYSE American and Tel Aviv Stock Exchange under the symbol "BTX".

AgeX is a biotechnology company focused on the development and commercialization of novel therapeutics targeting human aging. AgeX's initial discovery and pre-clinical programs focus on utilizing brown adipose tissue ("brown fat") in targeting diabetes, obesity, and heart disease; and induced tissue regeneration ("iTR") in utilizing the human body's own abilities to scarlessly regenerate tissues damaged from age or trauma. AgeX may also pursue other early-stage pre-clinical programs.

On August 17, 2017, AgeX completed an asset acquisition and stock sale pursuant to which it received certain assets from BioTime for use in its research and development programs and raised $10.0 million in cash from investors to finance its operations. This capitalization of AgeX has allowed it to focus its resources on its pre-clinical programs (see Notes 4 and 9).

On September 25, 2017, BioTime's Board of Directors approved a distribution of some or all of the shares of AgeX common stock owned by BioTime to BioTime's shareholders (the "Distribution"). As of December 31, 2017, BioTime owned 85.4% of the issued and outstanding shares of AgeX common stock (see Notes 4, 7 and 9).

AgeX is an "emerging growth company" as defined in the Jumpstart our Business Startups Act of 2012.

Liquidity – Since inception, AgeX has financed its operations through contributions and advances from its parent company, BioTime, and the sale of its common stock and warrants (see Notes 4, 5 and 9). BioTime has also provided AgeX with the use of BioTime facilities and services under a Shared Facilities and Services Agreement as described in Note 4. Although BioTime may continue to provide administrative support to AgeX on a reimbursable basis, AgeX does not expect BioTime to provide future financing. AgeX has incurred operating losses and negative cash flows since inception, and had an accumulated deficit of $66.6 million and $60.0 million as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. AgeX expects to continue to incur operating losses and negative cash flows.

AgeX has evaluated its projected cash flows and believes that its cash and cash equivalents of $7.4 million as of December 31, 2017, and the aggregate $3.2 million in net cash proceeds received from the sale of its ownership stake in Ascendance Biotechnology, Inc. ("Ascendance") and sale of warrants (see Note 9), and the $5.0 million from the sale of common stock (see Note 9), provide sufficient cash, cash equivalents, and liquidity to finance AgeX's current operations through at least twelve months from the issuance date of the consolidated financial statements included herein.

AgeX's projected cash flows are subject to various risks and uncertainties, and the unavailability or inadequacy of financing to meet future capital needs could force it to modify, curtail, delay, or suspend some or all aspects of its planned operations. AgeX's determination as to when it will seek new financing and the amount of financing that it will need will be based on its evaluation of the progress it makes in its research and development programs, any changes to the scope and focus of those programs, and projection of future costs, revenues, and rates of expenditure. AgeX cannot assure that adequate financing will be available on favorable terms, if at all. Sales of additional equity securities by AgeX could result in the dilution of the interests of present shareholders.

Basis of presentation - The accompanying consolidated financial statements presented herein have been prepared on a separate, standalone basis, referred to as "carve-out" basis financial statements. Carve-out basis financial statements are based on a general principle that the historical financial statements of a registrant should reflect, in all material respects, all of the registrant's costs of doing business, including certain expenses incurred by the parent on its behalf. Prior to August 2017, AgeX's current subsidiaries and certain research and development departments within AgeX operated as subsidiaries and research and development departments of BioTime, including an equity method investment in Ascendance (see Note 2). Beginning with the August 17, 2017 capitalization of AgeX and the Asset Contribution and Separation Agreement ("Asset Contribution Agreement") with BioTime discussed in Note 4, these former subsidiaries and research and development departments of BioTime, including the equity method investment in Ascendance, were contributed or transferred to AgeX. Although the AgeX legal entity commenced operations in 2017, its subsidiaries, research and development departments and equity method investment operated prior to 2017. Accordingly, the accompanying consolidated financial statements were prepared on a carve-out basis for purposes of presenting what AgeX's consolidated financial position, consolidated results of operations and consolidated cash flows would have been had AgeX operated the business as a standalone entity for the periods presented. The consolidated financial statements are not necessarily indicative of AgeX's future performance and do not reflect what AgeX's financial performance or results would have been had the company operated as an independent, publicly traded company during the periods presented, and should not be relied upon as an indicator of AgeX's future results.

The consolidated financial statements are presented in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles ("GAAP"). BioTime has consolidated the results of AgeX and its subsidiaries into BioTime's consolidated results based on BioTime's ability to control AgeX's operating and financial decisions and policies through the majority ownership of AgeX common stock throughout the periods presented.

To the extent AgeX does not have its own employees, human resources or facilities for its operations, BioTime or BioTime commonly controlled and consolidated subsidiaries provide certain employees for administrative or operational services, including laboratory space and administrative facilities, as necessary, for the benefit of AgeX, under a Shared Facilities and Services Agreement (the "Shared Facilities Agreement") with BioTime (see Note 4). Accordingly, BioTime allocates expenses such as salaries and payroll related expenses incurred and paid on behalf of AgeX based on the amount of time that particular employees devote to AgeX affairs. Other expenses such as legal, accounting and financial reporting, marketing, and travel expenses are allocated to AgeX to the extent that those expenses are incurred by or on behalf of AgeX. BioTime also allocates certain overhead expenses such as rent and utilities, property taxes, insurance, laboratory expenses and supplies, telecommunications and other indirect expenses. These allocations are made based upon activity-based allocation drivers such as time spent, percentage of square feet of office or laboratory space used, headcount and percentage of personnel devoted to AgeX's operations or management. Management evaluates the appropriateness of the allocations on a periodic basis and believes that this basis for allocation is reasonable.

Principles of consolidation – AgeX's consolidated financial statements include the accounts of its subsidiaries and certain research and development departments, including former BioTime personnel, transferred from BioTime to AgeX in connection with the Asset Contribution Agreement (see Note 4). AgeX consolidated its direct and indirect wholly-owned or majority-owned subsidiaries because AgeX has the ability to control their operating and financial decisions and policies through its ownership, and the noncontrolling interest is reflected as a separate element of shareholders' equity on AgeX's consolidated balance sheets.

As of, and for the year ended, December 31, 2016, AgeX consolidated ReCyte Therapeutics, Inc. ("ReCyte"), LifeMap Sciences, Inc. ("LifeMap Sciences"), LifeMap Sciences, Ltd. (Israel), LifeMap Solutions, Inc. ("LifeMap Solutions"), and included the historical expenses of certain former BioTime research and development departments (see Note 4).

On June 6, 2017, BioTime and LifeMap Sciences entered into a Debt Conversion Agreement whereby BioTime acquired: (1) a direct 100% ownership of LifeMap Solutions, a wholly-owned subsidiary of LifeMap Sciences, (2) additional shares of common stock in LifeMap Sciences and (3) certain other assets and intellectual property of LifeMap Sciences. These items were acquired in exchange for the settlement of related party payables due to BioTime by LifeMap Sciences of $8.8 million as of that date (see Note 4).

On August 17, 2017, BioTime contributed all of its then-existing ownership interests in LifeMap Sciences (approximately 82% ownership), ReCyte Therapeutics (approximately 95% ownership), equity method investment in Ascendance (approximately 44% ownership), and certain BioTime general research and development departments, including personnel, to AgeX in exchange for 28,800,000 shares of AgeX common stock pursuant to the Asset Contribution Agreement discussed in Note 4.

On June 6, 2017, because of the transfer of LifeMap Solutions to BioTime, LifeMap Sciences deconsolidated LifeMap Solutions from its financial statements. The exchange of LifeMap Sciences assets, including LifeMap Solutions, for the settlement of related party payables due to BioTime, and the subsequent contribution in August 2017 by BioTime of assets to AgeX under the Asset Contribution Agreement are transactions between entities under common control. Accordingly, the contributed assets and liabilities are recorded at historical carrying values, with the resulting gain recorded in AgeX's additional paid-in capital included in the consolidated statements of shareholders' equity (deficit) for the year ended December 31, 2017, in accordance with ASC 805-50, *Transactions Between Entities Under Common Control.*

The LifeMap Sciences deconsolidation is not considered a discontinued operation in accordance with ASC 205-20, *Presentation of Financial Statements Discontinued Operations,* because the disposition of LifeMap Solutions does not represent a strategic shift in AgeX' s operations, as defined by ASC 205-20, and the criteria for discontinued operations under ASC 205-20 are not met.

In accordance with the accounting guidance related to carve-out entities, LifeMap Solutions' historical financial statements and operating results have been included in the AgeX consolidated financial statements for reporting periods prior to June 6, 2017, the transfer date of LifeMap Solutions to Bio Time. Loss from operations for the year ended December 31, 2017 includes a $1.8 million gain AgeX recognized on the sale of certain co-developed assets by LifeMap Solutions to its customer prior to the transfer of LifeMap Solutions to BioTime on June 6, 2017.

Subsequent to June 6, 2017, LifeMap Solutions' financial statements and operating results are no longer included in AgeX's consolidated financial statements.

As of, and for the year ended December 31, 2017, AgeX consolidated the following subsidiaries and included the historical expenses of certain former BioTime research and development departments:

Subsidiary/Departments	Field of Business	AgeX Ownership	Country
ReCyte Therapeutics, Inc.	Early stage pre-clinical research and development involved in stem cell-derived endothelial and cardiovascular related progenitor cells for the treatment of vascular disorders, ischemic conditions and brown adipocytes for type-2 diabetes and obesity	94.8%	USA
LifeMap Sciences, Inc. [(1)]	Biomedical, gene, disease, and stem cell databases and tools	81.7%	USA
Research and development departments [(2)]	Early stage pre-clinical programs focusing on the development of technology relating to cell immortality and regenerative biology, to aging and age-related diseases	100.0%	USA

[(1)]LifeMap Sciences, Ltd. (Israel) is a wholly-owned subsidiary of LifeMap Sciences.

[(2)] BioTime former research and development departments, including personnel, transferred as part of the Asset Contribution Agreement discussed in Note 4 and included in the AgeX historical consolidated carve-out financial statements.

All material intercompany accounts and transactions between AgeX and its subsidiaries have been eliminated in consolidation.

Use of estimates - The preparation of consolidated financial statements in conformity with GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the consolidated financial statements and the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period with consideration given to materiality. Significant estimates and assumptions which are subject to significant judgment include those related to going concern assessment of consolidated financial statements, allocations and adjustments necessary for carve-out basis of presentation, including the separate return method for income taxes, useful lives associated with long-lived assets, including evaluation of asset impairment, allowances for uncollectible accounts receivables, loss contingencies, deferred income taxes and tax reserves, including valuation allowances related to deferred income taxes, and assumptions used to value stock-based awards or other equity instruments. Actual results could differ materially from those estimates. To the extent there are material differences between the estimates and actual results, AgeX's future results of operations will be affected.

2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

Going concern assessment – AgeX assesses going concern uncertainty for its consolidated financial statements to determine if AgeX has sufficient cash and cash equivalents on hand and working capital to operate for a period of at least one year from the date the consolidated financial statements are issued or are available to be issued, which is referred to as the "look-forward period" as defined by Financial Accounting Standard Board's ("FASB") ASU No. 2014-15. As part of this assessment, based on conditions that are known and reasonably knowable to AgeX, AgeX will consider various scenarios, forecasts, projections, and estimates, and AgeX will make certain key assumptions, including the timing and nature of projected cash expenditures or programs, and its ability to delay or curtail those expenditures or programs, if necessary, among other factors. Based on this assessment, as necessary or applicable, AgeX makes certain assumptions concerning its ability to curtail or delay research and development programs and expenditures within the look-forward period in accordance with ASU No. 2014-15.

Cash and cash equivalents – AgeX considers all highly liquid investments purchased with an original maturity of three months or less to be cash equivalents. As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, AgeX's cash balances totaled $7.4 million and $0.3 million, respectively, and consist entirely of bank account deposits and amounts held in money market funds.

Concentrations of credit risk – Financial instruments that potentially subject AgeX to significant concentrations of credit risk consist primarily of cash and cash equivalents. AgeX limits the amount of credit exposure of cash balances by maintaining its accounts in high credit quality financial institutions. Cash equivalent deposits with financial institutions may occasionally exceed the limits of insurance on bank deposits; however, AgeX has not experienced any losses on such accounts.

Fair value measurements – Fair value is defined as the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date. To increase the comparability of fair value measures, the following hierarchy prioritizes the inputs to valuation methodologies used to measure fair value (ASC 820-10-50), *Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures*:

- Level 1 – Inputs to the valuation methodology are quoted prices (unadjusted) for identical assets or liabilities in active markets.

- Level 2 – Inputs to the valuation methodology include quoted prices for similar assets or liabilities in active markets, and inputs that are observable for the assets or liabilities, either directly or indirectly, for substantially the full term of the financial instruments.

- Level 3 – Inputs to the valuation methodology are unobservable; that reflect management's own assumptions about the assumptions market participants would make and significant to the fair value.

In determining fair value, AgeX utilizes valuation techniques that maximize the use of observable inputs and minimize the use of unobservable inputs to the extent possible, and also considers counterparty credit risk in its assessment of fair value. For the periods presented, AgeX has no financial assets or liabilities recorded at fair value on a recurring basis, except for cash and cash equivalents primarily consisting of money market funds. These assets are measured at fair value using the period-end quoted market prices as a Level 1 input.

The carrying amounts of accounts receivable, net, prepaid expenses and other current assets, related party amounts due to BioTime and other affiliates, accounts payable, accrued liabilities and other current liabilities approximate fair values because of the short-term nature of these items.

Accounts receivable, net – AgeX establishes an allowance for doubtful accounts based on the evaluation of the collectability of its receivables after considering a variety of factors, including the length of time receivables are past due, significant events that may impair the customer's ability to pay, such as a bankruptcy filing or deterioration in the customer's operating results or financial position, and historical experience. If circumstances related to customers change, estimates of the recoverability of receivables would be further adjusted. For subscription contracts in which the subscription term commences before a payment is due, LifeMap Sciences records an accounts receivable as the subscription is earned over time and bills the customer according to the contract terms. LifeMap Sciences continuously monitors collections and payments from customers and maintains a provision for estimated credit losses and uncollectible accounts based upon its historical experience and any specific customer collection issues that have been identified. Amounts determined to be uncollectible are written off against the allowance for doubtful accounts. Accounts receivable, net, include allowance for doubtful accounts of approximately $321,000 and $442,000 as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively, for those amounts deemed uncollectible by AgeX or LifeMap Sciences.

Equipment and furniture, net – Equipment and furniture is stated at cost and is being depreciated using the straight-line method over their estimated useful lives ranging from 3 to 10 years. Maintenance and repairs are expensed as incurred whereas significant renewals and betterments are capitalized. When assets are retired or otherwise disposed of, the cost and the related accumulated depreciation are removed from the respective accounts and any resulting gain or loss is reflected in AgeX's results of operations.

Long-lived intangible assets – Long-lived intangible assets, consisting primarily of acquired patents, patent applications, and licenses to use certain patents are stated at acquired cost, less accumulated amortization (see Note 3). Amortization expense is computed using the straight-line method over the estimated useful lives of the assets, generally over 10 years.

Impairment of long-lived assets – Long-lived assets, including long-lived intangible assets, are reviewed for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of an asset may not be fully recoverable. If an impairment indicator is present, AgeX evaluates recoverability by a comparison of the carrying amount of the assets to future undiscounted net cash flows expected to be generated by the assets. If the assets are impaired, the impairment recognized is measured by the amount by which the carrying amount exceeds the estimated fair value of the assets. Through 2017, there have been no such impairment losses.

Investments in common stock of privately held companies – AgeX evaluates whether investments held in common stock of an investee require consolidation of the entity under, first, the variable interest entity ("VIE") model, and then under the Voting Interest model in accordance with accounting guidance for consolidations under Accounting Standards Codification ("ASC") 810-10. If consolidation of the entity is not required under either the VIE model or the Voting Interest model, AgeX determines whether the equity method of accounting should be applied in accordance with ASC 323, *Investments – Equity Method and Joint Ventures*. The equity method applies to investments in common stock or in-substance common stock if AgeX exercises significant influence over, but does not control, the entity, typically represented by ownership of 20% or more of the voting interests of an entity.

AgeX initially records equity method investments at fair value on the date of the acquisition with subsequent adjustments to the investment balance based on AgeX's share of earnings or losses from the investment included in other income or expenses, net, on the consolidated statements of operations.

AgeX reviews investments accounted for under the equity method for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of the investment may not be fully recoverable. If a determination is made that an "other-than-temporary" impairment exists, AgeX writes down its investment to fair value.

Based on an evaluation and continuing losses and negative cash flows generated from the Ascendance investment, including uncertainty as to Ascendance's ability to raise sufficient financing, AgeX determined that an other-than-temporary impairment existed on its equity method investment in Ascendance as of December 31, 2016, and AgeX wrote down the entire remaining $3.5 million carrying value of that investment as of that date. AgeX's share of losses, including the impairment charge in Ascendance for the year ended December 31, 2016 amounted to $4.7 million included in other income and expenses, net. Ascendance was a former equity method investment of BioTime that was contributed to AgeX under the Asset Contribution Agreement discussed in Note 4.

Transactions with noncontrolling interests of subsidiaries – AgeX accounts for a change in ownership interests in its subsidiaries that does not result in a change of control of the subsidiary under the provisions of ASC 810-10-45-23, *Consolidation – Other Presentation Matters,* which prescribes the accounting for changes in ownership interest that do not result in a change in control of the subsidiary, as defined by GAAP, before and after the transaction. Under this guidance, changes in a controlling shareholder's ownership interest that do not result in a change of control, as defined by GAAP, in the subsidiary are accounted for as equity transactions. Accordingly, if the controlling shareholder retains control, no gain or loss is recognized in the statements of operations of the controlling shareholder. Similarly, the controlling shareholder will not record any additional acquisition adjustments to reflect its subsequent purchases of additional shares in the subsidiary if there is no change of control. Only a proportional and immediate transfer of carrying value between the controlling and the noncontrolling shareholders occurs based on the respective ownership percentages.

Revenue recognition – AgeX complies with Accounting Standards Codification, ASC 605-10 and recognizes revenue when persuasive evidence of an arrangement exists, delivery has occurred or services have been rendered, the price is fixed or determinable, and collectability is reasonably assured.

License fee revenues consist of fees under license agreements and are recognized when earned and reasonably estimable and, also include subscription and advertising revenue from LifeMap Sciences' online databases based upon applicable subscription or advertising periods. LifeMap Sciences, a direct majority-owned subsidiary of AgeX, sells subscription-based products, including research databases and software tools, for biomedical, gene, disease, and stem cell research. LifeMap Sciences sells these subscriptions primarily through the internet to biotech and pharmaceutical companies worldwide. LifeMap Sciences' principal subscription product is the *GeneCards*® Suite, which includes the *GeneCards*® human gene database, and the *MalaCards*™ human disease database. When AgeX or a subsidiary is entitled to receive up-front nonrefundable licensing or similar fees pursuant to agreements under which AgeX or its subsidiary has no continuing performance obligations, the fees are recognized as revenues when collection is reasonably assured. When AgeX or a subsidiary receives up-front nonrefundable licensing or similar fees pursuant to agreements under which AgeX or its subsidiary does have continuing performance obligations, the fees are deferred and amortized ratably over the performance period. If the performance period cannot be reasonably estimated, AgeX amortizes nonrefundable fees over the life of the contract until such time that the performance period can be more reasonably estimated. Milestone payments, if any, related to scientific or technical achievements, subject to substantial uncertainty, are recognized in income when the milestone is accomplished if (a) substantive effort was required to achieve the milestone, (b) the amount of the milestone payment appears reasonably commensurate with the effort expended, and (c) collection of the payment is reasonably assured. Royalty revenues consist of royalty payments from licensed product sales. Service revenues were primarily generated by LifeMap Solutions from mobile health software co-development and recognized when earned, which occurred as services were rendered to the customers (see Note 4).

Cost of sales – AgeX accounts for the cost of research products acquired for sale and any royalties paid as a result of any revenues in accordance with the terms of the applicable licensing agreements as cost of sales on the consolidated statements of operations.

Research and development – Research and development expenses include both direct expenses incurred by AgeX or its subsidiaries and indirect overhead costs allocated by BioTime that benefit or support AgeX's research and development functions. Direct research and development expenses consist primarily of personnel costs and related benefits, including stock-based compensation, amortization of intangible assets, outside consultants and suppliers, and license fees paid to third parties to acquire patents or licenses to use patents and other technology. Direct research and development expenses also include allocations for carve-out presentation purposes from certain former BioTime general research departments contributed to AgeX primarily comprised of former BioTime personnel and related expenses, including stock-based compensation, transferred to AgeX, and other outside expenses relevant to the nature of the research projects being conducted that were contributed to AgeX pursuant to the Asset Contribution Agreement discussed in Note 4. Indirect research and development expenses allocated by BioTime to AgeX under the Shared Facilities Agreement (see Note 4), are primarily based on headcount or space occupied, as applicable, and include laboratory supplies, laboratory expenses, rent and utilities, common area maintenance, telecommunications, property taxes and insurance. Research and development expenses incurred and reimbursed by grants from third parties or governmental agencies, including service revenues from co-development projects with customers, if any and as applicable, approximate the respective revenues recognized in the consolidated statements of operations.

General and administrative – General and administrative expenses include both direct expenses incurred by AgeX and indirect overhead costs allocated by BioTime that benefit or support AgeX's general and administrative functions. Direct general and administrative expenses consist primarily of compensation and related benefits, including stock-based compensation, for executive and corporate personnel, and professional and consulting fees. Direct general and administrative expenses also include allocations from certain BioTime general and administrative expenses, including allocated stock-based compensation, for carve-out presentation purposes of the AgeX consolidated statements of operations. These allocations are principally based on the historical general and administrative functions and expenses relevant to BioTime and the AgeX subsidiaries that operated prior to and after AgeX formation during the periods presented. Indirect general and administrative expenses allocated by BioTime to AgeX under the Shared Facilities Agreement (see Note 4) are primarily based on headcount or space occupied, as applicable, and include costs for financial reporting and compliance, rent and utilities, common area maintenance, telecommunications, property taxes and insurance.

Foreign currency translation and other comprehensive loss, foreign currency transaction gains and losses – In countries in which AgeX operates where the functional currency is other than the U.S. dollar, assets and liabilities are translated using published exchange rates in effect at the consolidated balance sheet date. Revenues and expenses and cash flows are translated using an approximate weighted average exchange rate for the period. Resulting translation adjustments are recorded as a component of accumulated other comprehensive income or loss on the consolidated balance sheet. For the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 comprehensive loss includes foreign currency translation gains, net of tax, of $10,000 and $66,000, respectively.

For transactions denominated in other than the functional currency of AgeX or its subsidiaries, AgeX recognizes transaction gains and losses in the consolidated statements of operations and classifies the gain or loss based on the nature of the item that generated it. The majority of AgeX's foreign currency transaction gains and losses are generated by LifeMap Sciences Ltd.'s intercompany payable due to LifeMap Sciences, Inc., which are U.S. dollar-denominated, while LifeMap Sciences Ltd.'s functional currency is the Israeli New Shekel ("NIS"). Accordingly, foreign currency remeasurement gains and losses related to this intercompany payable are included in other income and expenses, net.

Income taxes – For Federal and California purposes, AgeX's activity for 2016 and 2017 was or will be included in BioTime's federal and California combined tax returns. The income tax provision was prepared in accordance with ASC 740, *Income Taxes,* using the separate return method to determine the tax provision of AgeX Therapeutics Inc. for carve-out presentation purposes of its consolidated financial statements. The separate return method, amongst other things, requires that the amount of current and deferred tax expense for a group that files a consolidated income tax return be allocated among the members of that group as if each group member were a separate taxpayer. As a result, the provision for income taxes has been presented as if AgeX had filed a separate federal consolidated tax return and a California combined tax return for the periods presented. In using the separate return method, the sum of the amounts allocated to the members of the income tax return group may not equal the consolidated amount. If tax attributes recorded in the carve-out consolidated financial statements are materially different from the actual tax attributes pertaining to the legal entities of AgeX and its subsidiaries, or to BioTime and its subsidiaries, those differences are identified and disclosed in Note 7. Accordingly, depending on the future legal structure of AgeX and related tax elections that may be taken by AgeX or its parent, BioTime, the effective tax rate of AgeX in future years could vary materially from its historical effective tax rates. The historical deferred tax assets, including the operating losses and credit carryforwards generated by certain research and development departments that operated within BioTime and were transferred to AgeX on August 17, 2017 (Note 4), have been presented as tax attributes of AgeX consistent with the principles of the separate return method described above. However, the net operating losses and research and development credits that these departments generated before August 17, 2017, the contribution date to AgeX, will remain as tax attributes of BioTime (see Note 7). In general, net operating losses and other tax credit carryforwards generated by legal entities in a consolidated federal tax group or a combined state tax group, collectively "the tax group", are available to other members of the tax group depending on the nature of the transaction that a member may enter into while still in the tax group. However, under the Tax Matters Agreement between BioTime and AgeX entered into on August 17, 2017, any use of a member's net operating loss and other tax credit carryforwards by the other member is subject to reimbursement by the benefiting member for the actual tax benefit realized.

AgeX accounts for income taxes in accordance with ASC 740, which prescribes the use of the asset and liability method, whereby deferred tax asset or liability account balances are calculated at the balance sheet date using current tax laws and enacted rates in effect. Valuation allowances are established when necessary to reduce deferred tax assets when it is more likely than not that a portion or all of the deferred tax assets will not be realized. AgeX's judgments, estimates and projections regarding future taxable income may change over time due to changes, among other factors, in market conditions, changes in tax laws, and tax planning strategies. If AgeX's assumptions and consequently its estimates change in the future, the valuation allowance may be increased or decreased, which may have a material impact on AgeX's consolidated financial statements.

The guidance also prescribes a recognition threshold and a measurement attribute for the financial statement recognition and measurement of tax positions taken or expected to be taken in a tax return. For those benefits to be recognized, a tax position must be more-likely-than-not sustainable upon examination by taxing authorities. AgeX recognizes accrued interest and penalties related to unrecognized tax benefits as income tax expense. No amounts were accrued for the payment of interest and penalties as of December 31, 2017 and 2016. AgeX is not aware of any uncertain tax positions that could result in significant additional payments, accruals, or other material adjustments for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016. AgeX is currently unaware of any tax issues under review.

Certain majority-owned subsidiaries that AgeX consolidates under GAAP file their own, standalone federal income tax returns as those subsidiaries are not considered consolidated under federal income tax regulations, and accordingly, AgeX and those subsidiaries may not use each other's tax attributes (see Note 7).

On December 22, 2017, the United States enacted major federal tax reform legislation, Public Law No. 115-97, commonly referred to as the 2017 Tax Cuts and Jobs Act ("2017 Tax Act"), which enacted a broad range of changes to the Internal Revenue Code. Changes to taxes on corporations impacted by the 2017 Tax Act include, but not limited to, lowering the U.S. federal tax rates to a 21 percent flat tax rate, eliminating the corporate alternative minimum tax ("AMT"), imposing additional limitations on the deductibility of interest and net operating losses, allowing any net operating loss ("NOLs") generated in tax years ending after December 31, 2017 to be carried forward indefinitely and generally repealing carrybacks, reducing the maximum deduction for NOL carryforwards arising in tax years beginning after 2017 to a percentage of the taxpayer's taxable income, and allowing for additional expensing of certain capital expenditures. The 2017 Tax Act also puts into effect a number of changes impacting operations outside of the United States including, but not limited to, the imposition of a one-time tax "deemed repatriation" on accumulated offshore earnings not previously subject to U.S. tax, and shifts the U.S taxation of multinational corporations from a worldwide system of taxation to a territorial system. ASC 740 requires the effects of changes in tax rates and laws on deferred tax balances (including the effects of the one-time transition tax) to be recognized in the period in which the legislation is enacted (see Note 7).

On December 22, 2017, the SEC staff issued Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 118 ("SAB 118") to provide guidance for companies that are not able to complete their accounting for the income tax effects of the 2017 Tax Act in the period of enactment. SAB 118 allows AgeX to record provisional amounts during a measurement period not to extend beyond one year of the enactment date (see Note 7).

Stock-based compensation – AgeX recognizes compensation expense related to employee option grants and restricted stock grants, if any, in accordance with FASB ASC 718, *Compensation – Stock Compensation* ("ASC 718").

AgeX estimates the fair value of employee stock-based payment awards on the grant-date and recognizes the resulting fair value, net of estimated forfeitures for grants prior to 2017, over the requisite service period. Upon adoption of Accounting Standards Update ("ASU") 2016-09 on January 1, 2017 as further discussed below, forfeitures are accounted for as they occur instead of based on the number of awards that were expected to vest prior to adoption of ASU 2016-09.

AgeX uses the Black-Scholes option pricing model for estimating the fair value of options granted under AgeX's 2017 Equity Incentive Plan (the "Plan"). The fair value of each restricted stock grant, if any, is determined based on the value of the common stock granted or sold. AgeX has elected to treat stock-based payment awards with graded vesting schedules and time-based service conditions as a single award and recognizes stock-based compensation on a straight-line basis over the requisite service period.

Compensation expense for non-employee stock-based awards is recognized in accordance with ASC 718 and FASB ASC 505-50, *Equity-Based Payments to Non-Employees*. Stock option awards issued to non-employees, principally consultants or outside contractors, as applicable, are accounted for at fair value using the Black-Scholes option pricing model. Management believes that the fair value of the stock options can more reliably be measured than the fair value of services received. AgeX records compensation expense based on the then-current fair values of the stock options at each financial reporting date. Compensation expense recorded during the service period is adjusted in subsequent periods for changes in the fair value of the stock options until the earlier of the date at which the non-employee's performance is complete or a performance commitment is reached, which is generally when the stock option award vests. Compensation expense for non-employee grants is recorded on a straight-line basis in the consolidated statements of operations. To date, AgeX has not granted stock-based awards to non-employees.

The Black-Scholes option pricing model requires AgeX to make certain assumptions including the fair value of the underlying common stock, the expected term, the expected volatility, the risk-free interest rate and the dividend yield (see Note 6).

The fair value of the shares of common stock underlying the stock options has historically been determined by the Board of Directors. Because there has been no public market for AgeX's common stock, the Board of Directors has determined the fair value of the common stock at the time of the grant of options by considering a number of objective and subjective factors including contemporaneous sales of common stock to investors, valuation of comparable companies, operating and financial performance and general and industry-specific economic outlook, amongst other factors. The fair value of the underlying common stock will be determined by the Board of Directors until such time as AgeX's common stock is traded on an established stock exchange or national market system. The fair value was determined in accordance with applicable elements of the practice aid issued by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants titled *Valuation of Privately Held Company Equity Securities Issued As Compensation*.

The expected term of employee stock options represents the weighted-average period that the stock options are expected to remain outstanding. AgeX estimates the expected term of options granted using the "simplified method" provided under *Staff Accounting Bulletin, Topic 14*, or SAB Topic 14.

Because AgeX's common stock has no publicly traded history, AgeX estimates the expected volatility of the awards from the historical volatility of selected public companies within the biotechnology industry with comparable characteristics to AgeX, including similarity in size, lines of business, market capitalization, revenue and financial leverage. AgeX determined the expected volatility assumption using the frequency of daily historical prices of comparable public company's common stock for a period equal to the expected term of the options. AgeX periodically assesses the comparable companies and other relevant factors used to measure expected volatility for future stock option grants.

The risk-free interest rate assumption is based upon observed interest rates on the United States government securities appropriate for the expected term of AgeX's stock options.

The dividend yield assumption is based on AgeX's history and expectation of dividend payouts. AgeX has never declared or paid any cash dividends on its common stock, and AgeX does not anticipate paying any cash dividends in the foreseeable future.

Since AgeX did not have an equity incentive plan until July 2017 (see Note 6), consolidated stock-based compensation expense for the year ended December 31, 2016 consists of stock-based compensation allocated from BioTime, principally related to stock-based compensation of former BioTime employees transferred to AgeX, and stock-based compensation of AgeX's subsidiaries that have their own equity plans. Stock-based compensation expense for the year ended December 31, 2017 consists of stock-based compensation under the AgeX 2017 Equity Incentive Plan (Note 6), stock-based compensation allocated from BioTime and stock- based compensation of AgeX's subsidiaries that have their own stock option plans.

As discussed above, certain of AgeX's consolidated subsidiaries have their own share-based compensation plans. For share-based compensation awards granted by those privately-held consolidated subsidiaries under their respective equity plans, AgeX determines the fair value of the options granted under those plans using similar methodologies and assumptions AgeX used for its stock options discussed above.

Although the fair value of stock options is determined in accordance with FASB guidance, changes in the assumptions and allocations can materially affect the estimated value and therefore the amount of compensation expense recognized in the consolidated financial statements.

Segments - AgeX's executive management team, as a group, represents the entity's chief operating decision makers. To date, AgeX's executive management team has viewed AgeX's operations as one segment that includes the research and development of regenerative medicine technologies targeting the diseases of aging and metabolic disorders, oncology, and neurological diseases and disorders, blood and vascular system diseases and disorders, and pluripotent cell technologies. As a result, the financial information disclosed materially represents all of the financial information related to AgeX's sole operating segment.

Basic and diluted net loss per share attributable to common shareholders – Basic earnings per share is calculated by dividing net income or loss attributable to AgeX common shareholders by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding, net of unvested restricted stock or restricted stock units, subject to repurchase by AgeX, if any, during the period. Diluted earnings per share is calculated by dividing the net income or loss attributable to AgeX common shareholders by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding, adjusted for the effects of potentially dilutive common shares issuable under outstanding stock options and warrants, using the treasury-stock method, convertible preferred stock, if any, using the if-converted method.

On August 17, 2017, in connection with the Asset Contribution Agreement discussed in Note 4, AgeX issued 28.8 million shares of common stock to its parent company, BioTime. For carve-out presentation purposes of the reported basic and diluted net loss per share in AgeX's consolidated statements of operations, the 28.8 million shares of AgeX common stock issued to BioTime and the related par value are assumed to be issued and outstanding from the beginning of the earliest period presented.

For the year ended December 31, 2017, because AgeX reported a net loss attributable to common stockholders, all potentially dilutive common stock, comprised of stock options, is antidilutive. For the year ended December 31, 2016, there were no AgeX common stock equivalents outstanding.

For the year ended December 31, 2017, AgeX excluded from the computation of diluted net loss per common share 1,239,000 stock options because including them would have been antidilutive.

Recently issued accounting pronouncements adopted in 2017 - Adoption of ASU 2016-09, *Improvements to Employee Share-Based Payment Accounting.* In March 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-09, *Compensation - Stock Compensation (Topic 718): Improvements to Employee Share-Based Payment Accounting*, which simplifies several aspects of the accounting for share-based payment transactions, including the income tax consequences, forfeitures, classification of awards as either equity or liabilities, and classification on the statement of cash flows. AgeX adopted ASU 2016-09 beginning on January 1, 2017.

In connection with the adoption of ASU 2016-09, AgeX changed its accounting policies, including how it accounts for excess tax benefits and deficiencies, if any, and forfeitures, as applicable. All excess tax benefits and tax deficiencies from stock-based compensation awards accounted for under ASC 718 are recognized as an income tax benefit or expense, respectively, in the consolidated statements of operations. Prior to the adoption of ASU 2016-09, AgeX recognized excess tax benefits, if any, in additional paid-in capital only if the tax deduction reduced cash income taxes payable and, excess tax deficiencies were recognized as an offset to accumulated excess tax benefits, if any, on AgeX's consolidated statements of operations. An excess income tax benefit arises when the tax deduction of a share-based award for income tax purposes exceeds the compensation cost recognized for financial reporting purposes and, a tax deficiency arises when the compensation cost exceeds the tax deduction. Because AgeX had no stock option exercises during the year ended December 31, 2017, and because of AgeX's full valuation allowance as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, there was no impact to AgeX's consolidated financial statements for the adoption of 2016-09 (see Note 7).

Forfeitures are now accounted for as they occur instead of based on the number of awards that were expected to vest. Based on (i) the nature and timing of AgeX's grants, straight line expense attribution of stock-based compensation for the entire award, and (ii) the relatively low forfeiture rates on subsidiary stock options, the impact of adoption of ASU 2016-09 pertaining to forfeitures was not material to AgeX's consolidated financial statements.

Recently issued accounting pronouncements not yet adopted – The following accounting standards, which are not yet effective, are presently being evaluated by AgeX to determine the impact that they might have on its consolidated financial statements.

In May 2014, the FASB issued ASU 2014-09, "Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606)", which supersedes nearly all existing revenue recognition guidance under GAAP. The core principle of ASU 2014-09 is to recognize revenues when promised goods or services are transferred to customers in an amount that reflects the consideration to which an entity expects to be entitled for those goods or services. ASU 2014-09 defines a five-step process to achieve this core principle and, in doing so, more judgments and estimates may be required in the revenue recognition process than are required under existing GAAP. The revised revenue standard is effective for public entities for annual periods beginning after December 15, 2017, and interim periods therein, using either of the following transition methods: (i) a full retrospective approach reflecting the application of the standard in each prior reporting period with the option to elect certain practical expedients; or (ii) a retrospective approach with the cumulative effect of initially adopting ASU 2014-09 recognized at the date of adoption (which includes additional footnote disclosures).

The evaluation of the impact of adoption of ASU 2014-09 (Topic 606) on existing contracts with customers is complete and AgeX does not expect the adoption of the new guidance will have a material impact to its consolidated financial statements. In performing this evaluation, AgeX has identified certain changes to business processes and internal controls relating to contracts and disclosures that are needed upon the adoption of the new guidance. AgeX will adopt this new standard on January 1, 2018, and plans on using the modified retrospective transition method, which requires the application of the new standard only to those contracts that were not completed as of the adoption date. Upon adoption of ASU 2014-09 and, if necessary, AgeX will recognize the cumulative effect of adopting this guidance as an adjustment to the opening consolidated accumulated deficit balance as of January 1, 2018. AgeX will continue to monitor industry activities and any additional guidance provided by regulators, standards setters, or the accounting profession and adjust its assessment and implementation plans accordingly.

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-02, "Leases (Topic 842)", which requires lessees to recognize assets and liabilities for leases with lease terms greater than twelve months in the statement of financial position. Leases will be classified as either finance or operating, with classification affecting the pattern of expense recognition in the income statement. ASU 2016-02 also requires improved disclosures to help users of financial statements better understand the amount, timing and uncertainty of cash flows arising from leases. The update is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018, including interim reporting periods within that reporting period. Early adoption is permitted. AgeX is currently evaluating the impact the adoption of ASU 2016-02 will have on its consolidated financial statements but does not expect it to be material.

3. Selected Balance Sheet Components

Accounts payable and accrued liabilities

At December 31, 2017 and 2016, accrued expenses and other current liabilities were comprised of the following (in thousands):

	2017[(1)]	2016
Accounts payable	$ 75	$ 261
Accrued compensation	257	271
Accrued vendors and other expenses	436	1,555
Accounts payable and accrued liabilities	$ 768	$ 2,087

[(1)] Reflects the effect of the LifeMap Solutions transfer to BioTime on June 6, 2017 discussed in Notes 1 and 4.

Equipment and furniture, net

At December 31, 2017 and 2016, equipment and furniture were comprised of the following (in thousands):

	2017	2016
Equipment and furniture	$ 274	$ 401
Accumulated depreciation	(145)	(206)
Equipment and furniture, net	$ 129	$ 195

Depreciation expense amounted to $165,000 and $238,000 for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. Depreciation expense also includes amounts allocated from BioTime to AgeX for carve-out basis of presentation (see Note 2).

Intangible assets, net

Intangible assets are primarily comprised of acquired licenses and other rights by LifeMap Sciences from a third party for certain databases it commercializes, which includes the *GeneCards*® human gene database, and the *MalaCards*™ human disease database. These databases are available primarily through the internet and sold as subscriptions or on a fee per use basis for use by stem cell researchers at pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies and other institutions. The databases permit users to follow the development of hES cell lines that BioTime and AgeX created using its proprietary *ACTCellerate*™ technology.

At December 31, 2017 and 2016, intangible assets and accumulated amortization were as follows (in thousands):

	2017	2016
Intangible assets	$ 4,274	$ 4,274
Accumulated amortization	(2,400)	(1,973)
Intangible assets, net	$ 1,874	$ 2,301

Amortization expense amounted to $517,000 and $607,000 for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. Amortization expense also includes amounts allocated from BioTime to AgeX for carve-out basis of presentation (see Note 2).

4. Related Party Transactions

Related Party Payables to BioTime

Since inception, ReCyte Therapeutics, LifeMap Sciences and LifeMap Solutions, former subsidiaries of BioTime, had accumulated related party payables due to BioTime, mainly comprised of working capital advances and shared services provided under a Shared Facilities and Services Agreement ("Shared Services") that BioTime had performed for the benefit of, and charged, to these subsidiaries. Shared Services included both services and use of facilities provided by BioTime, as applicable, including space for research, laboratory and administrative offices, administrative and financial services such as human resources, general bookkeeping, payroll and financial reporting. BioTime generally did not historically charge interest on Shared Services amounts payable and only commenced charging interest for working capital advances in 2017, which was insignificant for the applicable periods presented.

As of December 31, 2016, the aggregate related party payables due to BioTime for these working capital advances and Shared Services amounted to $23.2 million, which was comprised of total $12.9 million owed by LifeMap Sciences and its then subsidiary LifeMap Solutions, and $10.3 million owed by ReCyte Therapeutics, included in current liabilities on the consolidated balance sheets.

On June 6, 2017, in contemplation of capitalizing AgeX and to further incentivize new investors to invest in AgeX as discussed below, BioTime agreed to settle or cancel these related party payable balances with the subsidiaries as follows:

- For settlement of related party payables owed by LifeMap Sciences and LifeMap Solutions, (i) BioTime increased its ownership in LifeMap Sciences from 78% to 82% for additional shares of common stock issued to BioTime, (ii) LifeMap Sciences canceled or terminated certain license agreements with BioTime and transferred other intangible assets to BioTime, and (iii) BioTime obtained a direct 100% ownership interest in LifeMap Solutions (the "LifeMap Sciences Settlement"). The LifeMap Sciences Settlement was done between entities under common control and the changes in ownership interests did not result in a change of control under GAAP, therefore the gain from the transaction was recorded in equity in accordance with ASC 805-50 and ASC 810-10-45-23. Accordingly, as a result of the LifeMap Sciences Settlement, AgeX recorded $13.4 million as additional paid-in capital from BioTime, which was primarily comprised of (i) settlement of the $8.8 million related party payable by LifeMap Sciences described above and in Note 1, (ii) a $4.4 million net gain on the transfer of LifeMap Solutions to BioTime on June 6, 2017, principally related to the transfer of a related party payable by LifeMap Solutions to BioTime as of that date, and (iii) a $0.2 million proportional equity transfer, at carrying value, from noncontrolling interest to the equity of AgeX, included in the consolidated statements of shareholders' equity for the year ended December 31, 2017.

- BioTime agreed to cancel approximately $11.2 million of related party payable by ReCyte Therapeutics due to BioTime, resulting in the reclassification of the related party payable to additional paid-in capital from BioTime included in the consolidated statements of shareholders' equity for the year ended December 31, 2017. Since there was no change in ownership percentage in ReCyte Therapeutics held by BioTime or AgeX, there was no impact to noncontrolling interest for this transaction.

On August 17, 2017, BioTime contributed its ownership in LifeMap Sciences, ReCyte Therapeutics and other assets to AgeX in exchange for 28.8 million shares of AgeX common stock as further discussed below and in Note 5.

Asset Contribution Agreement

On August 17, 2017, AgeX received its initial assets and cash from BioTime and certain investors. BioTime contributed certain assets and cash to AgeX in exchange for 28,800,000 shares of AgeX common stock (see Note 5) pursuant to an Asset Contribution and Separation Agreement. BioTime and AgeX also entered into a License Agreement pursuant to which BioTime licensed or sublicensed to AgeX, and AgeX granted to BioTime an option to license back, certain patent rights. Concurrently with the acquisition of assets from BioTime under the Asset Contribution Agreement, AgeX sold 4,950,000 shares of its common stock for $10.0 million in cash primarily to investors other than BioTime, which included $1.2 million from the Chairman of BioTime's Board of Directors and $32,000 from BioTime. At the close of the financing, BioTime owned 85.4% of the issued and outstanding shares of AgeX common stock (see Note 9).

Assets Contributed:

Pursuant to the Asset Contribution Agreement, BioTime contributed to AgeX the following assets:

- Intellectual property and proprietary technology, including certain patents and patent applications and know-how that comprised BioTime's "iTR" and adipose brown fat tissue technology;
- Approximately 95% of the outstanding shares of ReCyte Therapeutics common stock, which constituted all of the shares BioTime held prior to the contribution;
- Approximately 82% of the outstanding shares of LifeMap Sciences common stock, which constituted all of the shares BioTime held prior to the contribution;
- Approximately 44% of the outstanding shares of Ascendance Biotechnology, Inc., which constituted all of the shares BioTime held prior to the contribution.
- $100,000 in cash; and
- Certain other assets and contracts, including BioTime research and development departments and personnel related to the AgeX research and development programs.

Assumption of Liabilities:

AgeX agreed to assume all third-party obligations and liabilities related to the assets contributed and contracts assigned to AgeX or the operation of the AgeX related business.

Other Matters:

The Asset Contribution Agreement also sets forth other terms that govern certain aspects of BioTime's ongoing relationship with AgeX if in the future BioTime distributes its AgeX shares to BioTime shareholders.

License Agreement

Concurrently with the contribution of assets to AgeX under the Asset Contribution Agreement, BioTime and AgeX entered into a License Agreement pursuant to which BioTime has licensed to AgeX, with rights to sublicense, certain intellectual property, including patents and patent applications and know-how for use in the development, manufacture and commercialization of products or services for the prevention, treatment, amelioration, diagnosis or monitoring of all human and non-human animal diseases and conditions except for the field of medical products, devices and services for the reserved BioTime fields of orthopedic, ophthalmic and medical aesthetic uses. In addition, BioTime retained an option right to license, on terms to be negotiated, iTR patents in research, development, manufacturing and commercialization of treatments in the reserved BioTime fields. The licensed patents and know-how relate generally to (a) BioTime's *PureStem*® human embryonic progenitor cell lines, and (b) telomere length and DNA quality control analysis in pluripotent stem cells.

The BioTime patent rights licensed to AgeX are exclusive and worldwide except for existing third-party licenses, and for medical products, devices, and services related to tendons. AgeX additionally received an option to license certain BioTime retained patent rights outside of orthopedic indications unless a license grant would compete with a BioTime program or products in the retained BioTime field.

The Asset Contribution Agreement and other transactions discussed above were completed between entities under common control. Accordingly, the contributed assets and liabilities are recorded at historical carrying values, with the resulting gain recorded in AgeX's additional paid-in capital included in the consolidated statements of shareholders' equity (deficit) for the year ended December 31, 2017, in accordance with ASC 805-50.

Allocated Expenses from BioTime

Consistent with the principles of carve-out financial statements and presentation discussed in Note 2, certain expenses have been allocated by BioTime and included in the AgeX consolidated statements of operations and consolidated statements of shareholders' equity as contribution by BioTime for the periods presented.

Research and development expenses shown below include allocations from BioTime primarily attributable to certain former BioTime general research and development departments contributed to AgeX primarily comprised of former BioTime personnel and related expenses, including stock-based compensation, and other outside expenses relevant to the nature of the research projects being conducted that were contributed to AgeX pursuant to the Asset Contribution Agreement discussed above.

General and administrative expenses shown below include allocations from certain BioTime general and administrative expenses, including allocated stock-based compensation, for carve-out presentation purposes of the AgeX consolidated statements of operations. These allocations are principally based on the historical general and administrative functions and expenses relevant to BioTime and the AgeX subsidiaries that operated prior to and after AgeX formation during the periods presented

Management considers the allocation methodologies used to allocate expenses as reasonable and appropriate based on historical BioTime expenses attributable to AgeX and its operations for purposes of the standalone, carve-out financial statements included herein. The expenses reflected in the consolidated financial statements may not be indicative of expenses that will be incurred by AgeX as an independent, publicly traded company and should not be relied upon as an indicator of AgeX's future results.

Allocated expenses from BioTime included in the consolidated statements of operations were as follows (in thousands):

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2017[1]	2016
Research and development	$ 1,310	$ 2,148
General and administrative	1,294	1,334
Total allocated expenses from BioTime	$ 2,604	$ 3,482

[1] Reflects the effect of the LifeMap Solutions transfer to BioTime on June 6, 2017 discussed above and in Note 1.

Shared Facilities and Service Agreement

On August 17, 2017, AgeX and BioTime executed a Shared Facilities and Services Agreement ("Shared Facilities Agreement"). Under the terms of the Shared Facilities Agreement, BioTime will allow AgeX to use its premises and equipment located at Alameda, California for the sole purpose of conducting business. BioTime will also provide accounting, billing, bookkeeping, payroll, treasury, payment of accounts payable, and other similar administrative services to AgeX. BioTime may also provide the services of attorneys, accountants, and other professionals who may also provide professional services to BioTime and its other subsidiaries. BioTime will also provide AgeX with the services of its laboratory and research personnel, including BioTime employees and contractors, for the performance of research and development work for AgeX at the premises.

BioTime charges AgeX a Use Fee for services received and usage of facilities, equipment, and supplies. For each billing period, BioTime prorates and allocates costs incurred, as applicable, to AgeX, such costs include services of BioTime employees, equipment, insurance, lease, professional, software, supplies and utilities. Allocation depends on key cost drivers including actual documented use, square footage of facilities used, time spent, costs incurred by or for AgeX, or upon proportionate usage by BioTime and AgeX, as reasonably estimated by BioTime (collectively "Use Fees"). BioTime, at its discretion, has the right to charge AgeX a 5% markup on such allocated costs and BioTime has charged this markup since the August 17, 2017 inception of the Shared Facilities Agreement with AgeX. The allocated cost of BioTime employees and contractors who provide services is based upon records maintained of the number of hours or percentage of time of such personnel devoted to the performance of services.

The Use Fee is determined and invoiced to AgeX on a monthly basis for each calendar month of each calendar year. If the Shared Facilities Agreement terminates prior to the last day of a billing period, the Use Fee will be determined for the number of days in the billing period elapsed prior to the termination of the Shared Facilities Agreement. Each invoice will be payable in full by AgeX within 30 days after receipt. Any invoice, or portion thereof, not paid in full when due will bear interest at the rate of 15% per annum until paid, unless the failure to make a payment is due to any inaction or delay in making a payment by BioTime employees from AgeX funds available for such purpose, rather than from the unavailability of sufficient funds legally available for payment or from an act, omission, or delay by any employee or agent of AgeX. To date BioTime has not charged AgeX any interest.

In addition to the Use Fees, AgeX will reimburse BioTime for any out of pocket costs incurred by BioTime for the purchase of office supplies, laboratory supplies, and other goods and materials and services for the account or use of AgeX, provided that invoices documenting such costs are delivered to AgeX with each invoice for the Use Fee. Furthermore, BioTime will have no obligation to purchase or acquire any office supplies or other goods and materials or any services for AgeX, and if any such supplies, goods, materials or services are obtained for AgeX, BioTime may arrange for the suppliers thereof to invoice AgeX directly.

The Shared Facilities Agreement will remain in effect from year to year, unless either party gives the other party written six months' notice to terminate, or unless the agreement is otherwise terminated under another provision of the agreement. BioTime's lease expires on January 31, 2023.

In aggregate, BioTime charged such Use Fees to AgeX and subsidiaries as follows (in thousands):

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2017	2016
Research and development	$ 1,065	$ 453
General and administrative	615	800
Total Use Fees	$ 1,680	$ 1,253

As of December 31, 2017, and 2016, AgeX had $0.2 million and $23.2 million outstanding and related party payables due to BioTime included in current liabilities on the consolidated balance sheets. Since these amounts are due and payable in 30 days of being invoiced or, for the payable balances at December 31, 2016 expected to be settled or canceled in the next twelve months, the related party payables to BioTime are classified as current liabilities for all periods presented.

5. Shareholders' Equity

Preferred Stock

AgeX is authorized to issue up to 5,000,000 shares of $0.0001 par value preferred stock. To date, no preferred shares are issued and outstanding.

Common Stock

AgeX has up to 100,000,000 shares of $0.0001 par value common stock authorized. The holders of AgeX's common stock are entitled to receive ratably dividends when, as, and if declared by the Board of Directors out of funds legally available. Upon liquidation, dissolution, or winding up, the holders of AgeX common stock are entitled to receive ratably the net assets available after the payment of all debts and other liabilities and subject to the prior rights of AgeX outstanding preferred shares, if any.

The holders of common stock are entitled to one vote for each share held on all matters submitted to a vote of AgeX stockholders. The holders of common stock have no preemptive, subscription, or redemption rights. The outstanding shares of common stock are fully paid and non-assessable.

On August 17, 2017, AgeX received its initial assets and cash from BioTime and certain investors. BioTime contributed certain assets and cash to AgeX in exchange for 28,800,000 shares of AgeX common stock pursuant to the Asset Contribution Agreement discussed in Note 4. As discussed in Note 2, these 28.8 million shares of AgeX common stock have been reflected as outstanding as of the earliest reporting period presented. Concurrently with the acquisition of assets from BioTime under the Asset Contribution Agreement, AgeX sold 4,950,000 shares of its common stock for $10.0 million in cash primarily to investors other than BioTime, which included the Chairman of BioTime's Board of Directors and $32,000 from BioTime (see Note 4).

As of December 31, 2017 and 2016 for financial reporting purposes, there were 33,750,000 and 28,800,000 shares of AgeX common stock issued and outstanding, respectively (see Note 9).

The AgeX shares were offered and sold without registration under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"), in reliance on exemptions from registration under Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act and Rule 506 of Regulation D and Regulation S thereunder. AgeX has agreed to use commercially reasonable efforts to register the shares of AgeX common stock issued to the AgeX investors for sale under the Securities Act.

See Note 4 for Related Party Transactions with BioTime that impacted AgeX's consolidated statements of shareholders equity (deficit) for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016.

6. Stock-based Compensation

Stock Option Plan

Under the 2017 Equity Incentive Plan (the "Plan"), AgeX reserved 4,000,000 shares of common stock for the grant of stock options or the sale of restricted stock. The Plan also permits AgeX to issue such other securities as its Board of Directors or the Compensation Committee administering the Plan may determine.

No options may be granted under the Plan more than ten years after the date upon which the Plan was adopted by the Board of Directors, and no options granted under the Plan may be exercised after the expiration of ten years from the date of grant. Under the Plan, options to purchase common stock may be granted to employees, directors and certain consultants at exercise prices not less than the fair market value of common stock at date of grant, subject to certain limited exceptions for options granted in substitution of other options. Options may be fully exercisable immediately, or may be exercisable according to a schedule or conditions specified by the Board of Directors or the Compensation Committee. Generally, AgeX stock options have service related vesting conditions based on the continued performance of services for AgeX. The Plan also permits AgeX to award restricted stock for services rendered or to sell common stock to employees subject to vesting provisions under restricted stock agreements that provide for forfeiture of unvested shares upon the occurrence of specified events. AgeX may permit employees or consultants, but not officers or directors, who purchase stock under restricted stock purchase agreements, to pay for their shares by delivering a promissory note that is secured by a pledge of their shares. To date, only stock options have been issued under the Plan.

As discussed in Note 4, in connection with the services performed by employees of BioTime, or employees of other BioTime commonly controlled and consolidated subsidiaries within the BioTime group of affiliated entities, AgeX grants stock options to those employees performing services for AgeX and records stock-based compensation expense in the accompanying statements of operations for these services performed in the periods presented.

Stock Options

Options granted under the Plan may be either "incentive stock options" within the meaning of Section 422(b) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code"), or non-qualified stock options. Incentive stock options may be granted only to AgeX employees and employees of its subsidiaries, if any. The exercise price of stock options granted under the Plan must be equal to the fair market of AgeX common stock on the date the option is granted. In the case of an optionee who, at the time of grant, owns more than 10% of the combined voting power of all classes of AgeX stock, the exercise price of any incentive stock option must be at least 110% of the fair market value of the common stock on the grant date, and the term of the option may be no longer than five years. The aggregate fair market value of AgeX common stock (determined as of the grant date of the option) with respect to which incentive stock options become exercisable for the first time by an optionee in any calendar year may not exceed $100,000.

The options' exercise price may be payable in cash or in common stock having a fair market value equal to the exercise price, or in a combination of cash and common stock, or other legal consideration for the issuance of stock as the Board of Directors or Compensation Committee may approve.

Incentive stock options granted under the Plan are nontransferable except by will or the laws of descent and distribution and may be exercised only during employment or within three months after termination of such employment, subject to certain exceptions in the event of the death or disability of the optionee.

Options other than incentive stock options under the Code are also nontransferable except by will or the laws of descent and distribution, except to the extent that the Board of Directors or Committee permits the optionee to transfer an option to a family member, a trust for family members, or other persons approved by the Board of Directors or Committee in its discretion.

Generally, options will be exercisable only while the optionee remains an employee, director or consultant, or during a specific period thereafter as approved by the Board of Directors or Committee, but in the case of the termination of an employee, director, or consultant's services due to death or disability, the period for exercising a vested option shall be extended to the earlier of 12 months after termination or the expiration date of the option.

The number of shares of common stock covered by the Plan, and the number of shares of common stock and the exercise price per share of each outstanding option, shall be proportionately adjusted for any increase or decrease in the number of issued and outstanding shares of common stock resulting from a subdivision or consolidation of shares or the payment of a stock dividend, or any other increase or decrease in the number of issued and outstanding shares of common stock effected without receipt of consideration by AgeX.

Options Granted

As of December 31, 2017, 2,761,000 remained available for grants under the Plan.

A summary of AgeX stock option activity under the Plan and related information follows (in thousands except weighted average exercise price):

Options	Available for Grant	Number of Shares	Weighed Average Exercise Price
Outstanding at January 1, 2017	-	-	$ -
Increase in option pool	4,000		
Granted	(1,239)	1,239	2.00
Outstanding at December 31, 2017	2,761	1,239	2.00
Exercisable at December 31, 2017		6	$ 2.00

There were no exercises of stock options during the years ended December 31, 2017.

Total proceeds if all options granted and outstanding as of December 31, 2017 were exercised would be approximately $2.5 million.

At December 31, 2017, AgeX had approximately $1.5 million of total unrecognized compensation expense related to the Plan that will be recognized over a weighted-average period of approximately 2.69 years.

AgeX recorded stock-based compensation expense in the following categories on the accompanying consolidated statements of operations for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 (in thousands):

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2017[(1)]	2016[(2)]
Research and development	$ 245	$ 613
General and administrative	507	1,016
Total stock-based compensation expense	$ 752	$ 1,629

[(1)] Reflects the effect of the LifeMap Solutions transfer to BioTime on June 6, 2017 discussed in Notes 1 and 4.

[(2)]AgeX did not have an equity incentive plan until July 2017, accordingly, consolidated stock-based compensation expense for the year ended December 31, 2016 consists of stock-based compensation allocated from BioTime for AgeX's carve-out presentation purposes, principally related to stock-based compensation of former BioTime employees transferred to AgeX, and stock-based compensation of AgeX's subsidiaries, including LifeMap Solutions, that have their own equity plans.

The weighted average assumptions that were used to calculate the grant date fair value of AgeX's stock option grants for the year ended December 31, 2017 were as follows.

	Year Ended December 31, 2017
Expected life (in years)	5.84
Risk-free interest rates	2.04%
Volatility	74.9%
Dividend yield	-%

The determination of stock-based compensation is inherently uncertain and subjective and involves the application of valuation models and assumptions requiring the use of judgment. If AgeX had made different assumptions, its stock-based compensation expense, and net loss for years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, may have been significantly different. See Note 2 for a discussion of the factors used in determining these assumptions.

AgeX does not recognize deferred income taxes for incentive stock option compensation expense and records a tax deduction only when a disqualified disposition has occurred.

7. Income Taxes

For Federal and California purposes, AgeX's activity for 2016 and 2017 was or will be included in BioTime's federal and California combined tax returns. The provision for income taxes has been presented as if AgeX had filed a separate federal consolidated tax return and a California combined tax return for the periods presented (see Note 2). Accordingly, depending on the future legal structure of AgeX and related tax elections that may be taken by AgeX or its parent, BioTime, the effective tax rate of AgeX in future years could vary materially from its historical effective tax rates. The net operating losses and research and development credits that certain departments generated before August 17, 2017, the contribution date to AgeX, will remain as tax attributes of BioTime (see Note 4). Otherwise, the deferred tax assets, including the operating losses and credit carryforwards, generated by AgeX and, to the extent not utilized by BioTime on the Distribution date of AgeX, will remain with AgeX (see Note 2).

On December 22, 2017, in response to the enactment of the 2017 Tax Act (see Note 2), the SEC staff issued SAB 118 that allows AgeX to record provisional amounts during a measurement period not to extend beyond one year of the enactment date. AgeX is currently analyzing the 2017 Tax Act, and in certain areas, has made reasonable estimates of the effects on its consolidated financial statements and tax disclosures, including the amount of the repatriation tax and changes to AgeX's existing deferred tax balances, for the year ended December 31, 2017. The repatriation tax is based primarily on LifeMap Sciences Ltd., an Israeli subsidiary of LifeMap Sciences (see Note 4), accumulated foreign earnings and profits that LifeMap Sciences previously excluded from U.S. income taxes. As a result, LifeMap Sciences included $227,000 in foreign earnings in federal income for the current year. The federal taxable income was offset by current year operating losses and resulted in no federal income tax due.

AgeX remeasured certain deferred tax assets and liabilities based on the enacted tax rate at which they are expected to reverse in the future. The estimated, tax effected, amount related to the remeasurement of these balances was a reduction of AgeX's net deferred tax assets of $3.9 million with a corresponding decrease in the valuation allowance by the same amount, recognized as of December 31, 2017, as discussed below. AgeX considers the key estimates on the repatriation tax, net deferred tax remeasurement and the impact on unrealized tax benefits, if any, to be incomplete due to its continuing analysis of final year-end data and tax positions. AgeX's completion of this analysis could affect the measurement of these balances and may result in new deferred tax assets and liabilities. Since the 2017 Tax Act was passed late in the fourth quarter of 2017, and further guidance and accounting interpretation is expected over the next twelve months, AgeX's implementation is not complete and management expects to complete its analysis within the measurement period provided by SAB 118.

Deferred income taxes reflect the net tax effects of temporary differences between the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities for financial reporting purposes and the amounts used for income tax purposes. As of December 31, 2017, the federal portion of the deferred tax assets and liabilities for 2017 were re-rated from 34 percent to 21 percent pursuant to the 2017 Tax Act.

The primary components of the net deferred tax assets and liabilities at December 31, 2017 and 2016 were as follows (in thousands):

Deferred tax assets/(liabilities):	2017	2016
Net operating loss carryforwards	$ 8,367	$ 14,726
Research and development credit carryforwards	1,658	1,580
Patents and fixed assets	9	2
Stock based compensation	82	282
Equity Investments	232	412
Other, net	(302)	(446)
Valuation allowance	(10,046)	(16,556)
Total net deferred tax assets	$ -	$ -

Due to losses incurred for all periods presented, AgeX did not record any provision or benefit for income taxes.

Income taxes differed from the amounts computed by applying the U.S. federal income tax of 34% to pretax losses from operations as a result of the following:

	2017	2016
Computed tax (provision)/benefit at federal statutory rate	34%	34%
Research and development and other credits	2%	1%
Rerate of federal net deferred tax assets	(58%)	-
State tax benefit, net of effect on federal income taxes	4%	6%
Permanent differences	(4%)	(2%)
Change in valuation allowance	22%	(39%)
	-%	-%

As of December 31, 2017, AgeX has net operating loss carryforwards of approximately $29.7 million for U.S. federal income tax purposes prepared using the separate return method. Of this amount, $7.7 million is attributable to LifeMap Sciences, which includes $1.5 million in NOLs generated while it was included in the consolidated BioTime tax group and would be available to offset income of AgeX in the future. The remaining LifeMap Sciences' NOLs of $6.2 million are attributable to NOLs generated for the tax years during which LifeMap Sciences filed a separate federal income tax return and, accordingly, those NOLs are available only to LifeMap Sciences' taxable income within AgeX in future years. In addition, $5.2 million of the net operating loss is attributable to losses incurred by certain former BioTime research and development departments prior to BioTime's contribution of those departments to AgeX on August 17, 2017 (see Note 4) and, accordingly, those NOLs cannot be used to offset any future taxable income of AgeX. As a result, as of December 31, 2017, the NOLs available to the AgeX federal tax filing group is approximately $24.5 million, of which $6.2 million may solely be used by LifeMap Sciences, to the extent not utilized by BioTime while AgeX and LifeMap Sciences remain a part of BioTime's consolidated federal tax group. In general, NOLs and other tax credit carryforwards generated by legal entities in a consolidated federal tax group are available to other members of the tax group depending on the nature of the transaction that a member may enter into while still in the consolidated federal tax group. However, under the Tax Matters Agreement between BioTime and AgeX, any use of a member's NOLs and other tax credit carryforwards by the other member is subject to reimbursement by the benefiting member for the actual tax benefit realized.

On June 6, 2017, BioTime and LifeMap Sciences entered into a Debt Conversion Agreement whereby BioTime acquired additional stock in LifeMap Sciences (see Note 4) and other assets, including intellectual property in exchange for related party payable of approximately $8.8 million owed to BioTime. Consistent with the financial reporting impacts discussed in Note 4, LifeMap Sciences recorded the tax effect of the transactions in equity instead of the tax provision in accordance with ASC 740-20-45-11(g), which requires that the tax effects of all changes in tax bases of assets and liabilities caused by transactions among or with shareholders be included in equity. In connection with this transaction, LifeMap Sciences utilized approximately $3.7 million in net operating loss carryforwards with a corresponding release of the valuation allowance recorded through equity in accordance with ASC 740-20-45-11(g).

For income tax purposes, the purchase by BioTime of LifeMap Sciences' intellectual property and other assets resulted in a taxable gain to LifeMap Sciences of $3.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2017. Although LifeMap Sciences had sufficient net operating loss carryforwards to offset the entire gain, it incurred a federal alternative minimum tax payable of $22,000 as of December 31, 2017. As previously noted under the 2017 Tax Act, corporations are no longer subject to the AMT, effective for taxable years beginning after December 31, 2017. To the extent a company has an AMT credit from a prior year, the company can carry the credit forward to offset regular tax. To the extent the company does not have a federal tax liability, a portion of the AMT credit is refundable each year starting in 2018, with any remaining balance fully refundable in 2021. As LifeMap Sciences will ultimately receive a full refund of the current AMT payable, fully offsetting the current provision, there is no tax provision or benefit recorded for the year ended December 31, 2017.

As of December 31, 2017, AgeX has net operating losses of approximately $25.0 million for state purposes using the separate return method. As AgeX and its subsidiaries have been included in the combined California tax return with BioTime, those state net operating losses, to the extent not utilized by BioTime, will remain with AgeX. In general, NOLs and other tax credit carryforwards generated by legal entities in a combined state tax group are available to other members of the tax group depending on the nature of the transaction that a member may enter into while still in the combined state tax group. However, under the Tax Matters Agreement between BioTime and AgeX, any use of a member's NOLs and other tax credit carryforwards by the other member is subject to reimbursement by the benefiting member for the actual tax benefit realized. The federal and state net operating losses expire in varying amounts between 2028 and 2037.

As of December 31, 2017, using the separate return method (see Note 2), AgeX has research and development tax credit carryforwards for federal and state tax purposes of $853,000 and $805,000, respectively. However, of these amounts, $787,000 and $708,000 of federal and state tax credits, respectively are available to AgeX, of which $520,000 and $429,000, respectively, is attributable to LifeMap Sciences, Inc. The difference of $66,000 and $97,000 of federal and state tax credits, respectively, will remain with BioTime. Although this LifeMap, Inc. Sciences credit has been included as part of the AgeX credit carryforwards, LifeMap Sciences filed a separate federal income tax return for the periods presented and its respective research credit carryforwards may not be used to offset federal taxable income of AgeX. As AgeX and its subsidiaries were included in the California combined return with BioTime, these credits noted above will remain with AgeX to the extent not utilized by BioTime, subject to the Tax Matters Agreement described above. The federal tax credits expire between 2028 and 2037, while the state tax credits have no expiration date.

A valuation allowance is provided when it is more likely than not that some or all of the deferred tax assets will not be realized. AgeX established a full valuation allowance for all periods presented due to the uncertainty of realizing future tax benefits from its net operating loss carryforwards and other deferred tax assets. The change in the valuation allowance was a decrease of $6.5 million from 2016 to 2017.

Other Income Tax Matters

Internal Revenue Code Section 382 places a limitation ("Section 382 Limitation") on the amount of taxable income that can be offset by net operating loss ("NOL") carryforwards after a change in control (generally greater than 50% change in ownership within a three-year period) of a loss corporation. California has similar rules. Generally, after a control change, a loss corporation cannot deduct NOL carryforwards in excess of the Section 382 Limitation. Due to these "change in ownership" provisions, utilization of the NOL and tax credit carryforwards may be subject to an annual limitation regarding their utilization against taxable income in future periods. There has not been a change in ownership for any of the periods presented (see Note 9).

AgeX and its subsidiaries may be subject to potential income tax examination by U.S. federal or states authorities. These potential examinations may include inquiries regarding the timing and amount of deductions, and compliance with U.S. federal and state tax laws. In general, the AgeX legal entity is not subject to tax examination by major taxing authorities since AgeX has not yet filed any income tax returns as it was formed in 2017. For AgeX subsidiaries that did operate and filed separate tax returns, those entities are not subject to tax examination by major taxing authorities for tax years before 2013. However, the taxing authorities may still make adjustments to the net operating loss and credit carryforwards used in open years by AgeX or any of its subsidiaries. Any potential examinations may include inquiries regarding the timing and amount of deductions, and compliance with U.S. federal and state tax laws.

8. Commitments and Contingencies

AgeX had no commitments other than those under the Shared Facilities and Services Agreement described in Note 4. The minimum fixed payments due under the Shared Facilities Agreement are approximately $117,000 per month.

Litigation – General

AgeX is subject to various claims and contingencies in the ordinary course of its business, including those related to litigation, business transactions, employee-related matters, and others. When AgeX is aware of a claim or potential claim, it assesses the likelihood of any loss or exposure. If it is probable that a loss will result and the amount of the loss can be reasonably estimated, AgeX will record a liability for the loss. If the loss is not probable or the amount of the loss cannot be reasonably estimated, AgeX discloses the claim if the likelihood of a potential loss is reasonably possible and the amount involved could be material. AgeX is not aware of any claims likely to have a material adverse effect on its financial condition or results of operations.

Employment Contracts

AgeX has entered into employment contracts with certain executive officers. Under the provisions of the contracts, AgeX may be required to incur severance obligations for matters relating to changes in control, as defined, and involuntary terminations.

Indemnification

In the normal course of business, AgeX may provide indemnifications of varying scope under AgeX's agreements with other companies or consultants, typically for AgeX's pre-clinical programs. Pursuant to these agreements, AgeX will generally agree to indemnify, hold harmless, and reimburse the indemnified parties for losses and expenses suffered or incurred by the indemnified parties arising from claims of third parties in connection with AgeX's pre-clinical programs. Indemnification provisions could also cover third party infringement claims with respect to patent rights, copyrights, or other intellectual property pertaining to AgeX's pre-clinical programs. The term of these indemnification agreements will generally continue in effect after the termination or expiration of the particular research, development, services, or license agreement to which they relate. The potential future payments AgeX could be required to make under these indemnification agreements will generally not be subject to any specified maximum amount. Historically, AgeX has not been subject to any claims or demands for indemnification. AgeX also maintains various liability insurance policies that limit AgeX's financial exposure. As a result, AgeX believes the fair value of these indemnification agreements is minimal. Accordingly, AgeX has not recorded any liabilities for these agreements as of December 31, 2017 and 2016.

9. Subsequent Events

Subsequent events – audited

On February 28, 2018, AgeX sold warrants to purchase 1,473,600 shares of common stock (the "AgeX Warrants") for $0.50 per warrant for aggregate net cash proceeds to AgeX of $736,800. The AgeX Warrants are exercisable at $2.50 per share and expire the earliest to occur of (i) February 28, 2021, (ii) on or after January 31, 2019, after notice from AgeX, if the AgeX shares are publicly traded, the price of AgeX common stock exceeds $3.75 per share for 20 trading days (on a volume weighted average price basis, as defined), and (iii) a change of control, as defined in warrant agreement. If the AgeX shares are not publicly traded, the AgeX Warrants may be exercised only during the period commencing ten business days prior to the expiration date, as defined in the warrant agreement. As part of this offering, Alfred D. Kingsley, the Chairman of BioTime's Board of Directors, purchased AgeX stock purchase warrants entitling Mr. Kingsley to purchase 248,600 shares of AgeX common stock at an exercise price of $2.50 per share. AgeX received $124,300, or $0.50 per warrant, from Mr. Kingsley.

On March 21, 2018, AgeX paid $800,000 for the purchase of certain patents and licenses from Ascendance.

On March 28, 2018, AgeX received approximately $3.2 million from the sale of its ownership stake in Ascendance.

On April 5, 2018, ReCyte was awarded a grant of up to approximately $386,000 from the National Institutes of Health (NIH). The NIH grant provides funding for continued development of AgeX's technologies for treating stroke. The grant funds will be made available by NIH for payment to ReCyte as allowable expenses are incurred.

On June 7, 2018, AgeX sold 2 million shares of common stock for $2.50 per share for aggregate cash proceeds to AgeX of $5.0 million. As of the completion of this financing on June 7, 2018, BioTime owned 80.6% of the issued and outstanding shares of AgeX common stock.

Subsequent events – unaudited

On July 10, 2018, AgeX sold additional AgeX Warrants to purchase 526,400 shares of common stock for $0.50 per warrant for aggregate net cash proceeds to AgeX of $263,200. The AgeX Warrants are exercisable at $2.50 per share and expire the earliest to occur of (i) February 28, 2021, (ii) on or after January 31, 2019, after notice from AgeX, if the AgeX shares are publicly traded, the price of AgeX common stock exceeds $3.75 per share for 20 trading days (on a volume weighted average price basis, as defined), and (iii) a change of control, as defined in warrant agreement. If the AgeX shares are not publicly traded, the AgeX Warrants may be exercised only during the period commencing ten business days prior to the expiration date, as defined in the warrant agreement.

On August 13, 2018, AgeX entered into an Asset Purchase Agreement (the "Purchase Agreement") with Escape Therapeutics, Inc. ("Escape") pursuant to which AgeX acquired certain patents and patent applications related primarily to methods of modifying cells and tissues and certain pluripotent stem cell lines so as to reduce their risk of being rejected when transplanted. This technology is called "UniverCyte™". AgeX paid Escape $1,072,436 in cash and issued 80,000 shares of AgeX common stock, with an approximate value of $240,000, for aggregate acquisition cost of $1.3 million for the UniverCyte™ assets.

Pursuant to the Purchase Agreement, if AgeX has not expended a certain level of funds by the end of 2019 toward the research and development of pluripotent stem cell or progenitor cell products and processes utilizing the acquired patents and the development or improvement of the acquired patents, AgeX will make an additional annual cash payment to Escape. If total development expenditures have still not reached a predetermined level by the end of 2020, AgeX will pay Escape additional amounts and the royalty rate for net sales of products, processes and services will be tripled until total expenditures reach the required threshold. The aggregate cash payments AgeX may make to Escape for not reaching the predetermined level of expenses can be up to $1 million.

In addition to the purchase price, AgeX will pay Escape a royalty of less than 1% on net sales of products, process and services under the acquired patents, if the assets are commercialized. Additional shares of AgeX common stock totaling up to $4.3 million in market value per product will also be issued to Escape upon the attainment of development and regulatory approval milestones by AgeX for each product covered by the acquired patents.

Escape has agreed to indemnify AgeX from certain liabilities. The Purchase Agreement contains representations, warranties and agreements customary for a transaction of this nature.

AgeX has also agreed to engage Escape's chief executive officer as a consultant for a period of up to three years to assist AgeX in utilizing the acquired patents.

BioTime's sale of significant ownership interest in AgeX to Juvenescence

On August 30, 2018, BioTime consummated the sale of 14,400,000 shares of common stock of AgeX currently owned by BioTime to Juvenescence (the "Transaction"). Prior to the Transaction, Juvenescence owned 5.6% of AgeX's issued and outstanding common stock. Upon completion of the Transaction, BioTime's ownership in AgeX was reduced from 80.4% to 40.2% of AgeX's issued and outstanding shares of common stock, and Juvenescence's ownership in AgeX was increased from 5.6% to 45.8% of AgeX's issued and outstanding shares of common stock.

Beginning on August 30, 2018, AgeX is no longer considered a subsidiary of BioTime and, as of that date, BioTime has experienced a "loss of control" of a subsidiary, as defined by generally accepted accounting principles in the U.S. Loss of control is deemed to have occurred when, among other things, a parent company owns less than a majority of the outstanding common stock in the subsidiary, lacks a controlling financial interest in the subsidiary, and is unable to unilaterally control the subsidiary through other means such as having, or being able to obtain, the power to elect a majority of the subsidiary's Board of Directors based solely on contractual rights or ownership of shares holding a majority of the voting power of the subsidiary's voting securities. All of these loss-of-control factors were present with respect to BioTime's ownership interest in AgeX as of August 30, 2018. Accordingly, BioTime has deconsolidated AgeX's consolidated financial statements and consolidated results from its consolidated financial statements and consolidated results beginning on August 30, 2018. AgeX is currently an affiliate of BioTime.

In connection with the Transaction, the termination provision of the Shared Facilities Agreement entitling the parties to terminate the agreement upon six months advance written notice was amended. Pursuant to the amendment, following the deconsolidation of AgeX from BioTime's consolidated financial statements, each party retains the right to terminate the Shared Facilities Agreement at any time by giving the other party six months advance written notice, but BioTime may not do so prior to September 1, 2020.

The Transaction was not deemed to be a change of control, as defined by Internal Revenue Code Section 382 ("Section 382"). Accordingly, no Section 382 limitations on utilization of AgeX's NOL and tax credit carryforwards have occurred in connection with the Transaction (see Note 7).

AgeX did not receive any proceeds from the Transaction.

On October 15, 2018, AgeX and Alfred D. Kingsley entered into a separation agreement under which Mr. Kingsley resigned from all of his positions with AgeX, including as its Executive Chairman (the "Separation Agreement"). In connection with Mr. Kingsley's resignation and pursuant the Separation Agreement, Mr. Kingsley agreed to a general release of claims and AgeX paid Mr. Kingsley his accrued but unpaid base salary up to October 15, 2018 and other accrued compensation. In exchange for this release and Mr. Kingsley's other obligations under the agreement, all options issued by AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. and held by Mr. Kingsley as of October 15, 2018, representing the right to purchase 330,000 shares of AgeX common stock at an exercise price of $2.00 per share, vested as of October 15, 2018 and will remain exercisable until October 16, 2023. As a result of the accelerated vesting of all AgeX unvested stock options and the extension of time for Mr. Kingsley to exercise all outstanding AgeX stock options, AgeX will record approximately $578,000 in noncash stock based compensation expense in accordance with ASC 718.

On October 18, 2018, AgeX entered into an employment agreement with its Chief Executive Officer, Michael D. West, (the "West Employment Agreement"). Pursuant to the West Employment Agreement, Dr. West's annual base salary will be $525,000 and Dr. West is eligible to earn an annual incentive cash bonus with a target of no less than 50% of annual base salary. Actual bonus amounts will be based on Dr. West's attainment of individual performance goals at target levels set by the Board of Directors for the applicable calendar year. If such performance goals for the applicable year are fully achieved, the Board of Directors may approve a bonus amount exceeding the target bonus level.

Under the West Employment Agreement, Dr. West has been granted options to purchase 500,000 shares of AgeX common stock with an exercise price of $3.00 per share, with one fourth of the options vesting following 12 full months of continuous service as an employee of AgeX and the balance vesting in 36 equal monthly installments commencing on the

first anniversary of the date of grant, based upon the completion of each month of continuous service as an employee. Such options expire on the earliest of (1) 10 years from the date of grant, (2) three months after Dr. West ceases to provide continuous service to AgeX (other than due to death or disability) or (3) one year after Dr. West ceases to provide continuous service due to death or disability.

If AgeX terminates Dr. West's employment without "cause" or he resigns for "good reason" at any time, as defined in the West Employment Agreement, Dr. West will be entitled to (1) 12 months base salary, (2) all accrued but unpaid salary earned prior to or as of the date of termination or resignation, (3) full payment of Dr. West's target bonus for such year and (4) for a period of six months, all benefits under any health insurance plan of AgeX. In addition, if AgeX terminates Dr. West's employment without "cause" or he resigns for "good reason," (1) all of Dr. West's outstanding equity awards that would otherwise have vested during the 12 months following termination or resignation will become fully vested and exercisable immediately and (2) with respect to any outstanding vested but unexercised options, the exercise period following termination or resignation will be extended to the earlier of the (A) 12 months after termination or (B) the contractual expiration date of the applicable option. If AgeX terminates Dr. West's employment without "cause," or he resigns for "good reason," following a change of control, as defined in the West Employment Agreement (1) Dr. West will be entitled to all of the benefits and payments that he would have been entitled to if his employment had been otherwise terminated without "cause" or if he resigned for "good reason," as set forth above, and (2) all of Dr. West's unvested options and restricted stock units, if any, will become fully vested and exercisable immediately. The severance compensation may be paid in a lump sum or, at AgeX's election, in installments consistent with the payment of Dr. West's salary while employed by AgeX.

AgeX has evaluated subsequent events and transactions for potential recognition or disclosure in the consolidated financial statements through November 26, 2018, the day the consolidated financial statements were available for issuance.

AGEX THERAPEUTICS, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES
CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS
(IN THOUSANDS, EXCEPT PAR VALUE AMOUNTS)

	September 30, 2018 (Unaudited)	December 31, 2017
ASSETS		
CURRENT ASSETS		
Cash and cash equivalents	$ 8,756	$ 7,375
Accounts receivable, net	191	107
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	222	111
Total current assets	9,169	7,593
Equipment and furniture, net	101	129
Deposits and other long-term assets	23	35
Intangible assets, net	2,849	1,874
TOTAL ASSETS	$ 12,142	$ 9,631
LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY		
CURRENT LIABILITIES		
Accounts payable and accrued liabilities	$ 1,009	$ 768
Related party payable to BioTime	98	210
Deferred revenues	208	180
Other current liabilities	90	154
TOTAL LIABILITIES	1,405	1,312
Commitments and contingencies (Note 8)		
SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY		
Preferred stock, $0.0001 par value, authorized 5,000 shares; none issued and outstanding as of September 30, 2018 (unaudited) and December 31, 2017	-	-
Common stock, $0.0001 par value, 100,000 shares authorized; 35,830 shares issued and outstanding as of September 30, 2018 (unaudited) and 33,750 as of December 31, 2017	4	3
Additional paid-in capital	80,702	73,761
Accumulated other comprehensive income	27	68
Accumulated deficit	(70,868)	(66,552)
AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. shareholders' equity	9,865	7,280
Noncontrolling interest	872	1,039
Total shareholders' equity	10,737	8,319
TOTAL LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY	$ 12,142	$ 9,631

See accompanying notes to the condensed consolidated interim financial statements.

AGEX THERAPEUTICS, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES
CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS
(IN THOUSANDS, EXCEPT PER SHARE DATA)
(UNAUDITED)

	Nine Months Ended September 30,	
	2018	**2017**
REVENUES:		
Subscription and advertisement revenues	$ 945	$ 944
Service and other revenues	138	2
Total revenues	1,083	946
Cost of sales	(184)	(114)
Gross profit	899	832
OPERATING EXPENSES:		
Research and development	(4,307)	(4,517)
Acquired in-process research and development	(800)	-
General and administrative	(3,679)	(3,174)
Total operating expenses	(8,786)	(7,691)
Gain on sale of assets	-	1,754
Loss from operations	(7,887)	(5,105)
OTHER INCOME/(EXPENSES):		
Interest income (expense), net	84	(28)
Gain on sale of equity method investment in Ascendance	3,215	-
Other income, net	131	40
Total other income, net	3,430	12
NET LOSS	(4,457)	(5,093)
Net loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	141	20
NET LOSS ATTRIBUTABLE TO AGEX THERAPEUTICS, INC.	$ (4,316)	$ (5,073)
NET LOSS PER COMMON SHARE: BASIC AND DILUTED	$ (0.12)	$ (0.17)
WEIGHTED AVERAGE NUMBER OF SHARES OF COMMON STOCK OUTSTANDING: BASIC AND DILUTED	34,606	29,598

See accompanying notes to the condensed consolidated interim financial statements.

AGEX THERAPEUTICS, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES
CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE LOSS
(IN THOUSANDS)
(UNAUDITED)

	Nine Months Ended September 30,	
	2018	**2017**
NET LOSS	$ (4,457)	$ (5,093)
Other comprehensive loss, net of tax:		
Foreign currency translation loss, net of tax	(41)	(85)
COMPREHENSIVE LOSS	(4,498)	(5,178)
Less: Comprehensive loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	141	20
COMPREHENSIVE LOSS ATTRIBUTABLE TO AGEX THERAPEUTICS, INC.	$ (4,357)	$ (5,158)

See accompanying notes to the condensed consolidated interim financial statements.

AGEX THERAPEUTICS, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES
CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY
(IN THOUSANDS)
(UNAUDITED)

	Common Stock		Additional Paid-In	Accumulated	Noncontrolling	Accumulated Other Comprehensive	
	Shares	Par Value	Capital	Deficit	Interest	Income	Total
BALANCE AT DECEMBER 31, 2017	33,750	$ 3	$ 73,761	$ (66,552)	$ 1,039	$ 68	$ 8,319
Sale of shares of common stock	2,000	1	4,999				5,000
Issuance of shares to acquire in-process research and development	80	-	240				240
Sale of warrants	-	-	1,000	-	-	-	1,000
Stock-based compensation	-	-	488	-	-	-	488
Stock based compensation allocated from BioTime	-	-	184	-	-	-	184
Stock-based compensation in subsidiaries	-	-	-	-	4	-	4
Transactions with noncontrolling interests	-	-	30	-	(30)	-	-
Foreign currency translation adjustment	-	-	-	-	-	(41)	(41)
Net loss	-	-	-	(4,316)	(141)	-	(4,457)
BALANCE AT SEPTEMBER 30, 2018	35,830	$ 4	$ 80,702	$ (70,868)	$ 872	$ 27	$10,737

See accompanying notes to the condensed consolidated interim financial statements.

AGEX THERAPEUTICS, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES
CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS
(IN THOUSANDS)
(UNAUDITED)

	Nine Months Ended September 30,	
	2018	**2017**
CASH FLOWS FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES:		
Net loss attributable to AgeX Therapeutics	$ (4,316)	$ (5,073)
Net loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	(141)	(20)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss attributable to AgeX Therapeutics to net cash used in operating activities:		
Gain on sale of equity method investment in Ascendance	(3,215)	-
Acquired in-process research and development	800	-
Depreciation expense	48	146
Amortization of intangible assets	337	411
Amortization of deferred license fee expense	-	17
Gain on sale of assets	-	(1,754)
Stock-based compensation	488	2
Stock-based compensation allocated from BioTime	184	296
Subsidiary stock-based compensation	4	225
Foreign currency remeasurement (gain) loss and other	(47)	57
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:		
Accounts receivable, net	(84)	330
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	(100)	9
Accounts payable and accrued liabilities	241	137
Related party payable to BioTime	(112)	1,144
Deferred revenues and other current liabilities	(36)	(98)
Net cash used in operating activities	(5,949)	(4,171)
CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES:		
Proceeds from the sale of equity method investment in Ascendance	3,215	-
Purchase of in-process research and development	(1,872)	-
Purchase of equipment and other assets	(21)	-
Removal of cash upon deconsolidation of LifeMap Solutions	-	(3)
Security deposit and other, net	2	9
Net cash provided by investing activities	1,324	6
CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES:		
Contributions from BioTime	-	1,971
Advances from BioTime	-	1,304
Proceeds from issuance of common shares	5,000	10,000
Proceeds from sale of warrants	1,000	-
Net cash provided by financing activities	6,000	13,275
Effect of exchange rate changes on cash and cash equivalents	6	26
NET INCREASE IN CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS	1,381	9,136
CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS:		
At beginning of the period	7,375	259
At end of the period	$ 8,756	$ 9,395

See accompanying notes to the condensed consolidated interim financial statements.

AGEX THERAPEUTICS, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES
NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED INTERIM FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (UNAUDITED)

1. Organization, Basis of Presentation and Liquidity

General – AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. ("AgeX") was incorporated in January 2017 in the state of Delaware as a subsidiary of BioTime, Inc. ("BioTime"), a publicly traded, clinical-stage biotechnology company targeting degenerative diseases. BioTime common stock trades on the NYSE American and Tel Aviv Stock Exchange under the symbol "BTX".

AgeX is a biotechnology company focused on the development and commercialization of novel therapeutics targeting human aging. AgeX's initial discovery and pre-clinical programs focus on utilizing brown adipose tissue ("brown fat") in targeting diabetes, obesity, and heart disease; and induced tissue regeneration ("iTR") in utilizing the human body's own abilities to scarlessly regenerate tissues damaged from age or trauma. AgeX may also pursue other early-stage pre-clinical programs.

On August 17, 2017, AgeX completed an asset acquisition and stock sale pursuant to which it received certain assets from BioTime for use in its research and development programs and raised $10.0 million in cash from investors to finance its operations.

On September 25, 2017, BioTime's Board of Directors approved a distribution of some or all of the shares of AgeX common stock owned by BioTime to BioTime's shareholders.

On June 7, 2018, AgeX sold 2.0 million shares of common stock for $2.50 per share for aggregate cash proceeds to AgeX of $5.0 million to Juvenescence Limited ("Juvenescence").

BioTime's sale of significant ownership interest in AgeX to Juvenescence – On August 30, 2018, BioTime consummated the sale of 14,400,000 shares of common stock of AgeX owned by BioTime to Juvenescence (the "Transaction"). Prior to the Transaction, Juvenescence owned 5.6% of AgeX's issued and outstanding common stock. Upon completion of the Transaction, BioTime's ownership in AgeX was reduced from 80.4% to 40.2% of AgeX's issued and outstanding shares of common stock, and Juvenescence's ownership in AgeX was increased from 5.6% to 45.8% of AgeX's issued and outstanding shares of common stock. AgeX did not receive any proceeds from the Transaction.

Beginning on August 30, 2018, AgeX is no longer considered a subsidiary of BioTime and, as of that date, BioTime has experienced a "loss of control" of a subsidiary, as defined by generally accepted accounting principles in the U.S. Loss of control is deemed to have occurred when, among other things, a parent company owns less than a majority of the outstanding common stock in the subsidiary, lacks a controlling financial interest in the subsidiary and, is unable to unilaterally control the subsidiary through other means such as having, or being able to obtain, the power to elect a majority of the subsidiary's Board of Directors based solely on contractual rights or ownership of shares holding a majority of the voting power of the subsidiary's voting securities. All of these loss-of-control factors were present with respect to BioTime's ownership interest in AgeX as of August 30, 2018. Accordingly, BioTime has deconsolidated AgeX's consolidated financial statements and results from its consolidated financial statements and results beginning on August 30, 2018. AgeX is currently an affiliate of BioTime.

Liquidity – Since inception, AgeX has financed its operations through contributions and advances from its former parent company, BioTime, and the sale of its common stock and warrants (see Note 5). BioTime has also provided AgeX with the use of BioTime facilities and services under a Shared Facilities and Services Agreement as described in Note 4. Although BioTime may continue to provide administrative support to AgeX on a reimbursable basis, AgeX does not expect BioTime to provide future financing. AgeX has incurred operating losses and negative cash flows since inception and had an accumulated deficit of $70.9 million as of September 30, 2018. AgeX expects to continue to incur operating losses and negative cash flows.

AgeX has evaluated its projected cash flows and believes that its cash and cash equivalents of $8.8 million as of September 30, 2018, provide sufficient cash, cash equivalents, and liquidity to carry out AgeX's current operations through at least twelve months from the issuance date of the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements included herein.

AgeX's projected cash flows are subject to various risks and uncertainties, and the unavailability or inadequacy of financing to meet future capital needs could force it to modify, curtail, delay, or suspend some or all aspects of its planned operations. AgeX's determination as to when it will seek new financing and the amount of financing that it will need will be based on its evaluation of the progress it makes in its research and development programs, any changes to the scope and focus of those programs, and projection of future costs, revenues, and rates of expenditure. AgeX cannot assure that adequate financing will be available on favorable terms, if at all. Sales of additional equity securities by AgeX could result in the dilution of the interests of present shareholders.

Basis of presentation - The accompanying condensed consolidated financial statements presented herein have been prepared on a separate, standalone basis, referred to as "carve-out" basis financial statements. Carve-out financial statements are based on a general principle that the historical financial statements of a registrant should reflect, in all material respects, all of the registrant's costs of doing business, including certain expenses incurred by the parent on its behalf. Prior to August 2017, AgeX's current subsidiaries and certain research and development departments within AgeX operated as subsidiaries and research and development departments of BioTime, including an equity method investment in Ascendance (see Note 4). Beginning with the August 17, 2017 capitalization of AgeX and the Asset Contribution and Separation Agreement ("Asset Contribution Agreement") with BioTime discussed in Note 4, these former subsidiaries and research and development departments of BioTime, including the equity method investment in Ascendance, were contributed to AgeX. Although the AgeX legal entity commenced operations in 2017, its subsidiaries, research and development departments and investments, as applicable, operated prior to 2017. Accordingly, the accompanying consolidated financial statements were prepared on a carve-out basis for purposes of presenting what AgeX's condensed consolidated financial position, results of operations and cash flows would have been had AgeX operated the business as a standalone entity for the periods presented. The condensed consolidated financial statements are not necessarily indicative of AgeX's future performance and do not reflect what AgeX's financial performance or results would have been had the company operated as an independent, publicly traded company during the periods presented, and should not be relied upon as an indicator of AgeX's future results.

For periods prior to August 30, 2018, BioTime had consolidated the results of AgeX and its subsidiaries into BioTime's consolidated results based on BioTime's ability to control AgeX's operating and financial decisions and policies through the majority ownership of AgeX common stock throughout the periods presented. As discussed above, beginning on August 30, 2018, BioTime has deconsolidated AgeX's consolidated financial statements and results from its consolidated financial statements and results.

To the extent AgeX does not have its own employees, human resources or facilities for its operations, BioTime or BioTime commonly controlled and consolidated subsidiaries provide certain employees for administrative or operational services, including laboratory space and administrative facilities, as necessary, for the benefit of AgeX, under a Shared Facilities and Services Agreement (the "Shared Facilities Agreement") with BioTime (see Note 4). Accordingly, BioTime allocates expenses such as salaries and payroll related expenses incurred and paid on behalf of AgeX based on the amount of time that particular employees devote to AgeX affairs. Other expenses such as legal, accounting and financial reporting, marketing, and travel expenses are allocated to AgeX to the extent that those expenses are incurred by or on behalf of AgeX. BioTime also allocates certain overhead expenses such as rent and utilities, property taxes, insurance, laboratory expenses and supplies, telecommunications and other indirect expenses. These allocations are made based upon activity-based allocation drivers such as time spent, percentage of square feet of office or laboratory space used, headcount and percentage of personnel devoted to AgeX's operations or management. Management evaluates the appropriateness of the allocations on a periodic basis and believes that this basis for allocation is reasonable.

Unaudited interim financial information – The accompanying interim condensed consolidated balance sheet as of September 30, 2018, the condensed consolidated statements of operations, comprehensive loss and cash flows for the nine months ended September 30, 2018 and 2017, the condensed consolidated statements of shareholders' equity for the nine months ended September 30, 2018, and financial information disclosed in these notes to the condensed consolidated financial statements are unaudited. These unaudited interim condensed consolidated financial statements have been prepared pursuant to the rules and regulations of the SEC. Accordingly, certain information and footnote disclosures normally included in financial statements prepared in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles ("GAAP") have been condensed or omitted. In the opinion of the AgeX's management, the accompanying unaudited interim condensed consolidated financial statements have been prepared on the same basis as the audited consolidated financial statements and include all adjustments, which include only normal recurring adjustments, necessary for a fair presentation of AgeX's financial condition, results of operations and its cash flows. The condensed consolidated results of operations are not necessarily indicative of the results to be expected for any other interim period or for the full year. These condensed consolidated interim financial statements should be read in conjunction with the consolidated financial statements and notes thereto for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 included elsewhere in this information statement.

2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

For additional information related to Significant Accounting Policies and New Accounting Pronouncements, see Note 2, "Summary of Significant Accounting Policies", in AgeX's consolidated financial statements for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 included elsewhere in this information statement.

Basic and diluted net loss per share attributable to common stockholders – Basic earnings per share is calculated by dividing net loss attributable to AgeX common stockholders by the weighted average number of shares of common stock outstanding, net of unvested restricted stock or restricted stock units, subject to repurchase by AgeX, if any, during the period. Diluted earnings per share is calculated by dividing the net loss attributable to AgeX common shareholders by the weighted average number of shares of common stock outstanding, adjusted for the effects of potentially dilutive common stock issuable under outstanding stock options and warrants, using the treasury-stock method, and convertible preferred stock, if any, using the if-converted method.

On August 17, 2017, in connection with the Asset Contribution Agreement discussed in Note 4, AgeX issued 28.8 million shares of common stock to its then parent company, BioTime. For carve-out presentation and financial reporting purposes of the reported basic and diluted net loss per share attributable to AgeX common stockholders for the nine months ended September 30, 2017, the 28.8 million shares of AgeX common stock issued to BioTime are assumed to be issued and outstanding from the beginning of the earliest period presented.

For the nine months ended September 30, 2018 and 2017, because AgeX reported a net loss attributable to common stockholders, all potentially dilutive common stock, comprised of stock options and warrants, is antidilutive.

The following common share equivalents were excluded from the computation of diluted net loss per common share for the period presented because including them would have been antidilutive (in thousands):

	Nine Months Ended September 30, (unaudited)	
	2018	**2017**
Stock options	1,419	50
Warrants	2,000	-

Recently adopted accounting pronouncements

Adoption of ASU 2014-09, Revenues from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606). During May 2014, the FASB issued ASU 2014-09 ("Topic 606") *Revenue from Contracts with Customers* which supersedes the revenue recognition requirements in Topic 605 *Revenue Recognition* ("Topic 605"). Topic 606 describes principles an entity must apply to measure and recognize revenue and the related cash flows, using the following five steps: (i) identify the contract(s) with a customer; (ii) identify the performance obligations in the contract; (iii) determine the transaction price; (iv) allocate the transaction price to the performance obligation(s) in the contract; and (v) recognize revenue when (or as) the entity satisfies a performance obligation. Topic 606 core principle is that it requires entities to recognize revenue when control of the promised goods or services is transferred to customers at an amount that reflects the consideration to which the entity expects to be entitled to in exchange for those goods or services.

AgeX adopted Topic 606 as of January 1, 2018 using the modified retrospective transition method applied to those contracts which were not completed as of the adoption date. Results for reporting periods beginning on January 1, 2018 and thereafter are presented under Topic 606, while prior period amounts are not adjusted and continue to be reported in accordance with AgeX's historic revenue recognition accounting under Topic 605.

On January 1, 2018, the impact of the adoption and application of Topic 606 was immaterial and no cumulative effect adjustment was made as of that date. In the applicable paragraphs below, AgeX has summarized its revenue recognition policies for its various revenue sources in accordance with Topic 606.

Revenue recognition by source and geography. Revenues are recognized when control of the promised goods or services is transferred to customers, or in the case of governmental entities funding a grant, when allowable expenses are incurred, in an amount that reflects the consideration AgeX or a subsidiary, depending on which company has the customer or the grant, expects to be entitled to in exchange for those goods or services.

The following table presents AgeX's consolidated revenues disaggregated by source (in thousands).

	Nine Months Ended September 30, (unaudited)	
	2018	**2017 [1]**
Subscription and advertisement revenues	$ 945	$ 944
Service and other revenues	138	2
Total revenues	$ 1,083	$ 946

[1] Amounts recognized prior to adoption of Topic 606 have not been adjusted under the Topic 606 modified retrospective transition method.

The following table presents consolidated revenues (in thousands), disaggregated by geography, based on the billing addresses of customers.

	Nine Months Ended September 30, (unaudited)	
	2018	**2017 [1]**
United States	$ 613	$ 540
Foreign	470	406
Total revenues	$ 1,083	$ 946

Subscription and advertisement revenues. LifeMap Sciences, a direct majority-owned subsidiary of AgeX, sells subscription-based products, including research databases and software tools, for biomedical, gene, disease, and stem cell research. LifeMap Sciences sells these subscriptions primarily through the internet to biotech and pharmaceutical companies worldwide. LifeMap Sciences' principal subscription product is the *GeneCards*® Suite, which includes the *GeneCards*® human gene database, and the *MalaCards* human disease database.

LifeMap Sciences' performance obligations for subscriptions include a license of intellectual property related to its genetic information packages and premium genetic information tools. These licenses are deemed functional licenses that provide customers with a "right to access" to LifeMap Sciences' intellectual property during the subscription period and, accordingly, revenue is recognized over a period of time, which is generally the subscription period. Payments are typically received at the beginning of a subscription period and revenue is recognized according to the type of subscription sold.

For subscription contracts in which the subscription term commences before a payment is due, LifeMap Sciences records an accounts receivable as the subscription is earned over time and bills the customer according to the contract terms. LifeMap Sciences continuously monitors collections and payments from customers and maintains a provision for estimated credit losses and uncollectible accounts based upon its historical experience and any specific customer collection issues that have been identified. Amounts determined to be uncollectible are written off against the allowance for doubtful accounts. LifeMap Sciences has not historically provided significant discounts, credits, concessions, or other incentives from the stated price in the contract as the prices are offered on a fixed fee basis for the type of subscription package being purchased. LifeMap Sciences may issue refunds only if the packages cease to be available for reasons beyond its control. In such an event, the customer will get a refund on a pro-rata basis. Using the most likely amount method for estimating refunds under Topic 606, including historical experience, LifeMap Sciences determined that the single most likely amount of variable consideration for refunds is immaterial as LifeMap Sciences does not expect to pay any refunds. Both the customer and LifeMap Sciences expect the subscription packages to be available during the entire subscription period, and LifeMap Sciences has not experienced any significant issues with the availability of the product and has not issued any material refunds.

LifeMap Sciences performance obligations for advertising are overall advertising services and represent a series of distinct services. Contracts are typically less than a year in duration and the fees charged may include a combination of fixed and variable fees with the variable fees tied to click throughs to the customer's products on their website. LifeMap Sciences allocates the variable consideration to each month the click through services occur and allocates the annual fee to the performance obligation period of the initial term of the contract because those amounts correspond to the value provided to the customer each month. For click-through advertising services, at the time the variable compensation is known and determinable, the service has been rendered. Revenue is recognized at that time. The annual fee is recognized over the initial subscription period because this is a service and the customer simultaneously receives and consumes the benefit of LifeMap Sciences' performance.

LifeMap Sciences deferred subscription revenues primarily represent subscriptions for which cash payment has been received for the subscription term but the subscription term has not been completed as of the balance sheet date reported. For the nine months ended September 30, 2018 and 2017, LifeMap Sciences recognized $945,000 and $944,000 in subscription and advertisement revenues, respectively. As of September 30, 2018, there was $208,000 included in deferred revenues in the condensed consolidated balance sheets which is expected to be recognized as subscription revenue over the next twelve months.

LifeMap Sciences has licensed from a third party the databases it commercializes and has a contractual obligation to pay royalties to the licensor on subscriptions sold. These costs are included in cost of sales on the condensed consolidated statements of operations when the cash is received and the royalty obligation is incurred as the royalty payments do not qualify for capitalization of costs to fulfill a contract under ASC 340-40, *Other Assets and Deferred Costs - Contracts with Customers*.

Grant revenues. In applying the provisions of Topic 606, AgeX has determined that government grants are out of the scope of Topic 606 because the government entities do not meet the definition of a "customer", as defined by Topic 606, as there is not considered to be a transfer of control of good or services to the government entities funding the grant. AgeX has, and will continue to, account for grants received to perform research and development services in accordance with ASC 730-20, *Research and Development Arrangements*, which requires an assessment, at the inception of the grant, of whether the grant is a liability or a contract to perform research and development services for others. If AgeX or a subsidiary receiving the grant is obligated to repay the grant funds to the grantor regardless of the outcome of the research and development activities, then AgeX is required to estimate and recognize that liability. Alternatively, if AgeX or a subsidiary receiving the grant is not required to repay, or if it is required to repay the grant funds only if the research and development activities are successful, then the grant agreement is accounted for as a contract to perform research and development services for others, in which case, grant revenue is recognized when the related research and development expenses are incurred. AgeX had no grant revenues for the nine months ended September 30, 2018 and 2017.

On April 5, 2018, ReCyte Therapeutics was awarded a grant of up to approximately $386,000 from the National Institutes of Health (NIH). The NIH grant provides funding for continued development of ReCyte Therapeutic's technologies for treating stroke. The grant funds will be made available by NIH for payment to ReCyte Therapeutics as allowable expenses are incurred. As of September 30, 2018, no allowable expenses were incurred under the NIH grant.

Arrangements with multiple performance obligations. AgeX's contracts with customers may include multiple performance obligations. For such arrangements, AgeX allocates revenue to each performance obligation based on its relative standalone selling price. AgeX generally determines or estimates standalone selling prices based on the prices charged, or that would be charged, to customers for that product or service. As of, and for the nine months ended, September 30, 2018, AgeX did not have significant arrangements with multiple performance obligations.

Recently issued accounting pronouncements not yet adopted – The recently issued accounting pronouncements applicable to AgeX that are not yet effective should be read in conjunction with the recently issued accounting pronouncements, as applicable and disclosed in AgeX's audited consolidated financial statements for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, included elsewhere in this information statement.

3. Selected Balance Sheet Components

Accounts payable and accrued liabilities

At September 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, accounts payable and accrued liabilities consisted of the following (in thousands):

	September 30, 2018 (unaudited)	December 31, 2017
Accounts payable	$ 223	$ 75
Accrued compensation	299	257
Accrued vendors and other expenses	487	436
Accounts payable and accrued liabilities	$ 1,009	$ 768

Intangible assets, net

On August 13, 2018, AgeX entered into an Asset Purchase Agreement (the "Purchase Agreement") with Escape Therapeutics, Inc. ("Escape") pursuant to which AgeX acquired certain patents and patent applications related primarily to methods of modifying cells and tissues and certain pluripotent stem cell lines so as to reduce their risk of being rejected when transplanted. This technology is called "UniverCyte™". AgeX paid Escape $1,072,436 in cash and issued 80,000 shares of AgeX common stock, with an approximate value of $240,000, for aggregate acquisition cost of $1.3 million for the UniverCyte™ assets. The Purchase Agreement was considered an asset acquisition rather than a business combination in accordance with ASC 805-50, *Business Combinations*.

ASC 730-10-25(c), *Research and Development – Intangible Assets Purchased from Others*, provides guidance for acquisition and capitalization of the cost of intangible assets purchased from others in an asset acquisition that have alternative future uses in other research and development projects. These intangible assets are referred to as acquired in-process research and development ("IPR&D") with alternative future uses and are accounted for as intangible assets and amortized to research and development over their useful life. Acquired IPR&D in an asset acquisition that does not have any alternative future uses is expensed under the same guidance. As an initial focus, AgeX intends to use the UniverCyte™ technology in the development of its two lead products, AGEX-BAT1 and AGEX-VASC1 for the treatment of Type II diabetes and cardiovascular aging, respectively. Accordingly, AgeX recorded the UniverCyte™ technology acquired from Escape as IPR&D intangible assets with alternative future uses in accordance with ASC 730-10-25(c) and will amortize those assets to research and development expense over their 10 year useful life.

Pursuant to the Purchase Agreement, if AgeX has not expended a certain level of funds by the end of 2019 toward the research and development of pluripotent stem cell or progenitor cell products and processes utilizing the acquired patents and the development or improvement of the acquired patents, AgeX will make an additional annual cash payment to Escape. If total development expenditures have still not reached a predetermined level by the end of 2020, AgeX will pay Escape additional amounts and the royalty rate for net sales of products, processes and services will be tripled until total expenditures reach the required threshold. The aggregate cash payments AgeX may make to Escape for not reaching the predetermined level of expenses can be up to $1 million. AgeX expects to meet this requirement as the acquired technology is planned to be developed and used in AgeX's two leading programs discussed above and, accordingly, no amounts have been accrued as of September 30, 2018 for this provision of the Purchase Agreement.

In addition to the purchase price, AgeX will pay Escape a royalty of less than 1% on net sales of products, process and services under the acquired patents, if the assets are commercialized. Additional shares of AgeX common stock totaling up to $4.3 million of market value will also be issued to Escape upon the attainment of development and regulatory approval milestones by AgeX for each product covered by the acquired patents. Contingent consideration in an asset acquisition is generally recorded when probable and estimable in accordance with ASC 450, *Contingencies*. Accordingly, none of the milestone payments have been accrued since the attainment of any milestone in the Purchase Agreement is not probable as of September 30, 2018.

Escape has agreed to indemnify AgeX from certain liabilities. The Purchase Agreement contains representations, warranties and agreements customary for a transaction of this nature.

AgeX has also agreed to engage Escape's chief executive officer as a consultant for a period of up to three years to assist AgeX in utilizing the acquired patents. AgeX will pay $200,000 per year in consulting fees as services are performed included in research and development expenses.

At September 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, intangible assets, primarily consisting of acquired in-process research and development and patents, and accumulated amortization were as follows (in thousands):

	September 30, 2018 (unaudited)	December 31, 2017
Intangible assets	$ 5,586	$ 4,274
Accumulated amortization	(2,737)	(2,400)
Intangible assets, net	$ 2,849	$ 1,874

AgeX recognized $337,000 and $411,000 in amortization expense of intangible assets, included in research and development expenses, during the nine months ended September 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively.

4. Related Party Transactions

For AgeX related party transactions as of December 31, 2017, see Note 4, "Related Party Transactions", to the consolidated financial statements for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 included elsewhere in this information statement.

Allocated expenses from BioTime

Allocated expenses from BioTime for the carve-out financial statements for periods prior to August 17, 2017, the date AgeX commenced operations, included in the consolidated statements of operations were as follows (in thousands):

	Nine Months Ended September 30, 2017 (unaudited)
Research and development	$ 1,310
General and administrative	1,294
Total allocated expenses from BioTime	$ 2,604

Shared Facilities and Service Agreement

In aggregate, BioTime allocated and charged Use Fees to AgeX under the Shared Facilities Agreement are as follows (in thousands):

	Nine Months Ended September 30, (unaudited)	
	2018	2017
Research and development	$ 946	$ 922
General and administrative	281	260
Total Use Fees	$ 1,227	$ 1,182

As of September 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, AgeX had $98,000 and $210,000 outstanding and payable to BioTime included in current liabilities in connection with the costs incurred under the Shared Facilities Agreement. Since these amounts are due and payable in 30 days of being invoiced, the payables are classified as current liabilities for all periods presented.

In connection with the Transaction (see Note 1), the termination provision of the Shared Facilities Agreement entitling AgeX or BioTime to terminate the agreement upon six months advance written notice was amended. Pursuant to the amendment, following the deconsolidation of AgeX from BioTime's consolidated financial statements on August 30, 2018, each party retains the right to terminate the Shared Facilities Agreement at any time by giving the other party six months advance written notice, but BioTime may not do so prior to September 1, 2020.

Transactions with Ascendance Biotechnology, Inc.

On March 21, 2018, AgeX and Ascendance Biotechnology, Inc. ("Ascendance"), an equity method investee of AgeX and former equity method investee of BioTime, entered into an Asset Purchase Agreement (the "Asset Agreement") in which AgeX purchased for $800,000 in cash certain assets consisting in value primarily of in-process research and development assets related to stem cell derived cardiomyocytes (heart muscle cells) to be developed by AgeX. The transaction was considered an asset acquisition rather than a business combination in accordance with ASC 805-50. The $800,000 purchase price was expensed on the acquisition date as acquired in-process research and development in accordance with ASC 730-10-25(c) as those assets have no alternative future uses.

Disposition of ownership interest in Ascendance

On March 23, 2018, Ascendance was acquired by a third party in a merger through which AgeX received approximately $3.2 million in cash for its shares of Ascendance common stock. AgeX recognized a $3.2 million gain as a sale of its equity method investment in Ascendance, which is included in other income and expenses, net, for the nine months ended September 30, 2018. At the close of the merger, $955,000 of cash that otherwise would have been payable to the Ascendance stockholders was deposited into an escrow account where it may be held for a term of up to fifteen months. Funds held in the escrow account may be paid to the acquirer to cover indemnity payments and other obligations that may arise after the merger. After the expiration of the term of the escrow, any funds remaining in the escrow account will be disbursed, on a pro-rata basis, to the former Ascendance stockholders. As of September 30, 2018, no amounts have been recorded in the AgeX consolidated financial statements for any funds held in the escrow account.

5. Shareholders' Equity

For additional information on AgeX's preferred and common stock, see Note 5, "Shareholders' Equity", to the consolidated financial statements for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 included elsewhere in this information statement.

On June 7, 2018, AgeX sold 2.0 million shares of common stock for $2.50 per share to Juvenescence for aggregate cash proceeds to AgeX of $5.0 million.

On August 13, 2018, AgeX issued 80,000 shares with an approximate value of $240,000 as part of the consideration paid to Escape for the asset acquisition discussed in Note 3.

As of September 30, 2018, Juvenescence owns 45.8% and BioTime owns 40.2% of the issued and outstanding shares of AgeX common stock (see Note 1).

As of September 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, there were 35,830,000 and 33,750,000 shares of AgeX common stock issued and outstanding, respectively.

Sale of warrants by AgeX

On February 28, 2018, AgeX sold warrants to purchase 1,473,600 shares of AgeX common stock (the "AgeX Warrants") for $0.50 per warrant for aggregate cash proceeds to AgeX of $736,800, which included $124,300 from Alfred D. Kingsley, AgeX's then Executive Chairman and the Chairman of BioTime's Board of Directors. The AgeX Warrants are exercisable at $2.50 per share and expire the earliest to occur of (i) February 28, 2021, (ii) on or after January 31, 2019, after notice from AgeX, if the AgeX shares are publicly traded and the price of AgeX common stock exceeds $3.75 per share for 20 trading days (on a volume weighted average price basis, as defined), and (iii) a change of control, as defined in warrant agreement. If the AgeX shares are not publicly traded, the AgeX Warrants may be exercised only during the period commencing ten business days prior to the expiration date, as defined in the warrant agreement. The AgeX Warrants are classified as equity since, among other factors, they are not redeemable, cannot be settled in cash or other assets and require settlement by issuing a fixed number of shares of common stock of AgeX. The AgeX Warrants were sold at fair value determined on the Binomial Lattice option pricing model on the issuance date, with certain management assumptions, which included the timing of an initial public offering of AgeX common stock, peer-group volatility, term to maturity, price cap and AgeX current and future stock prices.

On July 10, 2018, AgeX sold additional AgeX Warrants to purchase 526,400 shares of common stock for $0.50 per warrant for aggregate net cash proceeds to AgeX of $263,200.

6. Stock-based Compensation

Under the 2017 Equity Incentive Plan (the "Plan"), AgeX reserved 4,000,000 shares of common stock for the grant of stock options, the settlement of restricted stock units, or the sale of restricted stock. The Plan also permits AgeX to issue such other securities as its Board of Directors or the Compensation Committee administering the Plan may determine.

A summary of AgeX's 2017 Plan activity and related information follows (in thousands, except per share amounts):

	Shares Available for Grant	Number of Options Outstanding	Weighted Average Exercise Price of Options
December 31, 2017	2,761	1,239	$ 2.00
Options granted	(188)	188	2.52
Options forfeited	8	(8)	2.00
September 30, 2018 (unaudited)	2,581	1,419	$ 2.07
Options exercisable at September 30, 2018 (unaudited)		103	$ 2.09

Stock-based compensation expense

The weighted average assumptions that were used to calculate the grant date fair value of AgeX's stock option grants were as follows:

	Nine Months Ended September 30, (unaudited)	
	2018	2017
Expected life (in years)	5.91	5.85
Risk-free interest rates	2.71%	1.86%
Volatility	75.51%	75.59%
Dividend yield	-%	-%

Operating expenses include stock-based compensation expense as follows (in thousands):

	Nine Months Ended September 30, (unaudited)	
	2018	2017[(1)]
Research and development	$ 122	$ 195
General and administrative	554	328
Total stock-based compensation expense	$ 676	$ 523

[(1)] AgeX did not have an equity incentive plan until July 2017, accordingly, consolidated stock-based compensation expense for the nine months ended September 30, 2017 consists substantially of stock-based compensation allocated from BioTime for AgeX's carve-out presentation purposes, principally related to stock-based compensation of former BioTime employees transferred to AgeX, and stock-based compensation of AgeX's subsidiaries, including LifeMap Solutions, that have their own equity plans.

The determination of stock-based compensation is inherently uncertain and subjective and involves the application of valuation models and assumptions requiring the use of judgment. If AgeX had made different assumptions, its stock-based compensation expense, and net loss for the nine months ended September 30, 2018 and 2017 may have been significantly different. See Note 2 to the consolidated financial statements for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, included elsewhere in this information statement, for a discussion of the factors used in determining these assumptions.

7. Income Taxes

The provision for income taxes for interim periods is determined using an estimated annual effective tax rate as prescribed by ASC 740-270, *Income Taxes, Interim Reporting,* using the separate return method for carve-out presentation purposes of AgeX's consolidated financial statements (see Note 1). The effective tax rate may be subject to fluctuations during the year as new information is obtained, which may affect the assumptions used to estimate the annual effective tax rate, including factors such as valuation allowances and changes in valuation allowances against deferred tax assets, the recognition or de-recognition of tax benefits related to uncertain tax positions, if any, and changes in or the interpretation of tax laws in jurisdictions where AgeX conducts business. In addition, depending on the future legal structure of AgeX and related tax elections that may be taken by AgeX or its parent, BioTime, the effective tax rate of AgeX in future years could vary materially from its historical effective tax rates. ASC 740-270 also states that if an entity is unable to reliably estimate a part of its ordinary income or loss, the income tax provision or benefit applicable to the item that cannot be estimated shall be reported in the interim period in which the item is reported.

On March 23, 2018, Ascendance was acquired by a third party in a merger through which AgeX received approximately $3.2 million in cash for its shares of Ascendance common stock. For financial reporting purposes, AgeX recognized a $3.2 million gain as a sale of its equity method investment in Ascendance (see Note 4). The sale was a taxable transaction to AgeX generating a taxable gain of approximately $2.2 million. AgeX has sufficient current year losses from operations to offset the entire gain resulting in no income taxes due.

As further discussed in Note 1, on August 30, 2018, BioTime consummated the sale of 14,400,000 shares of common stock of AgeX owned by BioTime to Juvenescence. AgeX received no proceeds from the Transaction. Prior to the Transaction, Juvenescence owned 5.6% of AgeX's issued and outstanding common stock. Upon completion of the Transaction, BioTime's ownership in AgeX was reduced from 80.4% to 40.2% of AgeX's issued and outstanding shares of common stock, and Juvenescence's ownership in AgeX was increased from 5.6% to 45.8% of AgeX's issued and outstanding shares of common stock. Accordingly, beginning on August 31, 2018, AgeX will no longer be included in BioTime's consolidated federal and state income tax returns as AgeX will file its own, standalone returns with its subsidiaries.

The Transaction was not deemed to be a change of control, as defined by Internal Revenue Code Section 382 ("Section 382"). Accordingly, no Section 382 limitations on utilization of AgeX's NOL and tax credit carryforwards have occurred in connection with the Transaction.

Due to losses incurred for all periods presented, AgeX did not record any provision or benefit for income taxes.

A valuation allowance is provided when it is more likely than not that some or all of the deferred tax assets will not be realized. AgeX established a full valuation allowance for all periods presented due to the uncertainty of realizing future tax benefits from its net operating loss carryforwards and other deferred tax assets.

See Note 7. "Income Taxes", to the consolidated financial statements for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 included elsewhere in this information statement.

8. Commitments and Contingencies

For a summary of AgeX's commitments and contingencies, see Note 8, "Commitments and Contingencies", in AgeX's consolidated financial statements for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 included elsewhere in this information statement.

9. Subsequent Events

On October 15, 2018, AgeX and Alfred D. Kingsley entered into a Separation Agreement under which Mr. Kingsley resigned from all of his positions with AgeX, including as its Executive Chairman. In connection with Mr. Kingsley's resignation and pursuant the Separation Agreement, Mr. Kingsley agreed to a general release of claims and AgeX paid Mr. Kingsley his accrued but unpaid base salary up to October 15, 2018 and other accrued compensation. In exchange for this release and Mr. Kingsley's other obligations under the agreement, all options issued by AgeX Therapeutics, Inc. and held by Mr. Kingsley as of October 15, 2018, representing the right to purchase 330,000 shares of AgeX common stock at an exercise price of $2.00 per share, vested as of October 15, 2018 and will remain exercisable until October 16, 2023. As a result of the accelerated vesting of all AgeX unvested stock options and the extension of time for Mr. Kingsley to exercise all outstanding AgeX stock options, AgeX will record approximately $578,000 in noncash stock based compensation expense in accordance with ASC 718.

On October 18, 2018, AgeX entered into an employment agreement with its Chief Executive Officer, Michael D. West, (the "West Employment Agreement"). Pursuant to the West Employment Agreement, Dr. West's annual base salary will be $525,000 and Dr. West is eligible to earn an annual incentive cash bonus with a target of no less than 50% of annual base salary. Actual bonus amounts will be based on Dr. West's attainment of individual performance goals at target levels set by the Board of Directors for the applicable calendar year. If such performance goals for the applicable year are fully achieved, the Board of Directors may approve a bonus amount exceeding the target bonus level.

Under the West Employment Agreement, Dr. West has been granted options to purchase 500,000 shares of AgeX common stock with an exercise price of $3.00 per share, with one fourth of the options vesting following 12 full months of continuous service as an employee of AgeX and the balance vesting in 36 equal monthly installments commencing on the first anniversary of the date of grant, based upon the completion of each month of continuous service as an employee. Such options expire on the earliest of (1) 10 years from the date of grant, (2) three months after Dr. West ceases to provide continuous service to AgeX (other than due to death or disability) or (3) one year after Dr. West ceases to provide continuous service due to death or disability.

If AgeX terminates Dr. West's employment without "cause" or he resigns for "good reason" at any time, as defined in the West Employment Agreement, Dr. West will be entitled to (1) 12 months base salary, (2) all accrued but unpaid salary earned prior to or as of the date of termination or resignation, (3) full payment of Dr. West's target bonus for such year and (4) for a period of six months, all benefits under any health insurance plan of AgeX. In addition, if AgeX terminates Dr. West's employment without "cause" or he resigns for "good reason," (1) all of Dr. West's outstanding equity awards that would otherwise have vested during the 12 months following termination or resignation will become fully vested and exercisable immediately and (2) with respect to any outstanding vested but unexercised options, the exercise period following termination or resignation will be extended to the earlier of the (A) 12 months after termination or (B) the contractual expiration date of the applicable option. If AgeX terminates Dr. West's employment without "cause," or he resigns for "good reason," following a change of control, as defined in the West Employment Agreement (1) Dr. West will be entitled to all of the benefits and payments that he would have been entitled to if his employment had been otherwise terminated without "cause" or if he resigned for "good reason," as set forth above, and (2) all of Dr. West's unvested options and restricted stock units, if any, will become fully vested and exercisable immediately. The severance compensation may be paid in a lump sum or, at AgeX's election, in installments consistent with the payment of Dr. West's salary while employed by AgeX.

AgeX has evaluated subsequent events and transactions for potential recognition or disclosure in the consolidated financial statements through November 26, 2018, the day the consolidated financial statements were available for issuance.

AGEX
THERAPEUTICS